

# Introduction

Thank you for purchasing SoftBank 933SH.

- For proper handset use, read "First Step Guide" in 933SH Starter Guide and this guide beforehand.
- Accessible SoftBank services may vary by service area, subscription, etc.

SoftBank 933SH is compatible with both 3G and GSM network technologies.

## Notes

- Copying this guide in whole or part without authorization is prohibited.
- Guide content is subject to change without prior notice.
- Efforts have been made to ensure the accuracy and clarity of this guide. Please contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (**P.15-42**) about unclear or missing information.

# Chapter Contents At A Glance

Getting Started	1
Basic Operations	2
Calling	3
Messaging	4
Yahoo! Keitai & PC Site Browser	5
Digital TV	6
Camera & Imaging	7
Media Player & S! Applications	8
Handy Extras	9
Entertainment & Communication	10
Handset Security	11
Data Folder & Memory Card	12
Connectivity & File Backup	13
Handset Customization	14
Appendix	15



## Notes

- Most operation descriptions are based on default settings with clamshell open (**P.1-2**) in Standby (**P.1-6**).
- Operations and results may differ by handset status.
- Sample screenshots, etc. are provided for reference only.
- Actual handset windows, menus, etc. may differ in appearance.
- "(Japanese)" appears next to functions or applications which require Japanese ability to use as intended.

Guide Usage Notes .....	ii
Table of Contents .....	iii
Accessory .....	v
Safety Precautions .....	vi

## 1 Getting Started

Handset Parts .....	1-2
Charging Battery .....	1-4
Power On/Off .....	1-6
Display & Indicators .....	1-7
Touch Panel .....	1-12
Accessing Functions .....	1-14
Keypad Lock .....	1-24
Motion Control .....	1-25
Mobile Manners .....	1-27
Security Codes .....	1-28
Basic Tools .....	1-29
Double Number .....	1-30
Additional Functions .....	1-33

## 2 Basic Operations

Font Size .....	2-2
Wallpaper .....	2-3
Customized Screen .....	2-4
Sounds & Alerts .....	2-5
Text Entry .....	2-6
User Dictionary .....	2-12
Dictionary .....	2-13
Search .....	2-15
Scratch Pad .....	2-16
Phone Book .....	2-17
Additional Functions .....	2-20
Troubleshooting .....	2-26

## 3 Calling

Emergency Calls .....	3-2
Voice Calling .....	3-3
Video Calling .....	3-5
Decoration Call .....	3-6
Speed Dial .....	3-7
Call Log .....	3-8
Call Time .....	3-9
Call Barring .....	3-10
Optional Services .....	3-12
Additional Functions .....	3-14
Troubleshooting .....	3-22

## 4 Messaging

Messaging .....	4-2
Sending Messages .....	4-4
Incoming Messages .....	4-9
Handling Messages .....	4-12
Chat Folders .....	4-15
Mail Groups .....	4-16
PC Mail .....	4-17
Additional Functions .....	4-20
Troubleshooting .....	4-35

## 5 Yahoo! Keitai & PC Site Browser

Internet Services .....	5-2
Yahoo! Keitai .....	5-3
PC Site Browser .....	5-4
Browsing .....	5-5
Bookmarks & Saved Pages .....	5-8
RSS Feeds .....	5-9
Additional Functions .....	5-10
Troubleshooting .....	5-17

## 6 Digital TV

Digital TV .....	6-2
Recording/Playing .....	6-8
TV Timer .....	6-10
Time Shift .....	6-11
Additional Functions .....	6-12
Troubleshooting .....	6-18

## 7 Camera & Imaging

Camera .....	7-2
Photo Camera .....	7-3
Video Camera .....	7-9
Review .....	7-12
Shooting Modes .....	7-13
Editing Images .....	7-16
Printing .....	7-21
Additional Functions .....	7-22
Troubleshooting .....	7-26

## 8 Media Player & S! Applications

Media Player .....	8-2
Music .....	8-4
Video .....	8-5
Playlists .....	8-6
S! Appli .....	8-7
Additional Functions .....	8-8
Troubleshooting .....	8-13

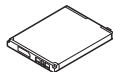
## 9 Handy Extras

Calendar & Tasks .....	9-2
Alarms .....	9-7
Wakeup TV .....	9-9
Relaxation Time .....	9-11

Calculator .....	9-12	Additional Functions .....	10-16	Battery .....	15-4
Expenses Memo .....	9-13	Troubleshooting .....	10-23	Software Update .....	15-5
Osaifu-Keitai® .....	9-14	<b>11 Handset Security</b>		Troubleshooting .....	15-6
Simulated Call .....	9-18	Handset Security .....	11-2	Key Assignments .....	15-8
Stopwatch .....	9-19	Face Recognition .....	11-4	Pager Codes .....	15-10
Countdown Timer .....	9-20	Function Control .....	11-6	Character Codes .....	15-11
World Clock .....	9-21	Additional Functions .....	11-7	Weather Indicators .....	15-17
Hour Minder .....	9-22	<b>12 Data Folder &amp; Memory Card</b>		Specifications .....	15-18
Pedometer .....	9-23	Data Folder .....	12-2	Menu List .....	15-25
Compass .....	9-25	Memory Card .....	12-5	Index .....	15-33
S! GPS Navi .....	9-26	Additional Functions .....	12-7	Warranty & Service .....	15-41
Document Viewer .....	9-29	Troubleshooting .....	12-9	Customer Service .....	15-42
Notepad .....	9-30	<b>13 Connectivity &amp; File Backup</b>			
ASCII Art .....	9-31	Infrared .....	13-2		
Voice Recorder .....	9-32	IC Transmission .....	13-5		
Scan Barcode .....	9-33	Bluetooth® .....	13-7		
Create QR Code .....	9-34	External Device Connection .....	13-11		
Scan Card .....	9-35	Backup .....	13-12		
Scan Text .....	9-36	S! Addressbook Back-up (SAB) .....	13-14		
Kanji Grabber .....	9-37	Additional Functions .....	13-17		
Additional Functions .....	9-38	Troubleshooting .....	13-20		
Troubleshooting .....	9-51	<b>14 Handset Customization</b>			
<b>10 Entertainment &amp; Communication</b>		Date & Time .....	14-2		
Mobile Widget .....	10-2	Display & Illumination .....	14-3		
S! Quick News .....	10-5	Incoming Transmissions .....	14-5		
S! Information Channel .....	10-6	Sounds .....	14-6		
e-Books .....	10-7	Connectivity .....	14-7		
S! Friend's Status .....	10-8	Reset .....	14-8		
S! Circle Talk .....	10-11	<b>15 Appendix</b>			
Near Chat .....	10-13	USIM Card .....	15-2		
Blog Tool .....	10-14				

## Accessory

### ■ Battery (SHBCC1)



- For accessory-related information, please contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P.15-42).
- Use specified Charger/Headphones (sold separately) only.

## Safety Precautions

Read safety precautions before using handset.







- Observe precautions to avoid injury to self or others, or damage to property.
- SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from use of this product.

**These labels indicate the degree of risk from improper use.**

**Make sure you thoroughly understand their meanings before reading on.**

 <b>DANGER</b>	<b>Great risk of death or serious injury from improper use</b>
 <b>WARNING</b>	<b>Risk of death or serious injury from improper use</b>
 <b>CAUTION</b>	<b>Risk of serious injury or damage to property from improper use</b>

**These symbols indicate prohibited or compulsory actions. Make sure you thoroughly understand their meanings before reading on.**

 Prohibited	<b>Prohibited actions</b>
 Do Not Disassemble	<b>Disassembly prohibited</b>
 Avoid Liquids Or Moisture	<b>Exposure to liquids prohibited</b>
 Do Not Use Wet Hands	<b>Use with wet hands prohibited</b>
 Compulsory	<b>Compulsory actions</b>
 Disconnect Power Source	<b>Unplug Charger from outlet</b>

## Handset, Battery, USIM Card, Charger (Sold Separately) & Memory Card (Sold Separately)

### DANGER

#### Use specified battery, Charger (sold separately) and Desktop Holder (sold separately) only.

Non-specified equipment use may cause battery to leak, overheat, burst or ignite, and may cause Charger to overheat, ignite, malfunction, etc.



Compulsory

#### Do not disassemble, modify or solder handset or related hardware.

May cause fire, injury, electric shock or malfunction. Battery may leak, overheat, burst or ignite. Modifying handsets is prohibited by the Radio Law and subject to a penalty.



Do Not Disassemble

#### Do not expose handset or related hardware to liquids.

Do not leave handset or related hardware wet after exposure to water, pet urine, etc., and do not charge wet battery. May cause overheating, electric shock, fire, injury or malfunction. Use them in an appropriate place properly.



Avoid Liquids Or Moisture

Do not charge battery in or expose handset or related hardware to extreme heat (e.g., near fire or sources of heat, in direct sunlight, inside vehicles, etc.).

May cause warping/malfunction; battery may leak, overheat, ignite or burst. Handset or related hardware may become hot to the touch, leading to burn injuries, etc.



Prohibited

#### Do not force battery/Charger into handset. Check the direction and retry.

Battery may leak, overheat, burst, ignite, etc.



Prohibited

### WARNING

#### Do not place handset, battery or Charger in/on ovens, microwave ovens, pressure cookers, induction stoves or other cooking appliances.

Battery may leak, overheat, burst or ignite. Handset/Charger may overheat, emit smoke, ignite, malfunction, etc.



Prohibited

#### Keep handset off and Charger disconnected near gas stations or places with fire/explosion risk.

Handset use near petrochemicals or other flammables may cause fire/explosion; turn handset off before using Osaifu-Keitai® at gas stations (cancel IC Card Lock beforehand).



Compulsory

#### Do not apply strong shocks or impacts.

Do not drop/throw handset or related hardware. Battery may leak, overheat, burst or ignite, resulting in fire, electric shock, malfunction, etc.



Prohibited

#### If there is unusual sound/odor, smoke or any other abnormality:

Continued use may cause fire, electric shock, etc.; grasp plug to disconnect Charger, turn off handset, then remove battery, being careful not to burn or injure yourself.



Compulsory

#### Keep liquids (water, pet urine, etc.) or conductive material (pencil lead, metallic strip, metal jewelry, etc.) away from charging terminals, External Device Port or Memory Card Slot.

May cause short circuit, resulting in fire, malfunction, etc.



Prohibited

### CAUTION

#### Do not place handset or related hardware on unstable surfaces.

Handset or related hardware may fall, resulting in injury, malfunction, etc.; be especially careful when Vibration is set or while charging.



Prohibited

#### Keep handset and related hardware out of infants' reach.

Infants may choke from swallowing handset or related hardware or be injured, etc.



Compulsory



## Safety Precautions

If your child is using handset and related hardware, explain all instructions and supervise usage. Misuse may cause injury, etc.



Compulsory

### Battery

**! DANGER**

Read battery label to confirm battery type; use/dispose of battery accordingly.

Symbol on Label	Battery Type
Li-ion00	Lithium-ion

**Do not dispose of battery in fire.**

Battery may leak, burst, ignite, etc.



Prohibited

**Do not damage battery (with a nail, hammer, foot, etc.) or subject it to strong impacts or shocks.**

Battery may leak, overheat, burst, ignite, etc.



Prohibited

**Keep wire or other metal objects away from battery terminals. Do not carry/store battery with conductive material (pencil lead, metallic strip, metal jewelry, etc.).**

Battery may leak, overheat, burst, ignite, etc.



Prohibited

**If battery fluid gets in eyes, do not rub; rinse with water and consult a doctor immediately.**

Eyes may be severely damaged.



Compulsory

**! WARNING**

**If battery fluid contacts skin or clothes, discontinue handset use and rinse with clean water immediately.**

May cause skin damage.



Compulsory

**If battery does not charge properly, stop trying.**

Battery may leak, overheat, burst, ignite, etc.



Compulsory

**If there is abnormal odor, excessive heat, discoloration or distortion, remove battery, being careful not to burn or injure yourself. Avoid fire sources.**

Continued use may cause battery to leak, overheat, burst, ignite, etc.



Compulsory

**Keep battery away from pets.**

Pet bites may cause battery to leak, burst, overheat, ignite, etc.



Compulsory

**! CAUTION**

**Do not dispose of an exhausted battery with ordinary refuse.**

Tape over battery terminals before disposal. Take battery to a SoftBank Shop, or follow the local disposal regulations.



Prohibited

### Handset

**! WARNING**

**Do not use Mobile Light near people's faces.**

Eyesight may be temporarily affected leading to accidents.



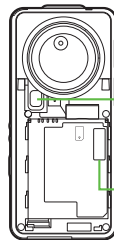
Prohibited

**CAUTION:**

Use of controls, adjustments or performance of procedure other than those specified herein may result in hazardous radiation exposure. As the emission level from Mobile Light LED used in this product is harmful to the eyes, do not attempt to disassemble the cabinet. Servicing is limited to qualified servicing station only.

EN60825-1:1994 A1:2002 & A2:2001

CLASS 1  
LED Product



Mobile Light

CAUTION-CLASS 2  
LED RADIATION WHEN  
OPEN DO NOT STARE  
INTO THE BEAM

### ■ Mobile Light LED Properties

- Emission Duration: Continuous
- Wavelength  
White: 400 - 700 nm
- Maximum Emission Output  
White: 840  $\mu$ W (4.8 mW inside handset)

**Do not use handset while driving or cycling.**

Accidents may result.

Phone use while driving or cycling is prohibited by law and subject to a penalty; park in a legal parking space beforehand.



Prohibited

**Turn handset power off near electronic devices that employ high precision control systems or weak signals.**

May cause electronic malfunctions, etc. Be especially careful near the following devices:

Hearing aids, implanted pacemakers/defibrillators and other electronic medical equipment; fire alarms, automatic doors and other automatic control devices.



Compulsory

**Power handset off before boarding aircraft to avoid radio waves from interfering with aircraft operation.**

If mobile phone use is allowed on board, follow airline or cabin crew instructions regarding handset use.



Compulsory

**Users with a heart condition should adjust ringtone Vibration and Volume as needed.**

May cause heart damage.



Compulsory

**If thunder is heard while outdoors, turn power off; find cover.**

There is a risk of lightning strike or electric shock.



Compulsory

**Do not look into Infrared Port during infrared transmissions.**

Eyesight may be affected.



Prohibited

**Confirm there is ample space for Motion Control use; hold handset firmly and shake it gently.**

Handset may slip, resulting in injury or breakage.



Prohibited

**CAUTION****Do not use handset when it may affect a vehicle's electronic equipment.**

Handset use inside vehicles may cause electronic equipment to malfunction, resulting in accidents.



Prohibited

**If you experience any skin irritation associated with handset use, discontinue handset use and consult a doctor.**

Metal and other materials (P.15-18) may cause skin irritation, rashes, or itchiness depending on your physical condition.



Compulsory

**Keep handset away from magnetic cards, etc.**

Data on bank cards, credit cards, telephone cards, floppy disks, etc. may be lost.



Prohibited

**Do not swing handset by strap.**

May harm self or others; strap may break, resulting in injury or handset malfunction/breakage.



Prohibited

**Handset may become hot while in use, especially at high temperature.**

Prolonged contact with skin may cause burn injuries.



Compulsory

**Always maintain some distance from Speaker while ringtones, music or other handset sounds play.**

Excessive volume may damage ears or hearing.



Prohibited

**Keep fingers, straps, etc. outside when opening/closing handset.**

May cause injury, breakage, etc.



Compulsory

**Watch TV from a distance in good light.**

Watching in poor light or too close may affect eyesight.



Compulsory

**Moderate handset volume when using Headphones.**

Excessive volume may damage ears or hearing.



Compulsory

**Charger (Sold Separately)**

 **WARNING**

**Do not cover/wrap Charger while charging.**

Charger may overheat, resulting in fire, malfunction, etc.



Prohibited

**Use only the specified voltage.**

Non-specified voltages may cause fire, malfunction, etc.



Prohibited

- AC Charger (sold separately):  
AC 100V-240V Input
- In-Car Charger (sold separately; use in negative earth vehicles only):  
DC 12V/24V Input

Do not use power adapters. Using Charger with step-up/step-down transformer may cause fire, electric shock or malfunction.

**Leave Charger unplugged during periods of disuse; grasp plug to disconnect it.**

May cause electric shock, fire or malfunction.



Disconnect Power Source

**Use only the specified fuse for In-Car Charger (sold separately).**

Non-specified fuse may cause fire or malfunction. See In-Car Charger manual for details.



Compulsory

**If liquids (water, pet urine, etc.) seep inside Charger, grasp plug and disconnect it immediately.**

May cause electric shock, smoke or fire.



Disconnect Power Source

**If plug is dusty, grasp it and disconnect Charger, then clean with a dry cloth.**

Fire may result.



Compulsory

**Do not use In-Car Charger (sold separately) in positive earth vehicles.**

May cause fire, etc. Use in negative earth vehicles only.



Prohibited

**Plug Charger firmly into the outlet, keeping the plug and Charger/Desktop Holder charging terminals away from conductive material (pencil lead, metallic strip, metal jewelry, etc.).**

May cause electric shock, short circuit, fire, etc.



Compulsory

**Do not touch Charger plug with wet hands.**

May cause electric shock, malfunction, etc.



Do Not Use Wet Hands

**Do not touch Charger if thunder is heard.**

May cause electric shock, etc.



Prohibited

 **CAUTION**

**Grasp plug and disconnect Charger before cleaning.**

May cause electric shock, etc.



Disconnect Power Source

**Always grasp plug (not cord) to disconnect Charger.**

Pulling the plug by cord may damage cord, causing electric shock, fire, etc.



Compulsory

**Do not subject AC Charger (sold separately) to strong shocks or impacts while it is plugged into the outlet.**

May cause malfunction or injury.



Prohibited

**Do not touch charging terminals of Desktop Holder (sold separately) while it is connected to the outlet.**

May cause burn injuries.



Prohibited

## Handset Use & Electronic Medical Equipment

This section is based on "**Guidelines on the Use of Radio Communications Equipment such as Cellular Telephones and Safeguards for Electronic Medical Equipment**"

(Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference, April 1997) and "**Report of Investigation of the Effects of Radio Waves on Medical Equipment, etc.**" (Association of Radio Industries and Businesses, March 2001).



### WARNING

**Persons with implanted pacemaker/defibrillator should keep handset more than 22 cm away.**

Radio waves may interfere with implanted pacemakers or defibrillators.



Compulsory

**If you intend to use electronic medical equipment other than implanted pacemaker/defibrillator outside medical facilities, consult the vendor on radio wave effects.**

Radio waves may interfere with electronic medical equipment.



Compulsory

**Observe these rules inside medical facilities to avoid effects of radio waves on electronic medical equipment:**



Compulsory

- Do not enter an operating room or an Intensive or Coronary Care Unit while carrying a handset.
- Keep handset off in hospitals; cancel the setting that turns handset power on automatically (alarm, etc.) beforehand.
- Even in lobbies or other places where handset use is permitted, keep handset off near electronic medical equipment.
- Obey medical facility rules on mobile phone use.

**Turn handset off in crowds or trains where persons with implanted pacemaker/defibrillator may be near; cancel the setting that turns handset power on automatically (alarm, etc.) beforehand.**



Compulsory

Radio waves may interfere with implanted pacemakers or defibrillators causing such devices to malfunction.

## General Notes

### General Use

- SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of files saved on handset/Memory Card. Keep separate copies of Phone Book entries, etc.
- Handset transmissions/TV signal reception may be disrupted inside buildings, tunnels or underground, or when moving into/out of such places.
- Use handset without disturbing others.
- Handsets are radios as stipulated by the Radio Law. Under the Radio Law, handsets must be submitted for inspection upon request.
- Handset use near landlines, TVs or radios may cause interference.
- For proper use of Memory Card (sold separately), read the manual beforehand.
- **Beware of eavesdropping.**  
Because this service is completely digital, the possibility of signal interception is greatly reduced. However, some transmissions may be overheard.  
**Eavesdropping**  
Deliberate/accidental interception of communications constitutes eavesdropping.
- An export license may be required to carry the handset into other countries if it is to be used by or transferred to another person. However, no such license is required when you take the handset abroad for personal use on a vacation or business trip and then bring it back. Export control regulations in the United States provide that an export license granted by the US government is required to carry the handset into Cuba, Iran, North Korea, Sudan or Syria.

### Handset & Hardware Care

- Handset is not waterproofed. Avoid exposure to liquids and high humidity.
  - Keep handset away from precipitation.
  - Cold air from air conditioning, etc. may condense causing corrosion.
  - Avoid dropping handset in damp places (restroom, bath/shower room, etc.).
  - On the beach, keep handset away from water and direct sunlight.
  - Perspiration may seep inside handset causing malfunction.
- If handset is left with no battery or an exhausted one, data may be altered/lost. SoftBank is not liable for any resulting damages.
- Use handset between 5°C - 35°C (35% - 85% humidity).
- Avoid extreme temperatures and direct sunlight.
- Exposing lens to direct sunlight may damage color filter and affect image color.
- Battery may not charge properly if ports/terminals are obstructed by dust, etc. Clean with a dry cloth, cotton swab, etc.
- Clean handset with a dry, soft cloth. Using alcohol, thinner, etc. may damage it.
- Avoid scratching Display.
- Avoid heavy objects or excessive pressure. May cause malfunction or injury.
  - Do not sit on handset in back pants pocket.
  - Do not place heavy objects on handset inside handbags, packs, etc.
- Connect only specified products to Headphone Port. Other devices may malfunction or cause damage.

- Always turn off handset before removing battery. If battery is removed while saving data or sending mail, data may be lost, changed or destroyed.
- Do not remove Memory Card or turn off handset power while using the card; may result in data loss or malfunction.
- When walking outside, moderate handset volume to avoid accidents.
- Do not use Desktop Holder (sold separately) inside vehicles. Vibration may damage handset, etc.

### Function Usage Limits

These functions are disabled after handset upgrade/replacement or service cancellation: Camera; Media Player; S! Applications; TV. After a period of disuse, these functions may be unusable; retrieve Network Information (P.14-7) to restore usability.

### Mobile Camera

- Mind your manners when using handset camera.
- Test the camera before capturing/recording special moments.
- Do not use handset camera in places where photography or videography is prohibited.

## Electromagnetic Waves

For body-worn operation, this phone has been tested and meets RF exposure guidelines when used with accessories containing no metal, that position handset a minimum of 15 mm from the body. Use of other accessories may not ensure compliance with RF exposure guidelines.

## CE Declaration of Conformity

# CE 0168

Hereby, Sharp Telecommunications of Europe Ltd. declares that 933SH is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC. A copy of the original declaration of conformity for each model can be found at the following Internet address: <http://www.sharp.co.jp/k-tai/>

## Battery - CAUTION

### Use specified battery or Charger only.

Non-specified equipment use may cause malfunctions, electric shock or fire due to battery leakage, overheating or bursting.

Do not dispose of an exhausted battery with ordinary refuse; always tape over battery terminals before disposal. Take battery to a SoftBank Shop, or follow the local disposal regulations.

Charge battery in ambient temperatures between 5°C and 35°C; outside this range, battery may leak/overheat and performance may deteriorate.

## European RF Exposure Information

Your mobile device is a radio transmitter and receiver. It is designed not to exceed the limits for exposure to radio waves recommended by international guidelines. These guidelines were developed by the independent scientific organization ICNIRP and include safety margins designed to assure the protection of all persons, regardless of age and health.

The guidelines use a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit for mobile devices is 2 W/kg. As mobile devices offer a range of functions, they can be used in other positions, such as on the body as described in this user guide<sup>\*</sup>.

Highest SAR value:

Model	At the Ear**	On the Body
933SH	0.616 W/kg	0.563 W/kg

As SAR is measured utilizing the device's highest transmitting power the actual SAR of this device while operating is typically below that indicated above. This is due to automatic changes to the power level of the device to ensure it only uses the minimum level required to reach the Network. The World Health Organization has stated that present scientific information does not indicate the need for any special precautions for the use of mobile devices. They note that if you want to reduce your exposure then you can do so by limiting the length of calls or using a handsfree device to keep the mobile phone away from the head and body.

<sup>\*</sup>Please see Electromagnetic Waves on the left for important notes regarding body-worn operation.

<sup>\*\*</sup>Measured in accordance with international guidelines for testing.

### FCC Notice

- This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:
  - (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
- Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the manufacturer responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

### FCC Information to User

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits of a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications.

However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation; if this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

1. Reorient/relocate the receiving antenna.
2. Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.

3. Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
4. Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

### FCC RF Exposure Information

Your handset is a radio transmitter and receiver. It is designed and manufactured not to exceed the emission limits for exposure to radio frequency (RF) energy set by the Federal Communications Commission of the U.S. Government.

The guidelines are based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organizations through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies. The standards include a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health. The exposure standard for wireless handsets employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit set by the FCC is 1.6 W/kg.

Highest SAR value:

Model	FCC ID	At the Ear	On the Body
933SH	APYHRO00098	0.455 W/kg	0.527 W/kg

This device was tested for typical body-worn operations with the back of the handset kept 1.5 cm from the body. To maintain compliance with FCC RF exposure requirements, use accessories that maintain a 1.5 cm separation distance between the user's body and the back of the handset. The use of beltclips, holsters and similar accessories should not contain metallic components in its assembly.

The use of accessories that do not satisfy these requirements may not comply with FCC RF exposure requirements, and should be avoided. The FCC has granted an Equipment Authorization for this model handset with all reported SAR levels evaluated as in compliance with the FCC RF emission guidelines. SAR information on this model handset is on file with the FCC and can be found at <https://fjallfoss.fcc.gov/oetcf/eas/reports/GenericSearch.cfm> under the Display Grant section after searching on the corresponding FCC ID (see table on the left). Additional information on Specific Absorption Rates (SAR) can be found on the Cellular Telecommunications & Internet Association (CTIA) Website at <http://www.phonefacts.net>.

## Rights, Trademarks & Patents

### Portrait Rights

Portrait rights protect individuals' right to refuse to be photographed or to refuse unauthorized publication/use of their photographs. Portrait rights consist of the right to privacy, which is applicable to all persons, and the right to publicity, which protects the interests of celebrities. Therefore, photographing others including celebrities and publicizing/distributing their photographs without permission is illegal; use handset camera responsibly.

### Copyrights

Copyright laws protect sounds, images, computer programs, databases, other materials and copyright holders. Duplicated material is limited to private use only. Use of materials beyond this limit or without permission of copyright holders may constitute copyright infringement, and be subject to criminal punishment. Comply with copyright laws when using images captured with handset camera.

The software contained in handset is copyrighted material; copyright, moral right and other related rights are protected by copyright laws. Do not copy, modify, alter, disassemble, decompile or reverse-engineer the software, and do not separate it from hardware in whole or part.

Video recording and playback are based on **MPEG-4**. This product is licensed under the MPEG-4 Visual Patent Portfolio License for the personal and non-commercial use of a consumer to (i) encode video in compliance with the MPEG-4 Video Standard ("MPEG-4 Video") and/or (ii) decode MPEG-4 Video that was encoded by a consumer engaged in a personal and non-commercial activity and/or was obtained from a licensed video provider. No license is granted or implied for any other use. Additional information may be obtained from MPEG LA.

See <http://www.mpegla.com>.

This product is licensed under the MPEG-4 Systems Patent Portfolio License for encoding in compliance with the MPEG-4 Systems Standard, except that an additional license and payment of royalties are necessary for encoding in connection with (i) data stored or replicated in physical media which is paid for on a title by title basis and/or (ii) data which is paid for on a title by title basis and is transmitted to an end user for permanent storage and/or use. Such additional license may be obtained from MPEG LA, LLC.

See <http://www.mpegla.com> for additional details.



Handset employs RSA® BSAFE™ software developed by RSA Security Inc.

RSA is a registered trademark of RSA Security Inc.  
BSAFE is a registered trademark of RSA Security Inc. in the United States and/or other countries.



## Safety Precautions

This product is equipped with JBlend™ designed to accelerate the performance of Java™ Application. Powered by JBlend™. Copyright 1997-2009 Aplix Corporation. All rights reserved.



JBlend and JBlend-related brands are trademarks or registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and other countries.

Java and Java-related brands are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries.



microSDHC™, microSD™ and miniSD™ are trademarks of the SD Card Association.

## NetFront®

This product employs NetFront Browser (Internet browser) and NetFront SMIL Player developed by ACCESS Co., Ltd.

Copyright© 2009 ACCESS Co., Ltd.

ACCESS and NetFront are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS Co., Ltd. in Japan or other countries.

This product includes a module developed by Independent JPEG Group.

IrSimple™, IrSS™ and IrSimpleShot™ are trademarks of the Infrared Data Association®.

Bluetooth is a registered trademark of the Bluetooth SIG, Inc.



The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by SHARP is under license.

The frequency band utilized by handset Bluetooth® function is shared with industrial, scientific or medical equipment, including household microwave ovens, etc., and used by radio stations, amateur radio stations, etc. (hereafter "other radio stations").

- 1 Before using Bluetooth®, visually confirm that no other radio stations sharing the same frequency band are in use nearby.
- 2 Should interference occur between handset and other radio stations, move or cancel Bluetooth® function immediately.
- 3 For additional information and support, contact us at the following number.

### SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information

From a SoftBank handset, call toll free at 157 for General Information.

From landlines, see **P.15-42** "Customer Service."

This radio station utilizes 2.4 GHz band with FHSS modulation. Maximum transmission radius is 10 meters (32 feet).

2.4FH1

Microsoft, PowerPoint and Excel are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

Powered by MascotCapsule®.

Powered by MascotCapsule®/3DView package™. MascotCapsule is a registered trademark of HI Corporation.

©2002-2009 HI Corporation. All rights reserved.

FeliCa is a contactless IC card technology developed by Sony Corporation.

FeliCa is a registered trademark of Sony Corporation.

☞ is a registered trademark of FeliCa Network, Inc.

Osaifu-Keitai is a registered trademark of NTT DOCOMO, INC.

QR Code is a registered trademark of DENSO WAVE INCORPORATED.



This product contains Adobe® Flash® Lite™ player software under license from Adobe Systems Incorporated.

Adobe Flash Lite Copyright © 2003-2007 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved.

Adobe, Flash and Flash Lite are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and other countries.

Wakeup TV, VeilView, Smartlink, Simulated Call, AQUOS, AQUOSハイビジョンレコーダー (AQUOSブルーレイ), AQUOS SHOT, Egao focus shutter, Furimuki shutter, Chase focus and Animation View are trademarks or registered trademarks of SHARP Corporation.



Document Viewer is enabled by Picstel Technologies.

Picstel, Picstel Powered, Picstel Viewer, Picstel File Viewer, Picstel Document Viewer, Picstel PDF Viewer and the Picstel cube logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Picstel Technologies Ltd.

Chaku-Uta and Chaku-Uta Full are registered trademarks of Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc.

BookSurfing® is a registered trademark of CELSYS Inc., Voyager Japan, Inc. and INFOCITY Inc.

Genius English-Japanese Dictionary ©2005-2008 Taishukan

Genius Japanese-English Dictionary ©2005-2008 Taishukan

Meikyo Japanese Dictionary ©2005-2008 Taishukan

- Genius EJ-Dic MX.net ©KONISHI Tomoshichi, MINAMIDE Kosei & Taishukan, 2008
- Genius JE-Dic MX.net ©KONISHI Tomoshichi, MINAMIDE Kosei & Taishukan, 2008
- Meikyo J-Dic MX.net ©KITAHARA Yasuo & Taishukan, 2008
- Imidas Encyclopedia ©SHUEISHA Inc.
- Encyclopedia Nipponica, Digital Daijisen, PROGRESSIVE English-Japanese Dictionary, PROGRESSIVE Japanese-English Dictionary ©Shogakukan Inc.
- Hot Pepper Pockets is a registered trademark of Recruit Co., Ltd.
- Amazon.co.jp is a trademark of Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates.



EUPHONY™ (a comprehensive sound enhancement system utilizing a virtual sound source processing technology) is a trademark of DiMAGIC Co., Ltd.



Dynamic Range Adjustment is based on iridix technology by Apical Limited.

Kanji Grabber™ is a trademark of Information System Products Co., Ltd.

PhotoSolid®, FaceSolid®, MovieSolid®, FrameSolid®, PhotoScouter®, TrackSolid™ and StroboPhoto™ are registered trademarks or trademarks of Morpho, Inc.

SOFTBANK, SoftBank and the SoftBank logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of SOFTBANK CORP. in Japan and other countries.

Yahoo! and the Yahoo! and Y! logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Yahoo! Inc.

#### CP8 PATENT

S! Application, S! GPS Navi, Mobile Widget, S! Quick News, S! Information Channel, S! Friend's Status, S! Circle Talk, Near Chat, S! Addressbook Back-up, Weather Indicator, Double Number, Customized Screen, Video Call, Decoration Call, PC Mail, PC Site Browser, Multi Job, Graphic Mail, S! Mail, Feeling Mail, Ichi Navi, Secure Remote Lock, Content Value Package and S-1 battle are trademarks or registered trademarks of SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.

Other company and product names mentioned herein are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective owners.

## Specific Absorption Rate (SAR)

### **933SH meets the government's requirements for exposure to radio waves.**

These requirements are based on scientific basis to assure that radio waves emitted from mobile phones and other handheld wireless devices do not affect human health. They require that the Specific Absorption Rate (SAR), which is the unit of measurement for the amount of radiofrequency absorbed by the body, shall not exceed 2 W/kg\*. This limit includes a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age or health, and meets the international standard set by International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP) in cooperation with World Health Organization (WHO).

All mobile phones, prior to product launch, must be certified as compliant with government requirements as stipulated by the Radio Law. 933SH has been granted Technical Regulations Conformity Certification by TELECOM ENGINEERING CENTER. Its highest SAR value is 0.574 W/kg. This value was obtained by TELECOM ENGINEERING CENTER as part of the certification process. SAR tests were conducted with handset transmitting at its highest certified power level in accordance with testing methods set by the government. While there may be differences between the SAR levels for various handsets, they all meet the governmental requirements for safe exposure. The actual SAR level of the handset while operating can be well below the highest value. This is because the handset is designed to operate at multiple power levels so as to use only the power required to reach the Network.

Additional information on SAR can be obtained on the following Websites.

---

Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications  
<http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/e/sys/ele/index.htm>  
Association of Radio Industries and Businesses (ARIB)  
<http://www.arib-empf.org/initiation/sar.html> (Japanese)

\*Requirements are stipulated in Radio Law (Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment, Article 14-2).

<b>Handset Parts</b> .....	<b>1-2</b>
Parts & Functions .....	1-2
<b>Charging Battery</b> .....	<b>1-4</b>
<b>Power On/Off</b> .....	<b>1-6</b>
Handset Power On/Off .....	1-6
<b>Display &amp; Indicators</b> .....	<b>1-7</b>
Display .....	1-7
Indicators .....	1-9
<b>Touch Panel</b> .....	<b>1-12</b>
Using Touch Panel.....	1-12
<b>Accessing Functions</b> .....	<b>1-14</b>
Main Menu .....	1-15
Shortcuts Menu & Key Shortcut ....	1-18
Toggling Active Functions (Multi Job)	
.....	1-19
Standby Shortcuts .....	1-20
Using Simplified Menus (Simple Menu)	
.....	1-22
Viewer Position Setup.....	1-23

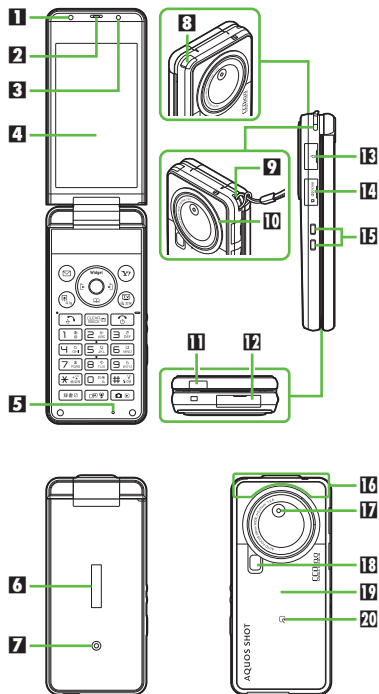
<b>Keypad Lock</b> .....	<b>1-24</b>
Activating/Canceling Keypad Lock	
.....	1-24
<b>Motion Control</b> .....	<b>1-25</b>
<b>Mobile Manners</b> .....	<b>1-27</b>
<b>Security Codes</b> .....	<b>1-28</b>
<b>Basic Tools</b> .....	<b>1-29</b>
My Details & Basic Tools .....	1-29
<b>Double Number</b> .....	<b>1-30</b>
Using Double Number .....	1-30
Modes.....	1-31
<b>Additional Functions</b> .....	<b>1-33</b>

# 1

## Getting Started

## 1 Parts & Functions

Getting Started



- 1 Light Sensor
- 2 Earpiece
- 3 Internal Camera
- 4 Display
- 5 Microphone
- 6 External Display
- 7 Small Light
- 8 Antenna (for TV reception)
- 9 Strap Eyelet
- 10 Speaker
- 11 Infrared Port
- 12 External Device Port (with Port Cover)
- 13 Headphone Port (with Port Cover)
- 14 Memory Card Slot (with Slot Cover)
- 15 Charging Terminals
- 16 Internal Antenna Location
- 17 External Camera (lens cover)
- 18 Mobile Light
- 19 Battery Cover
- 20 Logo

- Do not cover or place stickers, etc. over Light Sensor or Internal Antenna area.
- Replace Port/Slot Cover after Port/Slot use.
- Avoid metallic straps; Antenna sensitivity may be affected.

### Display Positions

#### Clamshell Closed



Keep handset closed when not in use.

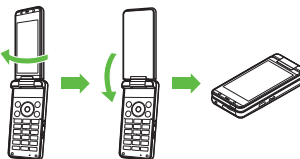
#### Clamshell Open



Open handset to place or answer calls, navigate with handset keys, etc.

#### Viewer Position

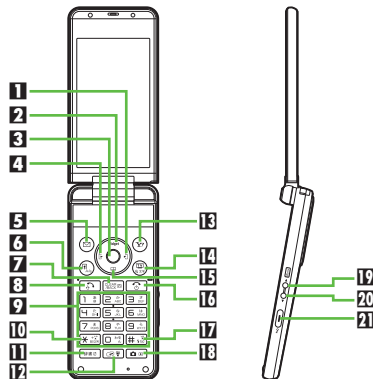
Handset is closed with Display facing outward.



Do not carry handset with Display in Viewer position. Display may be damaged.

## Handset Keys

- Keys are indicated in this guide as shown.
- Change functions with  $\wedge$  via Set Key Shortcut as needed.



- 1 Multi Selector (right)**  $\odot$   
Open Received Calls. Long Press to activate/cancel Infrared $\wedge$ .
- 2 Multi Selector (up)**  $\odot$   
Open Mobile Widget window. Long Press to open PC Site Browser menu $\wedge$ .
- 3 Center Key**  $\bullet$   
Open Main Menu.
- 4 Multi Selector (left)**  $\odot$   
Open Dialed Numbers. Long Press to activate/cancel Bluetooth $\wedge$ .
- 5 Mail Key**  $\text{envelope}$   
Open Messaging menu. Long Press to open S! Mail Composition window $\wedge$ .

- 6 Shortcuts & A/a Key**  $\text{envelope}$   
Open Shortcuts menu. Long Press to show active indicators (Status Icon List).
- 7 Clear/Back Key**  $\text{back}$   
Play Answer Phone messages. Long Press to activate/cancel Answer Phone.
- 8 Start Key**  $\text{phone}$   
Open All Calls. Long Press to open Double Number Mode menu.
- 9 Keypad**  $\text{0-9}$  -  $\text{call}$   
Enter numbers to place calls or access functions (Quick Operations). Long Press to open Phone Book.
- 10 \* Key**  $\text{star}$   
Enter \*, +, P, ? and -. Long Press to open S! Friend's Status member list.
- 11 Dictionary Key**  $\text{dictionary}$   
Open Dictionary. Long Press to activate/cancel VeilView.
- 12 Multi Job & Manner Key**  $\text{manner}$   
Select handset mode. Long Press to activate/cancel Manner mode.
- 13 Yahoo! Keitai Key**  $\text{y}$   
Open Yahoo! Keitai portal. Long Press to activate Familink Remote $\wedge$ .
- 14 TV & Text Key**  $\text{tv}$   
Activate TV. Long Press to open Change Menu window.
- 15 Multi Selector (down)**  $\odot$   
Open Phone Book. Long Press to create new Phone Book entries $\wedge$ .
- 16 Power On/Off Key**  $\text{power}$   
Toggle Standby display. Long Press to turn handset power off.
- 17 # Key**  $\text{hash}$   
Enter #. Long Press to activate/cancel Manner mode.

- 18 Camera Key**  $\text{camera}$   
Activate mobile camera. Long press to activate Review.

## Side Keys

- 19 Volume Up Key**  $\text{volume up}$   
**Closed:** Scroll External Display indicators, etc. Long Press to activate/cancel Manner mode.  
**Open:** Long Press to activate Hand Mirror. **Viewer:** Long Press to activate Hand Mirror.
- 20 Volume Down Key**  $\text{volume down}$   
**Closed:** Scroll External Display indicators, etc. Long Press to check e-money balance. **Open:** Show/hide Softkeys. **Viewer:** Show/hide Softkeys. Long Press to check e-money balance.
- 21 Keypad Lock & Camera Key**  $\text{lock}$   
**Closed:** Toggle Clock view. Long Press to illuminate Mobile Light.  
**Open:** Long Press to activate mobile camera. **Viewer:** Activate/cancel Keypad Lock. Long Press to activate mobile camera.

## Multi Selector &amp; Side Keys

- In this guide, Multi Selector and Side Key operations are indicated as follows:

Press $\odot$ or $\odot$	$\odot$
Press $\odot$ or $\odot$	$\odot$
Press $\odot$ , $\odot$ , $\odot$ or $\odot$	$\odot$
Press $\odot$ or $\odot$	$\odot$

## Charging Battery

Battery must be inserted in handset to charge it.

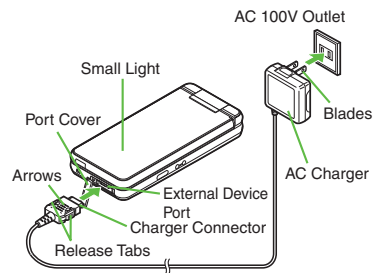
### Charging Battery Overseas

- SoftBank is not liable for problems resulting from charging battery abroad.

### AC Charger

Use specified AC Charger **ZTDAA1** (sold separately).

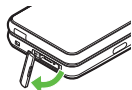
- In this guide, ZTDAA1 is referred to as "AC Charger."
- Handset and AC Charger may warm during charging.



### Important AC Charger Usage Note

- Fold back blades after charging. Do not pull, bend or twist the cord.

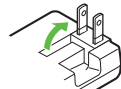
#### 1 Open Port Cover as shown



#### 2 Connect AC Charger

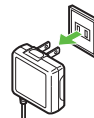
- With arrows up, insert connector until it clicks.

#### 3 Extend blades and plug AC Charger into AC outlet



- Small Light illuminates red while charging.
- Small Light goes out when battery is full.

#### 4 Unplug AC Charger



- Pull AC Charger straight out.

#### 5 Disconnect handset

- Squeeze release tabs to remove connector.

#### 6 Fold back blades and replace Port Cover

### When Small Light Flashes

- Battery is unchargeable; may be defective or simply at the end of its life; replace it.

## USB Charge

Connect handset (with power on) to PC via USB Cable to charge battery.

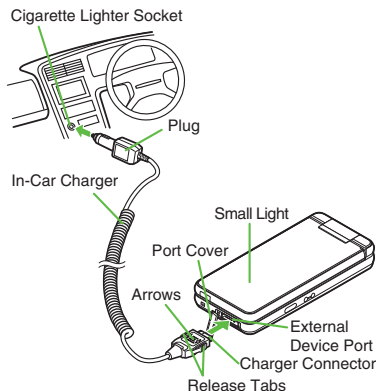
- Download and install USB Cable driver beforehand.
- Handset must be on to charge battery.
- Battery may not charge if handset is connected through a USB hub.

## In-Car Charger

In-Car Charger may be purchased separately.

### Important In-Car Charger Usage Notes

- Disconnect Charger before leaving vehicle to prevent charging with engine off.
- Do not use In-Car Charger with Desktop Holder.
- Avoid charging battery inside extremely hot vehicles.



### 1 Open Port Cover

### 2 Connect In-Car Charger

- With arrows up, insert connector until it clicks.

### 3 Plug Charger into cigarette lighter socket

### 4 Start car engine

- Small Light illuminates red while charging.
- Small Light goes out when battery is full.

### 5 Unplug Charger

### 6 Disconnect handset

- Squeeze release tabs to remove connector.

### 7 Replace Port Cover

## Advanced

- Disabling USB Charge (P.1-33)



# Handset Power On/Off

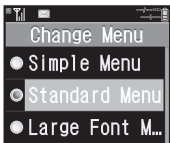
## Power On

Follow these steps when powering on 933SH for the first time:

### 1 (Long)

- After Power On Graphic, follow the steps below.

→ → → → → → **設定**  
 → → **Language** → → **English**  
 → → (Long) → (Long) → Change Menu window opens



### 2 Select option →

Guide descriptions are based on Standard Menu.

- My Details setup starts.

### 3 Enter last name → → Enter first name → →

- Change Menu display option confirmation appears.

### 4 Yes or No →



Standby

- Choose **No** to enter Standby immediately after powering on.

#### When USIM Card is Not Installed

- **Insert USIM Card** appears; insert the card to use handset.

## Retrieving Network Information

Handset initiates Network Information retrieval when , , or is pressed for the first time.



Follow these steps to retrieve Network Information to use Network-related services and TV; retrieval automatically sets Clock:

### 1 Yes → → Retrieval starts

### 2

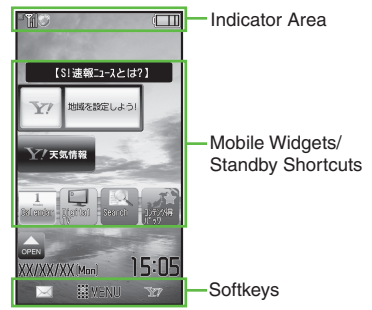
## Power Off

### 1 (Long)

- After Power Off Graphic, handset shuts down.

# Display

## Standby

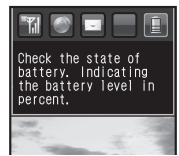


Hereafter, most screenshots omit Mobile Widgets and Standby Shortcuts.

## Indicator Descriptions

Check active indicators and their descriptions. (Status Icon List)

### 1 (Long)



- Alternatively, tap indicator area.
- Active indicators are enlarged; description for selected indicator appears.
- Use to select indicators to view their descriptions.
- Press to open menu/window (e.g., Battery Meter window from battery strength indicator). May be unavailable for some indicators.

## Information

Information window opens at the bottom for Missed Calls, new mail, etc.






Information Window

Information label (e.g., **Message**, etc.) and count appear in Information window. Select an item and press to open it.

## Advanced

- Handling Information list (P.1-33)

### Softkeys

Functions/operations assigned to ,  and  appear at the bottom of Display in portrait orientation with clamshell open.



### Using Touch Panel

In clamshell open (landscape) or Viewer position, Softkeys (shown right) appear. Tap a Softkey to execute assigned function/operation. Some key assignments may vary with Display position/window content.

### Portrait Orientation





### Landscape Orientation



### Display Saving

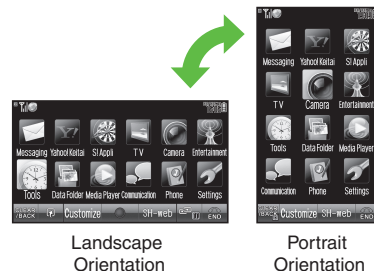
Display goes dark after Display Saving time elapses. Press any key to activate it.

### Backlight


- Backlight turns off after Time Out time elapses. Press  -  to illuminate it (key press may affect active function).

### Display Rotation

Sensor detects handset movement. In Viewer position, Display orientation changes with handset orientation. Display orientation for clamshell open is fixed by default; set to rotate as needed.






### Advanced


-  Changing Display rotation method (P.1-34)







# Indicators

## Display Indicators

,  and  indicate line type in Dual Mode (P.1-30).

### Basic Status

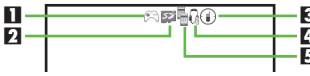













<b>1</b>		Within 3G range
<b>2</b>		Within GSM range
<b>3</b>		International roaming in progress
<b>2</b>		Signal strength <sup>1</sup>
<b>3</b>		Packet transmission available
<b>4</b>		Battery strength <sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup>The more bars the better.

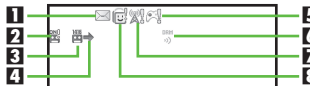
<sup>2</sup>Battery strength % (appears when Display activates, etc.) is an approximation.













### Function Status




<b>1</b>		Active S! Application
<b>2</b>		Paused S! Application
<b>1</b>		Music playback in progress
<b>1</b>		TV recording in progress (handset)
<b>1</b>		TV recording in progress (Memory Card)
<b>2</b>		Memory Card in use
<b>2</b>		Memory Card formatting
<b>2</b>		TV Timer/TV Recording Timer set
<b>3</b>		Compass Indicator
<b>4</b>		Music playback in progress (via Bluetooth®)
<b>5</b>		Multiple functions (Multi Job) active




### Notifications

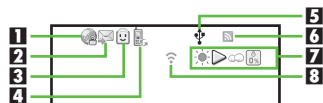


<b>1</b>		Unread mail
<b>1</b>		Unread Delivery Report
<b>2</b>		Answer Phone active & message recorded
<b>2</b>		Answer Phone canceled & message recorded
<b>3</b>		New Voicemail
<b>4</b>		Missed Call or new mail on idle line
<b>5</b>		S! Appli/Mobile Widget Notification
<b>6</b>		Contents Key received
<b>7</b>		Unread S! Information Channel info
<b>7</b>		Software Update result
<b>7</b>		Unread S! Quick News info
<b>8</b>		Unread S! Friend's Status notification or unanswered registration request

### Warnings



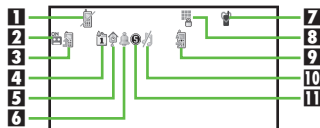
<b>1</b>		Mail memory low
<b>2</b>		Message delivery failure
<b>3</b>		Memory Card unusable/misinserted

**Transmissions**


<b>1</b>		SSL browsing in progress <sup>1</sup>
		Waiting packet transmission
<b>2</b>		Receiving mail
		Sending mail
<b>3</b>		S! Friend's Status online
		Positioning in progress <sup>2</sup>
<b>4</b>		Software Update in progress
		USB Cable connected
		USB transmission in progress
		Infrared transmission in progress
		Infrared file transfer in progress
		Bluetooth <sup>®</sup> transmission ready
<b>5</b>		Bluetooth <sup>®</sup> transmission in progress ( appears for multiple connections)
		Bluetooth <sup>®</sup> talk in progress
		IC Transmission in progress
		S! Addressbook Back-up transmission in progress
		PC Site Browser in use
<b>6</b>		RSS-compatible site
<b>7</b>		Weather Indicator
<b>8</b>		Infrared transmission ready

<sup>1</sup>Hidden while Mobile Widget is in use.

<sup>2</sup>Flashes while positioning.

**Settings**


<b>1</b>		Offline Mode active
<b>2</b>		Answer Phone active
<b>3</b>		Call Forwarding or Voicemail active (forwarding condition: <b>Always</b> ) <sup>*</sup>
<b>4</b>		Schedule/Task (Alarm set)
		Schedule/Task (Alarm unset)
<b>5</b>		Hour Minder active
<b>6</b>		Alarm set
		Wakeup TV set
		Manner mode active
<b>7</b>		Drive mode active
		Original mode active
		VeilView active
<b>8</b>		Keypad Lock active
		IC Card Lock active
<b>9</b>		Auto Answer or Remote Monitor active
		Ringtone (Silent)
<b>10</b>		Ringtone (Increasing Volume)
		Vibration active
<b>11</b>		Show Secret Data active
		Function Lock active

<sup>\*</sup>Indicator does not appear when Call Forwarding is set to Video Calls only, with Voicemail unset.

## External Display Indicators

## Basic Status

1 2



1		Signal strength*
2		Battery strength

\*The more bars the better.

## Notifications

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11



1		Missed Calls
2		Answer Phone message recorded
3		Missed Call Notification
4		New Voicemail
5		Unread mail
6		Unread Delivery Report
7		Contents Key received
8		Unread S! Information Channel info
9		Weather Indicator update
10		Location Info request
11		Pedometer target achieved

## Warnings

1 2 3 4 5



1		Message delivery failure
2		S! Information Channel info reception failure
3		Decoration Call transmission failure
4		IP Service connection failure
5		Weather Indicator update failure

## Handset Status

1 2 3 4 5 6 7



1		Alarm
2		Schedule Alarm
3		Task Alarm
4		S! Appli/Mobile Widget Notification
5		Unread S! Friend's Status notification
6		TV Alarm (watch)
7		TV Alarm (record)

## External Display Date &amp; Time

- Press to toggle Clock view.

## Using Touch Panel

Touch Display to select menu items, move pointer, scroll pages, etc.

Available in clamshell open or Viewer position (regardless of orientation).



### Advanced

- Adjusting Touch vibration (P.1-33)

### Selection & Execution

#### ■ Tap



Tap Display to open windows or execute Softkey functions/operations.

- Tap twice to execute certain operations.

#### Special Operations (Double Tap)

Tap twice in rapid succession (within approximately 0.6 seconds) to switch window size while Multi Job is active, to enlarge/reduce images, etc.

#### ■ Long Touch



Touch and hold Display to execute certain functions/operations.

#### Long Touch Operations

##### Softkeys

Alternative functions/operations may be available.

##### Standby & Function Windows

Long Touch Display to open function/operation menu.

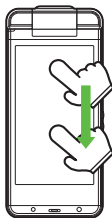
##### Internet Pages & Post-Image Capture Windows

Enlarge specific areas.

##### Text Entry Windows

Long Touch onscreen hiragana key to open list of hiragana in that row with <sup>ˆ</sup> or <sup>ˆ</sup>, etc.

## Move/Draw (Drag)



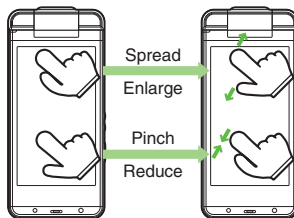
Touch and drag target item to move it; release your finger to stop/save. Move icons, scroll lists, etc.

## Screen Scroll (Swipe)



To see items outside Display area, swipe a finger across Display in opposite direction.

## Enlarge/Reduce (Spread/Pinch)



Pinch or spread your fingers to reduce or enlarge images, etc.

## Important Usage Notes

- Touch Panel may not respond in these situations:
  - Use with gloved fingers/fingernails
  - Use of pens, pencils or other sharp objects
  - Use with objects placed on/against Display
- To prevent malfunctions, do not:
  - Touch Display with wet fingers
  - Subject Display to force/pressure
  - Place labels or stickers over Display
- Calibrate Touch Panel (P.1-17) to improve response.



## 1 Accessing Functions

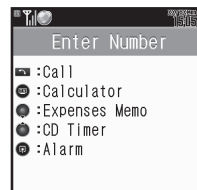
Use the following methods as needed.

### Main Menu



Repeat menu item selection.

### Quick Operations



Enter numbers to access functions.  
To activate functions, press the corresponding key.

Select menu items

Enter numbers

Use shortcuts

### Shortcuts



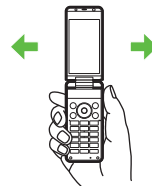
Access assigned functions (changeable).

### Standby Shortcuts



Save functions to Standby.

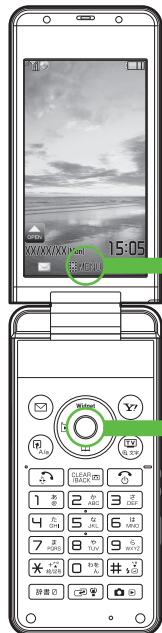
### Quick Shortcut



Shake handset to access assigned functions. (Complete setup beforehand.)

# Main Menu

## Opening Main Menu



■ Touch Panel



■ Handset Key



### Window Description



— Main Menu Items

<b>Messaging</b>	Open/create messages, etc.
<b>Yahoo! Keitai</b>	Browse the Internet
<b>S! Appli</b>	Use S! Applications including games
<b>TV</b>	Watch/record TV programs
<b>Camera</b>	Capture images or record video
<b>Entertainment</b>	Read e-Books, receive news updates, etc.
<b>Tools</b>	Manage schedules, set Alarm, scan QR Codes, etc.
<b>Data Folder</b>	Open files saved on handset/Memory Card
<b>Media Player</b>	Play/download media files
<b>Communication</b>	Communicate with other users in various ways
<b>Phone</b>	Search contacts, add entries, etc.
<b>Settings</b>	Customize handset interface, sounds, etc.

Follow these steps to open **World Clock** via handset keys or Touch Panel:  
(Touch Panel navigation screenshots are based on Viewer position.)

**Menu Navigation (Handset Keys)**

Press **○** in Standby



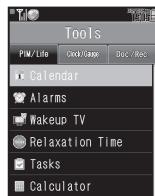
**Open Main Menu**

Use **○** to highlight **Tools**



**Select Item**

Use **○** to select **Clock/Gauge** tab

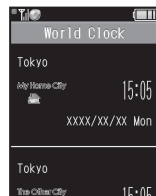


**Open Tab**

Use **○** to select **World Clock**



**Select Item**



**Menu Navigation (Touch Panel)**

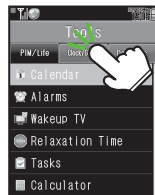
**Tap MENU** in Standby



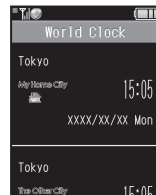
**Tap Tools**



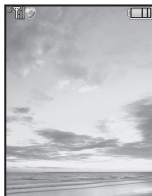
**Tap Clock/Gauge** tab



**Tap World Clock**



## Escape/Return (Handset Keys)

Press Press   
(Standby returns)Navigate  
BackReturn to  
Standby

Tap CLEAR/BACK






Tap 

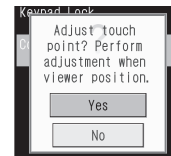
Standby returns

## Escape/Return (Touch Panel)

## Calibrating Touch Panel


Calibrate Touch Panel to improve response. Hold handset normally during calibration.

- 1   **Settings** 
- 2 In Phone menu, **Touch Panel** 
- 3 **Correct Touch Panel** 



- 4 **Yes** 
  - Follow onscreen instructions.

## Undo Calibration

- If calibration does not improve response, follow these steps to restore default setting:  
**After 4,** 

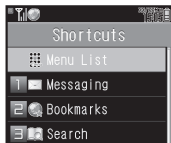
# 1 Shortcuts Menu & Key Shortcut

Getting Started

## Shortcuts Menu

Access assigned functions via Shortcuts menu.

1



Shortcuts Menu

2 **Select function**

- Menu/window opens.

### Changing Default Shortcuts

In 2, select numbered function

**Assign Function**

Select menu item Select new item

- To assign menu items, select one and press .

### Assigning Files & Folders

In 2, select numbered function

**Assign Data** Select file/folder

- For folders, select **Set this folder** and press .

## Advanced

- Changing item order
- Restoring default shortcuts (P.1-33)

## Key Shortcut

In Standby, Long Press , or to access assigned functions.

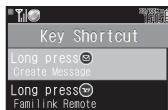
	Open S! Mail Composition window
	Activate Familink Remote
	Open PC Site Browser menu
	Create new Phone Book entries
	Activate/cancel Bluetooth®
	Activate/cancel Infrared

## Changing Assigned Functions

Follow these steps to assign Calculator to .

1 **Settings**

2 **In Phone menu, Set Key Shortcut**



Key Shortcut Menu

3 **Long press**



4 **From Appli**

5 **Tools** **In PIM/Life menu, Calculator**

### Bookmark

In 4, **From Bookmark**

Select title **Yes**

### Bluetooth® or Infrared On/Off

In 4, **From Other** Select item

### Canceling Assigned Function

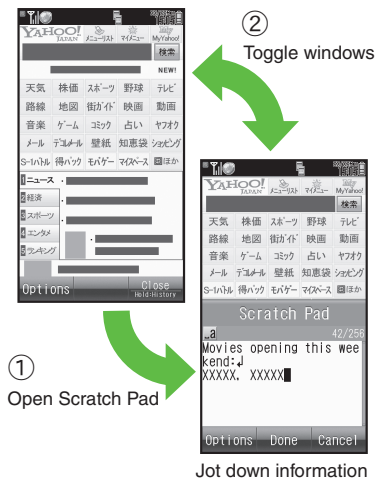
In 4, **Off**


# Toggle Active Functions (Multi Job)

## Multi Job Feature

Access a function in Shortcuts menu while another is active.

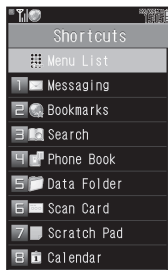
While browsing the Internet




Multi Job may not activate from some menus/windows (e.g., ringtone/ringvideo selection, etc.). Multi Job is disabled while  (gold) appears.

## Using Multi Job

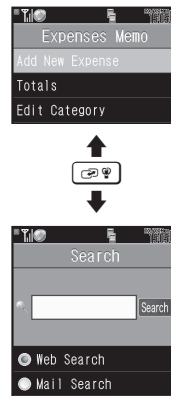
- ① In a function window, .  
In text entry/dial windows, Long Press .




- ② Select function → 



- ③ To toggle active windows, 



- ④  → Multi Job ends
- If a confirmation appears, follow onscreen prompts.



**Using Shortcuts**

- 1 ➔ **Use to select icon**  
➔
- Menu/window opens or command is executed.

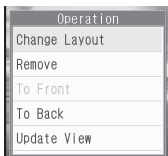
**Using Touch Panel****Tap icon**

- If no icon appears, press (tap (Widget On) in Viewer position).

**Removing Shortcuts from Standby**

- 1 ➔ **Use to select icon**  
➔

- 2 **Operation** ➔



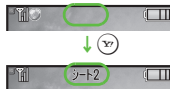
- 3 **Remove** ➔

- 4 **Yes** ➔

**Toggling Sheets**

Toggle sheets to use Standby Shortcuts and widgets pasted on each sheet.

- 1 ➔



- To toggle further, press or
- Sheet name appears at the top, then disappears.
- Save Standby Shortcuts as needed; corresponding icons appear on the current sheet.

**Using Touch Panel****Drag finger left or right**

- If no icon appears, press (tap (Widget On) in Viewer position).

**Using Locked Sheets**

➔ **Select** ➔ ➔ **Enter**

**Handset Code** ➔

- Alternatively, tap then enter Handset Code and tap **OK**.

**Advanced**

- Removing icons at once by sheet Editing sheet names Locking sheets (P.1-33 - 1-34)



# 1 Using Simplified Menu (Simple Menu)

## Simple Menu Features

Activate Simple Menu to reduce available handset functions and simplify menus.



- Fonts are enlarged and appear in bold.
- Clock is enlarged (Calendar is hidden).

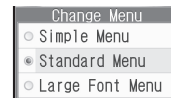
## Menu Items

<b>Messaging</b>	Received Msg., Create Msg., Drafts, Templates, Sent Messages, Unsent Msg., Create SMS
<b>Phone</b>	Phone Book, Add New Entry, Play Messages, Answer Phone, Call VM, My Details, Speed Dial/Mail
<b>Camera</b>	Photo Camera, Video Camera, Hand Mirror, Scan Barcode, Scan Card, Kanji Grabber, Scan Text, Review, Photo Settings, Video Settings, SetCameraKey
<b>Convenient Tool</b>	Calendar, Alarms, Calculator, Assignment, Dictionary, Notepad, S! GPS Navi, Pedometer, Compass, S! Friend's Status, S! Circle Talk, Double Number, Change Menu
<b>Data Folder</b>	-
<b>TV</b>	-

Key assignments are largely the same as those in Standard Menu.

## Activating Simple Menu

### 1 (Long)



### 2 Simple Menu →

#### While Using an Incompatible Function

- End the function before activating Simple Menu.

#### Canceling Simple Menu

(Long) → Standard Menu →

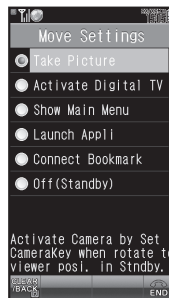
## Viewer Position Setup

Set handset to automatically execute one of these actions upon rotating Display to Viewer position:

<b>Take Picture</b>	Activate mobile camera
<b>Activate Digital TV</b>	Activate TV
<b>Show Main Menu</b>	Open Main Menu
<b>Launch Appli</b>	Access assigned function
<b>Connect Bookmark</b>	Access saved URL
<b>Off(Standby)</b>	Keep Standby

Upon first rotation, setup menu opens.

### 1 Rotate Display (first time)



Viewer Position Menu

### 2 Select item → ●

- Setting is applied and Viewer position setup option confirmation appears.

### 3 Yes or No → ●

- Selection appears.

#### Launch Appli or Connect Bookmark

- Handset accesses the assigned function or URL; change function/URL as needed.

#### From Standby

- → **Settings** → ● → **In Phone menu, Viewer Position** → ● → **Move Settings** → ● → **Select item** → ●

## Advanced

- Changing function assigned to Launch Appli in Move Settings
- Changing URL assigned to Connect Bookmark in Move Settings (P.1-34)

## 1 Activating/Canceling Keypad Lock

Getting Started

### Activating

Prevent accidental operation/function activation in Viewer position.

#### 1 In Viewer position,

- Display goes dark and Keypad Lock activates.

#### When Keypad Lock is Active

- Handset keys and Touch Panel are locked.

### Canceling

Open handset (clamshell open). To cancel Keypad Lock in Viewer position, follow these steps:

#### 1

- Display activates.

#### 2

- Keypad Lock deactivates.
- Alternatively, swipe down on ▼  
**Unlock.**

#### Automatic Keypad Lock (Viewer Position)

- In Viewer position, Display goes dark and Keypad Lock activates after a period of inactivity; follow the steps above to cancel it.

### Advanced

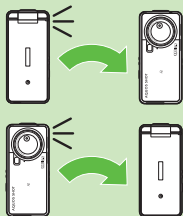
-   Canceling Keypad Lock upon Display activation
-  Changing Keypad Lock cancellation method (P.1-33)

## Motion Control

Sensor detects handset orientation or movement. Move handset to navigate pages, access functions, etc.

- Cancel Keypad Lock and activate Display first. (Not necessary for activating Quick Silent.)
- Adjust Motion Control sensor (**P.1-35**) before using Motion Control for the first time.
- Activate Motion Control by function beforehand.

### Turn Over



### Activate Quick Silent

Turn handset over to instantly mute ringer and stop vibration.

#### Ringer

Incoming Calls,  
Alarms, etc.

#### Vibration

Incoming Calls,  
Alarms, etc.

- Some tones may not be silenced.

### Open Quick Shortcut

Shake handset left and right approximately three times in Standby to access assigned functions.

- Change assigned functions as needed.

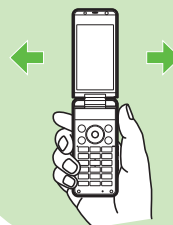
#### Activate Camera

Portrait  
Orientation

#### Activate TV

Landscape  
Orientation

### Shake Left/Right



### Navigate Functions

Shake to the left to navigate back, or right to navigate forward.

#### Music

Music Player

#### Channels

TV

#### Images

Data Folder  
(Pictures)

#### Pages

Document  
Viewer

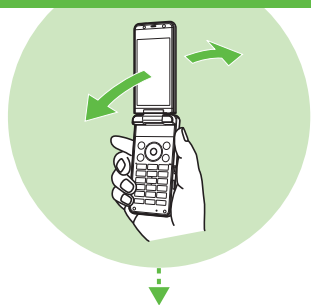
### Multi Job

Shake to the left or right to toggle active windows.

#### Toggle Windows

Multi Job

## Shake Forward or Backward



## Zoom In/Zoom Out

Shake forward to enlarge, or backward to reduce.

## Fonts

Yahoo! Keitai  
Message Window

## Zoom Image

Data Folder  
(Pictures)

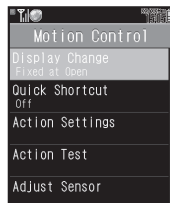
## Zoom Page

PC Site Browser  
Document Viewer

## Toggling Motion Control On/Off

1 → Settings →

2 In Phone menu, *Motion Control* →



Motion Control Menu

3 *Action Settings* →

4 Select function →

5 On or Off →

## Enabling Quick Shortcut

1 In Motion Control menu, *Quick Shortcut* →

2 *Switch On/Off* →

3 *On* →

Activating Show Secret Data Temporarily  
Enter Handset Code → Shake handset left or right

- Close handset (clamshell closed) in Standby to cancel Show Secret Data.

## Important Motion Control Usage Notes

- Hold/shake handset correctly to avoid unintended results.
- Motion Control may be unavailable while handset is ringing/vibrating.
- Confirm there is ample space for Motion Control use; hold handset firmly and shake it gently to avoid injury/breakage. Do not shake handset roughly; handset may slip, resulting in injury or damage.

## Advanced

- Changing Quick Shortcut items
- Deleting Quick Shortcut items
- Restoring default Quick Shortcut items
- Practicing Motion Control actions
- Adjusting Motion Control sensor (P.1-34 - 1-35)

## Mobile Manners

Please use your handset responsibly. Use these basic tips as a guide. Inappropriate handset use can be both dangerous and bothersome. Please take care not to disturb others when using your handset. Adjust handset use according to your surroundings.

- Turn it off in theaters, museums and other places where silence is the norm.
- Refrain from using it in restaurants, hotel lobbies, elevators, etc.
- Observe signs and instructions regarding handset use aboard trains, etc.
- Refrain from use that interrupts the flow of pedestrian or vehicle traffic.

### Manner Mode

Mutes most handset function sounds.

#### 1 (Long)




- Manner mode is set.

#### When Manner Mode is Active

- Ringtones and other sounds are muted.
- 933SH vibrates for transmissions/alerts.
- Shutter click still sounds at fixed volume.

#### Canceling Manner Mode

 (Long)

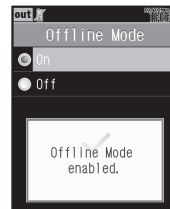
### Offline Mode

Temporarily suspends all transmissions.

#### 1 **Settings** **Network**



#### 2 **Offline Mode**

#### 3 **On**



- Offline Mode is set.

#### Canceling Offline Mode

In  **Off** 

### Advanced

-   Changing handset modes  Creating a custom mode  Resetting Mode Settings (P.1-35)

## Security Codes

These codes are required for handset use.

- Write down Security Codes.
- Do not reveal Security Codes. SoftBank is not liable for misuse or damages.

<b>Handset Code</b>	9999 by default; use or change some functions
<b>Center Access Code</b>	4-digit code selected at contract; access Optional Services via landlines or change contract details
<b>Network Password*</b>	4-digit code selected at contract; restrict incoming/outgoing calls (Call Barring)

\*Change as needed.

### Incorrect Code Entry

- **Handset code is incorrect!** appears; try again.
- If Network Password is incorrectly entered three times consecutively, Call Barring settings are locked. To resolve, Network Password and Center Access Code must be changed.

### Changing Handset Code

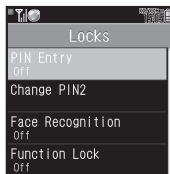
Enter four to eight digits for new Handset Code.

1 → **Settings** →



Phone Menu

2 **Locks** →



3 **Chg. Handset Code** →



4 **Enter current Handset Code** →



5 **Enter new Handset Code** →



6 **Re-enter new Handset Code** →

## My Details & Basic Tools

### My Number



- Handset phone number and the name entered at initial setup appear.

### Editing My Details

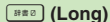
After 1, (select tab) → Select item → → Select item → → Edit → →

### VeilView

Activate VeilView to prevent peeking.



### Canceling VeilView



### Hand Mirror

Use Internal Camera to transform Display into a compact mirror.  
Image capture/recording is not available.



- Mobile camera activates and Internal Camera image appears.



### Pen Light



- Mobile Light illuminates.



### Important Pen Light Usage Note

- Do not point Pen Light at people or look at it directly.

### Battery Meter



- Approximate battery strength appears.

### Changing Battery Strength Indicator Pattern

After 2, → Select pattern →

### Battery Strength %

- 100% may not appear even when battery is full. This is by design; not a malfunction.

### Phone Help



- For *Indicators*, select category and press .

## Advanced

- Clearing My Details Toggling My Details in Dual Mode Changing battery strength indicator pattern Changing VeilView pattern/density (P.1-35)

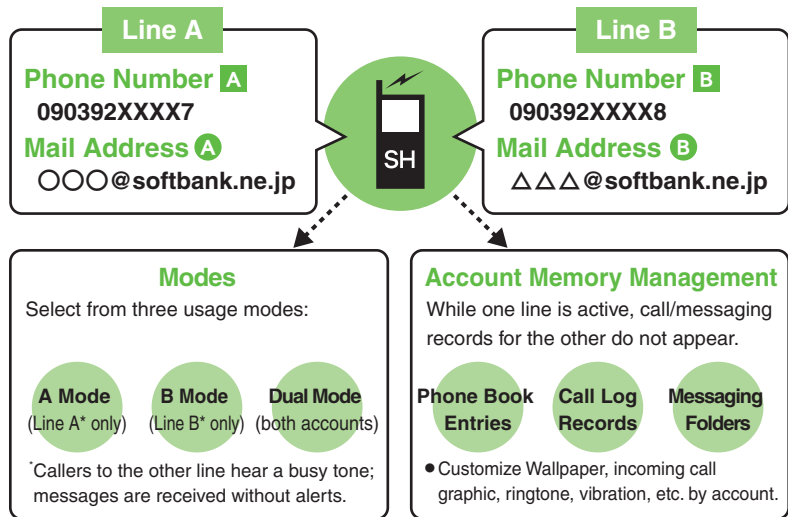


## Using Double Number

Manage two accounts (Line A and Line B, with separate phone numbers and mail addresses) on one handset.

- Double Number requires a separate contract and basic monthly fee.
- While abroad, any Line B messaging charges are applied to Line A.
- For more information, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P.15-42).

### Two Phone Numbers & Two Mail Addresses



### Activating Double Number

Make sure signal is stable.

- 1 → **Settings** →
- 2 In Phone menu, **Double Number** →
- 3 **Switch On/Off** →
- 4 **On** →
- 5 **Enter Handset Code** → → **Yes** →

### Canceling Double Number

In , **Off** → →

- When Double Number is canceled:
  - Line B calls and SMS messages are redirected to Line A Phone Number.
  - Initial portion of Line B S! Mail is redirected to Line A. (Full messages are irretrievable.)
  - Double Number account is not affected.

# Modes

Activate **A Mode** to use Line A only, **B Mode** to use Line B only, or **Dual Mode** to use both accounts.

## A Mode

### Receive Calls to Line A Only

- Place calls or send messages via Line A.

#### A Mode & B Mode Precautions

- Line indicators do not appear in Phone Book entries, message lists, Call Log records, etc.
- When an operation affects information on the other line, a confirmation appears. Follow onscreen prompt(s).

## B Mode

### Receive Calls to Line B Only

- Place calls or send messages via Line B.

#### B Mode Restrictions

- Handset connects to the Internet via Line A. (During Internet connections, place/receive calls via Line B.)
- S! Friend's Status, S! Circle Talk and Decoration Call are unavailable.

## Advanced

- Omitting Handset Code entry when switching modes
- Renaming Double Number modes
- Showing indicator for calls missed or new mail on idle line
- Hiding Internet connection confirmation (P.1-36)

Dual  
Mode

## Receive Calls to Both Accounts

- Place calls or send messages via Line A (or the account of record for Phone Book entries or Call Log records) by default; toggle accounts as required.

## Phone Book Entries

Specify A, B or Dual.

## Messaging








Select Line A or Line B.  
Sender Address changes accordingly.

## Calling


Select Line A or Line B.  
Caller ID changes accordingly.

- ,  and  indicate line type in Phone Book entries, message lists, Call Log records, etc.


## Switching Modes

-  (Long)
- Enter Handset Code  
- Select mode  
  - For *B Mode* confirmation appears.
- Yes  

## In Dual Mode

During an operation, if prompt window below appears, select a line and press .



If customizable by line, line indicator appears bottom right; press  to switch.



If line selection is otherwise required, follow onscreen prompts.

## Advanced

-   Rejecting calls to either line in Dual Mode
-  Setting main line for Dual Mode (P.1-36)

## USB Charge

Disabling USB Charge	→ <b>Settings</b> →  →  → <b>USB Charge</b> →  → <b>Disable</b> →
----------------------	---

## Information

Handling Information list	<b>Start Here</b> → <b>Phone</b> →  → See below
	<b>Opening List Manually Information</b> →
	<b>Clearing List Information</b> →  →  → <b>Yes</b> →

## Touch Panel

Adjusting Touch vibration	<b>Start Here</b> → <b>Settings</b> →  → In Phone menu, <b>Touch Panel</b> →  → <b>Touch Reaction</b> →  → See below
	<b>Touch Vibration Off in Manner Mode On(Except Manner Mode)</b> →
	<b>Touch Vibration Always Off Off</b> →

## Keypad Lock

Canceling Keypad Lock upon Display activation	→ <b>Settings</b> →  → In Phone menu, <b>Touch Panel</b> →  → <b>Keypad Lock</b> →  → <b>Set Keypad Lock</b> →  → <b>Simple Lock</b> →
Changing Keypad Lock cancellation method	→ <b>Settings</b> →  → In Phone menu, <b>Touch Panel</b> →  → <b>Keypad Lock</b> →  → <b>Keypad Unlock</b> →  → Select method →

## Shortcuts

Changing item order	→ Select numbered function →  → <b>Move</b> →  → Select target location →
Restoring default shortcuts	→ Select numbered function →  → <b>Set to Default</b> →  → <b>Yes</b> →

## Standby Shortcut

### Operations in Standby

Sorting icons	→  → <b>Sort Icon</b> →  → Select method → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Widgets are not affected.</li> </ul>
Moving icons	→ Use  to select icon →  → <b>Operation</b> →  → <b>Change Layout</b> →  → Specify target location →
Moving icons to front/back	→ Use  to select icon →  → <b>Operation</b> →  → <b>To Front or To Back</b> →
Removing icons at once by sheet	<b>Start Here</b> →  → <b>Operate from List</b> →  → <b>Remove</b> →  → See below
	<b>All Icons</b> <b>Remove All</b> →  →  → <b>Shortcut</b> → Select sheet →  → <b>Yes</b> →
	<b>Selected Icons</b> <b>Select also Remove</b> →  →  → <b>Shortcut</b> → Select icon →  ( <input type="checkbox"/> / <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ) → Complete selection →  → <b>Yes</b> →

## Sheets

Editing sheet names	<p>[Start Here]      <i>Settings</i> <i>Sheet Settings</i> <i>Change Sheet Name</i> </p> <p>See below</p> <p><b>Renaming</b></p> <p>Select sheet   Enter name  </p>
	<p><b>Resetting All Sheet Names</b></p> <p> <i>Yes</i> </p>
Locking sheets	<p>[Start Here]      <i>Settings</i> <i>Sheet Settings</i> <i>Set Sheet Lock</i>   Enter Handset Code   See below</p> <p><b>Activating Lock</b></p> <p>Select sheet   On  </p>
	<p><b>Changing Method for Temporary Access</b></p> <p><i>Unlock Method</i> <i>No Password</i> </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press , then select  and press  to unlock sheet temporarily.</li> </ul>

## Viewer Position Setup

Changing function assigned to <i>Launch Appli</i> in Move Settings	<p> <i>Settings</i>   In Phone menu, <i>Viewer Position</i> <i>Set Appli</i>   Select menu item   Select new item  </p>
Changing URL assigned to <i>Connect Bookmark</i> in Move Settings	<p> <i>Settings</i>   In Phone menu, <i>Viewer Position</i> <i>Set Bookmark</i>   Select title   Yes  </p>

## Motion Control

Changing Display rotation method	<p> <i>Settings</i>   In Phone menu, <i>Motion Control</i> <i>Display Change</i> </p> <p>Select method  </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When set to <i>Manual</i>, press  to toggle Display orientation.</li> </ul>
Changing Quick Shortcut items	<p> <i>Settings</i>   In Phone menu, <i>Motion Control</i> <i>Quick Shortcut</i> <i>Shortcut Entry</i> <i>Portrait or Landscape</i>   Select menu item   Select new item  </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To assign menu items, select one and press .</li> </ul>
Deleting Quick Shortcut items	<p> <i>Settings</i>   In Phone menu, <i>Motion Control</i> <i>Quick Shortcut</i> <i>Shortcut Entry</i> <i>Portrait or Landscape</i> <i>Delete</i> <i>Yes</i> </p>
Restoring default Quick Shortcut items	<p> <i>Settings</i>   In Phone menu, <i>Motion Control</i> <i>Quick Shortcut</i> <i>Shortcut Entry</i> <i>Reset Settings</i>   Enter Handset Code   <i>Yes</i> </p>
Practicing Motion Control actions	<p> <i>Settings</i>   In Phone menu, <i>Motion Control</i> <i>Action Test</i>   Select item  </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Follow onscreen instructions.</li> </ul>

Adjusting Motion Control sensor	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <b>Settings</b> → ● → In Phone menu, <b>Motion Control</b> → ● → <b>Adjust Sensor</b> → ●</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Follow onscreen instructions.</li> <li>● Avoid adjusting sensor near metal/magnetic objects or aboard trains or in vehicles.</li> </ul>

## Mode

Changing handset modes	<p><b>Start Here</b> ● → <b>Settings</b> → ● → In Phone menu, <b>Mode Settings</b> → ● → See below</p> <p><b>Selecting a Handset Mode</b></p> <p>Select mode → ●</p> <p><b>Customizing Handset Modes</b></p> <p>Select mode → ☰ → Select item → ● → Adjust settings</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Not available for Normal mode.</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <b>Settings</b> → ● → In Phone menu, <b>Mode Settings</b> → ● → <b>Original</b> → ☰ → Select item → ● → Adjust settings</li> </ul>
Creating a custom mode	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <b>Settings</b> → ● → In Phone menu, <b>Mode Settings</b> → ● → <b>Original</b> → ☰ → Select item → ● → Adjust settings</li> </ul>
Resetting Mode Settings	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <b>Settings</b> → ● → In Phone menu, <b>Mode Settings</b> → ● → Select mode → ⌵ → Enter Handset Code → ● → Yes → ●</li> </ul>

## My Details

Clearing My Details	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → ☰ → ☰ → ☰ → <b>Reset My Details</b> → ● → Yes → ●</li> </ul>
Toggle My Details in Dual Mode	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → ☰ → ☰ → ☰ → <b>Switch to B</b> or <b>Switch to A</b> → ●</li> </ul>

## Battery Meter

Changing battery strength indicator pattern	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <b>Settings</b> → ● → In Phone menu, <b>Display</b> → ● → <b>Mini Battery</b> → ● → Select pattern → ●</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● For <b>Clock &amp; Battery level</b>, indicators appear in turn. To change interval, press ☰.</li> <li>● For <b>Battery level</b>, approximate battery strength appears as a percentage.</li> </ul>

## VeilView

Changing VeilView pattern/density	<p><b>Start Here</b> ● → <b>Settings</b> → ● → In Phone menu, <b>Display</b> → ● → <b>VeilView</b> → ● → See below</p> <p><b>Pattern</b></p> <p><b>Pattern Setting</b> → ● → Select pattern → ●</p> <p><b>Scale</b></p> <p><b>Scale Setting</b> → ● → Select scale → ●</p> <p><b>Density</b></p> <p><b>Density Setting</b> → ● → Adjust density → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● For <b>Density:2</b> or <b>Density:3</b>, use ☰ before pressing ● to adjust the pattern appearance for straight view.</li> </ul>

## Double Number

## ■ All Modes

Omitting Handset Code entry when switching modes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Settings → ● → In Phone menu, <i>Double Number</i> → ● → Password Entry → ● → Off → ● → Enter Handset Code → ●</li> </ul>
Renaming Double Number modes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Settings → ● → In Phone menu, <i>Double Number</i> → ● → Mode Name → ● → Select mode → ● → Enter name → ● → Select icon → ●</li> </ul>

## ■ A Mode &amp; B Mode

Showing indicator for calls missed or new mail on idle line	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Settings → ● → In Phone menu, <i>Double Number</i> → ● → Show Missed → ● → On → ●</li> </ul>
Hiding Internet connection confirmation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Settings → ● → In Phone menu, <i>Double Number</i> → ● → Packet Warning → ● → Off → ●</li> </ul> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Available for B Mode.</li> </ul>

## ■ Dual Mode

Rejecting calls to either line in Dual Mode	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Settings → ● → In Phone menu, <i>Double Number</i> → ● → Reject By Line → ● → Select line → ● → On → ●</li> </ul>
Setting main line for Dual Mode	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Settings → ● → In Phone menu, <i>Double Number</i> → ● → Send Priority → ● → Select option → ●</li> </ul>

<b>Font Size</b> .....	<b>2-2</b>
Changing Font Size .....	2-2
<b>Wallpaper</b> .....	<b>2-3</b>
<b>Customized Screen</b> .....	<b>2-4</b>
Customized Screen (Japanese) .....	2-4
<b>Sounds &amp; Alerts</b> .....	<b>2-5</b>
Customizing Handset Responses ...	2-5
<b>Text Entry</b> .....	<b>2-6</b>
Entering Characters.....	2-8
Editing Characters .....	2-11

<b>User Dictionary</b> .....	<b>2-12</b>
Saving Frequently Used Words .....	2-12
<b>Dictionary</b> .....	<b>2-13</b>
Using Dictionaries (Japanese) .....	2-13
<b>Search</b> .....	<b>2-15</b>
Searching Text.....	2-15
<b>Scratch Pad</b> .....	<b>2-16</b>
<b>Phone Book</b> .....	<b>2-17</b>
Creating Phone Book Entries .....	2-17
Using Phone Book Entries .....	2-19
<b>Additional Functions</b> .....	<b>2-20</b>
<b>Troubleshooting</b> .....	<b>2-26</b>

# 2

## Basic Operations

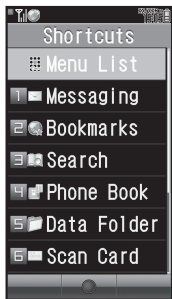




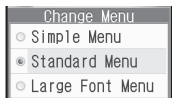
## Changing Font Size

### Enlarging All Fonts

Activate Large Font Menu to enlarge fonts for menus, text entry, etc. as follows:



1  (Long)



2 **Large Font Menu** →

Canceling Large Font Menu

In 2, **Standard Menu** →

### Customizing Font Sizes

1  → **Settings** →



2 In Phone menu, **Display** →

3 **Font Settings** →



Font Settings Menu

4 **Font Size** →  → **Select item** →

5 **Select size** →

### Changing Font Weight

1 In Font Settings menu, **Font Weight** →

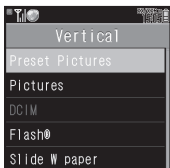


2 **Select weight** →



# Wallpaper

- 1 **Settings** **In Phone menu, Display** **Vertical**
- 2 **Wallpaper** **Vertical or Horizontal**



Wallpaper Menu

- 3 **Select folder**
- 4 **Select file**
  - Some files may not be usable.
  - Omit the next step when **Preset Pictures** is selected in 3.

5

## Selecting Images Smaller or Larger than Display

After 4, select option

- For **Centered**, use to zoom in/out or press to rotate.

## Selecting Images with Limited Usage Period

- A confirmation appears. Follow these steps:  
**Yes**

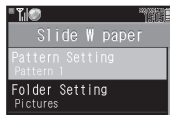
## If Double Number Mode Menu Opens

Select mode

## Slide Show Wallpaper

Set Slide Show to appear in Standby.  
Some images may not appear.

- 1 **In Wallpaper menu, Slide W paper**



- 2 **Folder Setting**
- 3 **Pictures or DCIM**
- 4 **Select sub folder**  
**Set this folder**
  - Omit steps for sub folder if none.

## If There is No Image in Set Folder

- Preset images appear.

## Using Preset Images

In 3, **Preset Pictures**

## Changing Pattern





In 2, **Pattern Setting** **Select pattern**

- To check patterns, select one and press .




## Customized Screen (Japanese)

### Preset Customized Screens

- 1  → 
- 2 **Preset Screens** → 
- 3 **Select pattern** → 
- 4  → 

#### When Selected Customized Screen is Active

- Cancellation confirmation appears after ③. To cancel, choose **Yes** and press .

### Downloading Customized Screens

Read information (price, etc.) on Customized Screen download page.

- 1  → **Data Folder** →  → **Customized Screen** → 



Customized Screen Menu

- 2 **Download Customized Screen** → 

- Follow onscreen instructions.

### Customized Screen Setup

- 1 **In Customized Screen menu, select Customized Screen** → 

- 2  → 






#### Applying Fee-based Customized Screen

- If Contents Key is required, follow these steps:

After ①,  → **Yes** → 

- Read terms of service and then follow onscreen instructions.

### Advanced

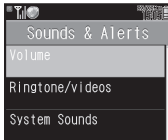
-   Canceling Customized Screen
-  Canceling Customized Screen unconditionally
-  Deleting Customized Screens
-  Accessing Customized Screen source sites (P.2-20)



# Customizing Handset Responses

## Ringtone

- 1 **Settings** → **Phone** menu, **Sounds & Alerts** →

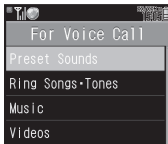


Sounds & Alerts Menu

- 2 **Ringtone/videos** →

- 3 **Select item** →

For *For New Message*, etc., select **Assign Tone** and press.



- 4 **Select folder** →

- 5 **Select tone/file** →

## Setting Ring Time for Incoming Mail, etc.

After **Duration** → **Enter time** →

## Playing Video for Incoming Transmissions

In **Videos** → **Select file** →

## If Portion of File Content is Specifiable

- After **Start point**, start point selection window opens. Follow these steps:

**Select start point** →

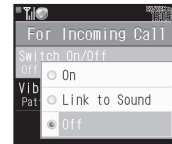
## Selecting Files with Limited Usage Period

- A confirmation appears. Choose **Yes** and press to proceed.

## Vibration

- 1 In **Sounds & Alerts** menu, **Vibration** →

- 2 **Select item** → **Switch On/Off** →



- 3 **On** →

- 4 **Vibration Pattern** →

- To check vibration patterns, select one and press.

- 5 **Select pattern** →

## Setting Ringtones to Control Vibration

In **Link to Sound** →

### Precaution

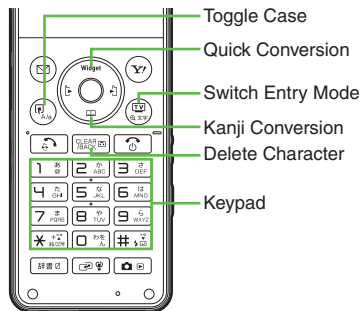
- Cancel Vibration when charging battery to help avoid accidents.



## Text Entry

Use handset keys or Touch Panel to enter text.

### Handset Keys

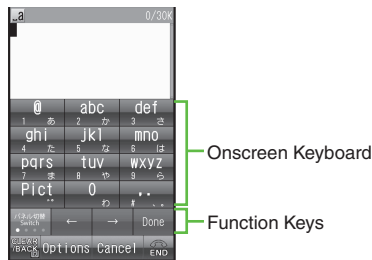


Unless noted otherwise, text entry descriptions are for text entry windows using handset keys.

### Touch Panel

Use Onscreen Keyboard to enter text.

- Onscreen Keyboard keys correspond to Keypad keys.
- Onscreen Keyboard appears when a text entry window is opened in Viewer position or when Display is rotated to Viewer position with a text entry window open.



Tap **Switch**



- Tap **Switch** at the bottom to toggle Function Key assignments.

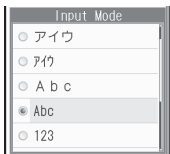
### Function Key Assignments

Input Mode	Switch entry mode
<b>A/a</b>	Toggle case
<b>Conv</b>	Convert hiragana to kanji
<b>Conf.</b>	Enter current characters
<b>Rev. Order</b>	Reverse character options
<b>Undo</b>	Undo conversion/deletion
<b>Emoticons</b>	Open emoticon list
<b>Add Art</b>	Open Graphic Mail window
<b>MyPict Log</b>	Open My Pictogram Log
<b>Common Pict</b>	Show cross-carrier Pictograms
<b>All Pict</b>	Show all Pictograms
<b>Quick Conv</b>	Initiate Quick Conversion
<b>Pred. Mode</b>	Toggle suggestion mode
<b>←/→</b>	Move cursor left/right
<b>Range Text</b>	Highlight text range
<b>Quit</b>	Cancel Range Text
<b>Copy</b>	Copy highlighted text
<b>Cut</b>	Cut highlighted text
<b>Del. All</b>	Delete all characters
<b>Dict.</b>	Use dictionaries
<b>Done</b>	End text entry
<b>Keyboard</b>	Show/hide Keyboard

### Advanced

- Opening Help
- Using Character Codes
- Using Pager Code (P.2-20)







## Switching Entry Modes

1 

- Available entry modes appear.

2 **Select mode**  

- Entry Mode Indicators:

	Kanji (hiragana)
	Double/single-byte katakana
	Double-byte alphanumerics (upper/lower case)
	Single-byte alphanumerics (upper/lower case)
	Single-byte number
	Character Code



 appears when Predictive is active.

## Character Entry Basics

Use Keypad to enter characters. Multiple characters are assigned to each key. Press a key to toggle character options for that key.

**Example: In double-byte katakana entry, press  three times.**



- Press  to toggle options in reverse. To type characters assigned to the same key, press  first.

**Example: In single-byte alphanumerics mode, enter *no*.**



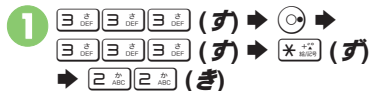
- Long Press a key to enter the current character and advance cursor.



## Entering Characters

### Hiragana

Follow these steps to enter **すずき** in kanji (hiragana) mode:



### **2** (Confirm)

### Kanji

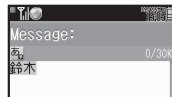
Convert **すずき** to **鈴木**.

### **1** Type **すずき**



- In kanji (hiragana) mode, word suggestions change as hiragana is typed. (Predictive)
- Press to toggle suggestion mode between Standard, Business, Male, Female and Automatic. (Personal Mode)

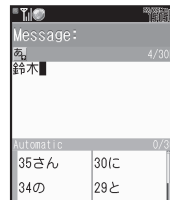
### **2**



### **3** **鈴木**

- To exit suggestion list, press .

### **4**



- Words likely to follow the entry appear based on previous entries. (Previous Usage)

#### When Target Word is Not Listed

- Press or to segment hiragana to convert separately.
  - Press to toggle Predictive and Non-Predictive suggestions.

#### Phonetic Conversion

Type reading in hiragana →

### Advanced

- Inserting line breaks
- Inserting spaces
- Using Keypad to enter words/phrases from suggestion list
- Clearing entry log
- Changing Font Size
- Disabling suggestions based on entered characters
- Disabling suggestions based on entered words
- Disabling emoticon/Pictogram suggestions based on entered words
- Lowering type priorities in suggestion list
- Selecting a suggestion mode (P.2-20 - 2-21)



## One-Hiragana Conversion

Type the first hiragana to access previously selected words.

Example: **ず** was previously converted to **鈴木**.

1 (ず) →

2 Select word/phrase →

## Katakana

Follow these steps to switch to double-byte katakana mode and enter **ジュン**:

1 → **アイウ** →



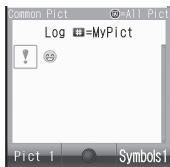
2 (シ) → (ジ) →  
 (ユ) → (ユ) →  
 (ン) →



## Pictograms & Symbols

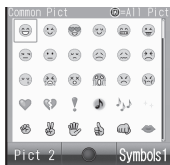
May be unavailable depending on the entry mode.

1



- Pictogram/Symbol Log appears.

2 or → List toggles



- In Pictogram List, press to toggle cross-carrier Pictograms and all Pictograms.

3 Select Pictogram or Symbol →

- Pictograms are double-byte even in single-byte modes.

4 → List closes

## Emoticons

1 → **Emoticons** →



2 Select emoticon →

### Alternative Emoticon Entry Method

- In kanji (hiragana) mode, type **かお** or a descriptive word such as **わーい** or **うーん**, then convert the entry.

### EmoticonWordLink

- Immediately after inserting a descriptive word such as **嬉しい** or **悲しい**, corresponding emoticons may appear in the suggestion list.





## Mail &amp; Web Extensions

Enter **.co.jp**, **http://**, etc., easily.

1  → **Quick Addr. List** → 



2 **Select extension** → 

- Extensions are single-byte even in double-byte entry modes.

Hiragana to Katakana/  
Alphanumeric Conversion

Enter katakana and alphanumerics in kanji (hiragana) mode.

Example: To enter **PM**  
Use key inscriptions.

1   → 



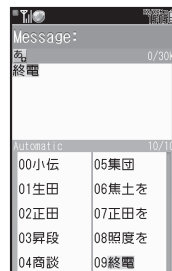
2 **Select word/phrase (PM)** → 

## Quick Conversion (for Hiragana)

A list of word suggestions appears based on the key pressed.


Example: To enter **終電**

1  (さ) →  (ゆ)  
→  (あ) →   (だ)  
→  (わ) → 



2 **Select word/phrase (終電)** → 

## One Hiragana Word Call

- Type the first hiragana of entries you used Quick Conversion for and press .



# Editing Characters

## Deleting & Editing

Follow these steps to correct **また、お願  
いしまず** to **また明日お願いします**:

### 1 Select character



### 2



- The highlighted character is deleted.

### 3 Select target location → Enter characters



## Recovering Deleted Characters

- Press once for each character after deletion.

## Deleting All Text

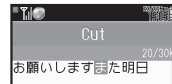
- Long Press at the end of text. To delete characters on and after cursor, select the first character of text and Long Press .

## Jumping to the End or Top of Text

- *Cursor Position* → → *Jump to End or Jump to Top* →

## Copy/Cut & Paste

- *Cut or Copy* → →
- Select first character →



Cut

- To cancel and start over, press .

- Highlight text range →

- Select target location → (Long)



- Text is entered.

## Pasting Previously Cut/Copied Text

- Select target location → → *Paste*

- → Select text →

- Available when Paste List appears.

## Advanced

- Undo conversion or recover deleted characters
- Inserting Phone Book entry items (P.2-20)

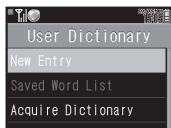


## Saving Frequently Used Words

### Saving Words (Japanese)

Saved words appear among suggestions.

- 1 **Settings** → **User Dictionary**



User Dictionary Menu

- 2 **New Entry** → **Enter word**

- 3 **Enter reading**

#### Editing Entries

- In **Saved Word List**
- Select word → **Edit** → **Edit reading** → **Yes**

### 933SH Download Dictionary (Japanese)

Get specialized 933SH Download Dictionaries via SH-web Mobile Internet site ([シャープメーカーがSH-web](#) in Bookmarks; see P.5-8).

Activate dictionaries to improve handset character conversion. Dictionary words appear among suggestions.

Some dictionary files may not be usable.

- 1 In **User Dictionary menu**, **Acquire Dictionary**



- 2 **Select number** → **Select dictionary**
  - Existing dictionary is replaced.

### Canceling Dictionary

- In **Cancel**

### Viewing Dictionary Information

- In **Info**

### Reply Assist Dictionary (メール返信アシスト辞書)

- When replying, this dictionary prioritizes original message words in suggestion list.
- Effective in kanji (hiragana) mode.

### Advanced

- Deleting entries (P.2-21)



# Using Dictionaries (Japanese)

Available Dictionaries:

Preloaded Dictionaries*	Meikyo Japanese Dictionary, Genius English-Japanese Dictionary, Genius Japanese-English Dictionary
Online Dictionaries*	Meikyo J-Dic MX.net, Genius EJ-Dic MX.net, Genius JE-Dic MX.net, Imidas Encyclopedia, Encyclopedia Nipponica, Digital Daijisen, PROGRESSIVE English-Japanese Dictionary, PROGRESSIVE Japanese-English Dictionary, Hot Pepper Pockets, Amazon.co.jp

\*Download and add dictionaries as needed.

## Online Dictionaries

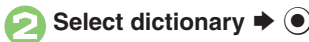
- Online dictionary use requires Internet connection incurring transmission fees. Information fees may also apply. Read terms of service and then follow onscreen instructions.
- Update dictionary list for most recent versions.

## Advanced

- 👆 ● Changing Font Size ● Looking up copied words in dictionaries ● Viewing dictionary information ● Updating dictionary list (And more on P.2-21 - 2-22)

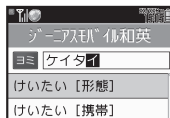
## Using Preloaded Dictionaries

### Searching As-You-Type



Dictionary Window

- Last used dictionary appears first.



- Enter reading in katakana.
- Search results appear as you type.



Definition/Translation Window

## Looking Up in Online Dictionaries

[Definition/Translation Window] ☺

➡ **WebDict.Search** ➡ ●

- Perform from ② (except ④) in "Using Online Dictionaries" on P.2-14. (Read bulleted sentence in ① beforehand.)

## Searching by Keyword



- Definition/translation window opens.

2

Basic Operations



## Copying Text

## Selected Portions

1 In definition/translation window, ●

2 Select first character → ●  
 → Highlight text range → ●

## Index Word Only

1 In definition/translation window, ●

2 Copy Index Word → ●

## Adding Downloaded Dictionary

1 In Dictionary window, ●

2 Add Dictionary → ●

3 Select file → ●

## Canceling Added Dictionary

In ●, Cancel Dictionary → ● → Yes → ●

## Using Online Dictionaries

1 In Dictionary window, ● →  
 ネット辞書 → ●

• Terms of service (Japanese) appear when using online dictionary for the first time; read and then press ●.

2 Select pull-down menu → ●

3 Select dictionary → ●

• Select すべて to look up in all dictionaries at once.

4 Select entry field → ● →  
 Enter text → ●

5 Search → ●

6 Yes → ●

7 Select word, etc. → ●  
 • Definition/translation window opens.

## Disabling Confirmation

After ●, ● (□/✓) → From ●

## Viewing Dictionary Information

After ●, select word, etc. → ● →

Reference → ● → Yes → ●

## Using History &amp; Bookmarks

## Saving Bookmarks

1 In definition/translation window, ●

2 Bookmark → ●

## Opening History or Bookmarks

1 In Dictionary window, ●

2 History or Bookmark List → ●

3 Select word, etc. → ●  
 • Definition/translation window opens.

## Using Dictionaries during Text Entry

1 Type text → Before pressing ● to complete entry, ●

2 Select dictionary → ●

3 Search → ● → Select word, etc. → ●  
 • Definition/translation window opens.

## Inserting Index Word into Text

After ●, ● → Paste Index Word → ●

## Advanced

● Selecting dictionaries for use ● Selecting search method ● Selecting search area (P.2-22)



## Searching Text

### Web Search


Transmission fees apply.

- 1  **Tools**   **Doc./Rec.**
- 2 **Search** 



Search Window







- **Web Search** is selected by default.

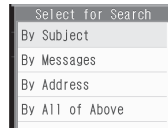
- 3 **Select entry field**  
  - Enter search text**  
  - 4 **Search** 
- Search results appear.

### Searching within PC Sites

[Search Window]  **Change Browser**  
  **PC Site Browser** 

### Mail Search

- 1 **In Search window, Mail Search** 
- 2 **Select entry field**    
**Enter search text**  
- 3 **Search** 



- 4 **Select option** 

### Searching within Received or Sent Messages

[Search Window]  **Change Mail Folder**   **Received Messages or Sent Messages** 



## Scratch Pad

2

Basic Operations

Open Scratch Pad to jot down text, and more.

1   **Tools**    
**Doc./Rec.**





























2 **Scratch Pad**   
• Text entry window opens.

3 **Enter text** 



4 **Save to Notepad**   
• Open saved entries from Notepad.

### Other Scratch Pad Usage

Usage	Operation
Paste to Standby	<b>Set as StbyShortcut</b>       Select sheet  
Enter Mail Message Text	<b>Create Message</b>    Select mail type  
Enter Schedule Subject/Details	<b>Save to Calendar</b> 
Enter Task Subject/Details	<b>Save to Tasks</b> 
Add Last Name to Phone Book	<b>Save to Phone Book</b>  ■ Reading is not entered.
Save Text File	<b>Save as Text File</b>    Enter name    <b>Save here</b>  ■ Saved to Data Folder (Other Documents).
Search Internet	<b>Web Search</b>    Select browser  

For more, see corresponding function description or follow onscreen instructions.



## Creating Phone Book Entries

Enter a name, phone number and mail address (enter at least one of these items) and classify the entry.

- 1 → **Phone** → → **Add New Entry** →



- 2 **Last Name:** → → **Enter last name** → → **First Name:** → → **Enter first name** →



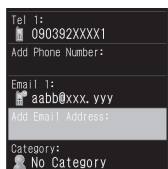
- Characters entered for names (reading for kanji) appear.

- 3 **Add Phone Number:** → → **Enter phone number** → → **Select type** →



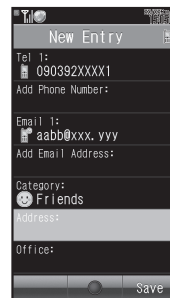
- To save additional phone numbers, repeat .

- 4 **Add Email Address:** → → **Enter mail address** → → **Select type** →



- To save additional mail addresses, repeat .

- 5 **Category:** → → **Select Category** →



Phone Book Entry Window

- 6 → **Entry is saved to Phone Book.**

### Incoming Calls while Creating Entry

- Contents are temporarily saved. End the call to return.

### Selecting Mode in Dual Mode

[Phone Book Entry Window] **Mode:**

- → **Select mode** →

## Advanced

- Saving other information
- Setting Light Color
- Changing vibration pattern
- Editing Phone Book entries
- Setting incoming mail ring time
- Renaming Categories
- Moving Categories (P.2-23)

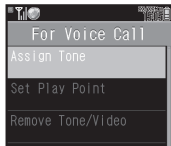




## Personal Ringtone

Set tone for calls from saved numbers.

- 1 In Phone Book entry window, select item, e.g., *Tone-Voice Call*: ➔ ●



- 2 *Assign Tone* ➔ ● ➔ Select folder ➔ ●
- 3 Select tone/file ➔ ●

## Saving Secret Entries

Hide Phone Book entries to require Handset Code for access.

- 1 In Phone Book entry window, *Secret*: ➔ ●
- 2 *On* ➔ ●

### Accessing Secret Entries

- ➔ ● ➔ *Unlock Temporarily* ➔
- ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ ●

## Customizing Response by Category

- 1 ● ➔ *Phone* ➔ ● ➔ *Set Category* ➔ ●



Set Category Menu

- 2 Select Category ➔ ● ➔ Select item ➔ ●
- 3 Select item ➔ ● ➔ Select item, e.g., *Assign Tone* ➔ ● ➔ *Customize responses* ➔ ●

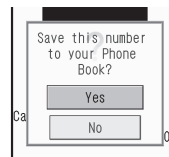
- Customize responses in the same way as Phone Book entries.
- Not available for USIM Card.

### Responses Set by Phone Book Entry

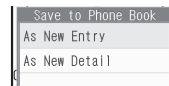
- Settings for each entry take priority.

## Saving Numbers After Calls

After a call, save number to Phone Book.



- 1 When confirmation appears, *Yes* ➔ ●



- 2 *As New Entry* ➔ ● ➔ Complete other fields ➔ ●

### Saving to an Existing Entry

- In
  - 2, *As New Detail* ➔ ● ➔ Select entry ➔ ● ➔ Complete other fields ➔ ●



# Using Phone Book Entries

## Dialing via Phone Book

- 1 ➔ Select katakana row



Entry Search Window (By あかさたな)

- When using Double Number in Dual Mode, Line indicators appear.

- 2 Select entry ➔



Entry Details

- 3 Select phone number

- 4

## Placing Video Calls

After ➔ Video Call ➔

## Advanced

- Changing view for entry search window Assigning images to Phone Book entries for incoming transmissions Messaging via Phone Book Placing Decoration Calls via Phone Book Deleting Phone Book entries Checking memory status Copying Phone Book entries (And more on P.2-22 - 2-25)

## Changing Search Method

- 1 In entry search window, ➔ Ph.Book Settings ➔

- 2 Sort Entries ➔



- 3 Select method ➔

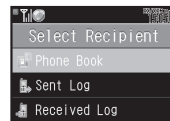
- Phone Book Search Methods:

By あかさたな	Shows entries with Readings that start with katakana in the specified row
By Category	Opens entries in the specified Category
By Reading	Shows all entries in Reading order (katakana, alphabetical then numerical)

Changing Search Method Temporarily  
[Entry Search Window] (press to toggle search methods)

## Opening from Other Functions

Example: Enter a recipient via Phone Book when sending a message.



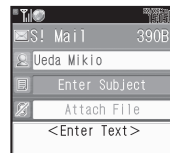
Select Recipient Window

- 1 Phone Book ➔

- Entry search window opens.

- 2 Select entry ➔

- 3 Select phone number or mail address ➔



- Recipient is entered.
- Omit if only one number or address is saved.



### Customized Screen

Canceling Customized Screen	<p>● → ☐ → Off → ● → Yes → ●</p>
Canceling Customized Screen unconditionally	<p>☐ → Menu List → ● → Settings → ● → In Phone menu, Customized Screen → ● → Off → ● → Yes → ●</p>
Deleting Customized Screens	<p>● → Data Folder → ● → Customized Screen → ● → Select Customized Screen → ☐ → Delete → ● → Yes → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When the corresponding Contents Key has been downloaded, choose <b>Yes</b> or <b>No</b> and press ●.</li> </ul>
Accessing Customized Screen source sites	<p>● → Data Folder → ● → Customized Screen → ● → Select Customized Screen → ☐ → Web Access → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Follow onscreen instructions.</li> </ul>

### Text Entry

#### ■ Entry & Edit

Opening Help	In a text entry window, ☐ → Help → ●
Using Character Codes	In a text entry window (Character Code mode), enter four digits
Using Pager Code	<p>In a text entry window, ☐ → Input/Conversion → ● → Input Method → ● → Pager Code → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Return to text entry window and enter two digits.</li> </ul>

Inserting line breaks	<p><b>At the End of Text</b> In a text entry window, ☐</p>
	<p><b>Mid-Entry</b> In a text entry window, ☐ → ☐ → ☐ → ☐ → ☐ → ☐ → ☐ → ☐ → ☐ → ☐ → ☐</p>
Inserting spaces	In a text entry window, ☐
Using Keypad to enter words/phrases from suggestion list	<p>In a text entry window, ☐ → Input/Conversion → ● → Select Candidate → ● → Enable 1-9, 0, *, # → ●</p>
Clearing entry log	<p>In a text entry window, ☐ → Input/Conversion → ● → Reset Log → ● → Yes → ●</p>
Undo conversion or recover deleted characters	In a text entry window, ☐ → Undo/Recover → ●
Inserting Phone Book entry items	<p>In a text entry window, ☐ → Insert/Font Size → ● → Phone Book → ● → Select entry → ● → Select item → ●</p>
Changing Font Size	<p>In a text entry window, ☐ → Insert/Font Size → ● → Font Size → ● → Select size → ●</p>



## Conversion

Disabling suggestions based on entered characters	In a text entry window,  → <i>Input/Conversion</i> →  → <i>Predictive</i> →  → <i>Off</i> →
Disabling suggestions based on entered words	In a text entry window,  → <i>Input/Conversion</i> →  → <i>Previous Usage</i> →  → <i>Off</i> →
Disabling emoticon/Pictogram suggestions based on entered words	In a text entry window,  → <i>Input/Conversion</i> →  → <i>Emoticon Word Link</i> →  → <i>Off</i> →
Lowering type priorities in suggestion list	In a text entry window,  → <i>Input/Conversion</i> →  → <i>Set Low Priority</i> →  → <i>Select type</i> →  →
Selecting a suggestion mode	In a text entry window,  → <i>Input/Conversion</i> →  → <i>Personal Mode</i> →

## User Dictionary

Deleting entries	→ <i>Settings</i> →  → <i>In Phone menu, User Dictionary</i> →  → <i>Saved Word List</i> →  →  →
------------------	--

## Dictionary

### Preloaded & Online Dictionaries

Changing Font Size	→  → <i>Font Size</i> →  → <i>Select size</i> →
Looking up copied words in dictionaries	After copying text,  → <i>Search by Copied Text</i> →  → <i>Search</i> →  → <i>Select word</i> →
Deleting History & bookmarks	→  → <i>History, History List or Bookmark List</i> →  → <i>See below</i>
	<b>One Word</b> <i>Select word</i> →  → <i>Delete</i> →  → <i>Yes</i> →
	<b>All Words</b> → <i>Delete All</i> →  → <i>Enter Handset Code</i> →  → <i>Yes</i> →
Looking up scanned kanji in dictionaries	→  → <i>Kanji Grabber</i> →  → <i>Frame kanji in Loupe</i> →  → <i>Search</i> →  → <i>Select word, etc.</i> → • Definition/translation window opens.
Looking up scanned text in dictionaries	→  → <i>Scan Text</i> →  → <i>Frame text in center of Display</i> →  → <i>Select line</i> →  → <i>Search</i> →  → <i>Select word, etc.</i> → • Definition/translation window opens.
Viewing dictionary information	→  → <i>Information</i> →

### Preloaded Dictionaries



## ■ Online Dictionaries

Selecting dictionaries for use	<p>辞書 ☐ → ヲ → ネット辞書 → ● → ☐ → Edit Dict. List → ● → Select dictionary → ● (☐/☑) → ヲ</p>
Selecting search method	<p>辞書 ☐ → ヲ → ネット辞書 → ● → ☐ → Set Search Method → ● → Select option → ●</p> <p>● Not available when <b>すべて</b> or unsupported dictionary is selected for online dictionary.</p>
Selecting search area	<p>辞書 ☐ → ヲ → ネット辞書 → ● → ☐ → Set Search Area → ● → Select area → ●</p> <p>● Not available when <b>すべて</b> or unsupported dictionary is selected for online dictionary.</p>
Updating dictionary list	<p>辞書 ☐ → ヲ → ネット辞書 → ● → ☐ → Update Dictionaries → ● → Yes → ●</p>
Opening terms of service	<p>辞書 ☐ → ヲ → ネット辞書 → ● → ☐ → Terms of service → ●</p> <p>● Press ● to return to Dictionary window.</p>
Opening Help	<p>辞書 ☐ → ヲ → ネット辞書 → ● → Select pull-down menu → ● → Select dictionary → ● → ☐ → Help → ● → Yes → ●</p>

## Phone Book

### ■ View Settings

Changing view for entry search window	<p>(Start Here) ● → Phone → ● → Ph.Book Settings → ● → See below</p> <p><b>Portrait Orientation</b> Vertical Display → ● → List+Business Card → ●</p> <p><b>Landscape Orientation</b> Horizontal Display → ● → Name+Email → ●</p>
Assigning images to Phone Book entries for incoming transmissions	<p>(Start Here) ● → Phone → ● → Add New Entry → ● → Picture: → ● → See below</p> <p><b>Assigning Images</b> Assign Picture → ● → Select image → ●</p> <p><b>Capturing Images</b> Take Picture → ● → Frame image on Display → ● → ●</p>
Hiding confirmation after calls to/from unsaved numbers	<p>● → Phone → ● → Ph.Book Settings → ● → New Number Prompt → ● → Incoming Call or Outgoing Call → ● → Off → ●</p>



## Phone Book Entry

Saving other information	<p><b>Start Here</b> → Phone → Add New Entry → See below</p> <p><b>Address</b>  <b>Address:</b> → Select item → Complete field →</p> <p><b>Office</b>  <b>Office:</b> → Select item → Enter text →</p> <p><b>Homepage</b>  <b>Homepage:</b> → Enter URL → Select type →</p> <p><b>Note</b>  <b>Note:</b> → Enter text →</p> <p><b>Birthday</b>  <b>Birthday:</b> → Enter date →</p> <p><b>Location Information</b>  <b>Location Info.:</b> → Enter Location Information →</p>
	<p><b>Start Here</b> → Phone → Add New Entry → Select item, e.g., <i>Light-Voice Call:</i> → Switch On/Off → See below</p> <p><b>Changing Color</b>  <b>On</b> → Light Color → Select color →</p> <p><b>Setting Ringtones to Control Light</b>  <b>Link to Sound</b> →</p> <p><b>Disabling</b>  <b>Off</b> →</p>

## Setting Light Color

Changing vibration pattern	<p>Phone → Add New Entry → Select item, e.g., <i>Vibration-Message:</i> → Switch On/Off → Select option → Vibration Pattern → Select pattern →</p>
Editing Phone Book entries	<p>Select entry → Edit → Select item → Edit →</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Edit Reading after editing names.</li> </ul>
Setting incoming mail ring time	<p>Select entry → Edit → <i>Tone-New Message:</i> → Duration → Enter time →</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Available for compatible ringtones.</li> </ul>
Renaming Categories	<p>Phone → Set Category → Select Category → Edit Name → Enter name →</p>
Moving Categories	<p>Phone → Set Category → Select Category → Select target location →</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>View for <i>By Category</i> Phone Book search changes accordingly.</li> </ul>



## ■ Using Entries

	<p>Start Here  → Select entry →  → See below</p> <p><b>Phone Numbers</b>            Select phone number →  → Create Message            →  → S! Mail or SMS →  → Complete            message → </p> <p><b>Mail Addresses</b>            Select mail address →  → Complete            message → </p>
Messaging via Phone Book	
Placing Decoration Calls via Phone Book	<p> → Select entry →  → Select phone number →  → Deco. Call →  → Deco. Call File →  → Deco. Call Folder →  → Select file →  → Call Type →  → Voice Call or Video Call →  → </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When placing a Decoration Call for the first time, follow onscreen prompt.</li> </ul>
Initiating S! Circle Talk via Phone Book	<p> → Select entry →  → Select phone number →  → Call S! Circle Talk →  → </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Set Connection status to <i>Online</i> first.</li> </ul>
Placing international calls via Phone Book	<p> → Select entry →  → Select phone number →  → Int'l Call →  → Select country →  → </p>
Using Location Information via Phone Book	<p> → Select entry →  →  Settings →  →  Set to Destination → </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Follow onscreen instructions.</li> </ul>

## ■ Managing Entries

Deleting Phone Book entries	<p><b>One Entry</b>   → Select entry →  → Delete →  → Yes → </p> <p><b>All Entries</b>   → Phone →  → Manage Entries →  → Delete All →  → Select entry type →  → Yes →  → Enter Handset Code → </p>
Checking memory status	<p> → Phone →  → Manage Entries →  → Memory Status → </p>
Copying Phone Book entries	<p><b>One Entry (Handset → USIM Card)</b>   → Select entry →  → Manage Entries →  → Copy Entry to USIM →  → Yes → </p> <p><b>One Entry (USIM Card → Handset)</b>   →  → Ph.Book Settings →  → Select Phone Book →  → USIM Memory →  → Select entry →  → Manage Entries →  → Copy Entry to Phone → </p> <p><b>All Entries</b>   →  → Manage Entries →  → Copy All →  → Select method →  → Yes → </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If handset/USIM Card memory is low, some entries may not be copied.</li> </ul>



Editing Categories on USIM Card	<p>Start Here  ⇒ Phone  ⇒ Set Category  </p> <p> ⇒ Change to USIM  ⇒ See below</p> <p><b>Renaming Categories</b></p> <p>Select Category  ⇒ Edit Name  </p> <p>Enter name </p>
	<p><b>Moving Categories</b></p> <p>Select Category   ⇒ Select target location </p>
	<p><b>Changing Icons</b></p> <p>Select Category  ⇒ Change Icon  </p> <p>Select Pictogram </p>
	<p>Changing default storage media for new entries</p> <p> ⇒ Phone  ⇒ Ph.Book Settings  </p> <p> ⇒ Save New Entry  ⇒ USIM Memory or Ask Each Time </p>
Switching reference Phone Book	<p> ⇒ Phone  ⇒ Ph.Book Settings  </p> <p> ⇒ Select Phone Book  ⇒ USIM Memory or Both </p>

### ■ Mode Settings

Activate Double Number first.

Changing modes of all entries at once	<p> ⇒ Phone  ⇒ Manage Entries  </p> <p>Change Mode(All)  ⇒ Select mode  </p> <p>Enter Handset Code </p>
Changing modes of multiple entries	<p> ⇒  ⇒ Manage Entries   ⇒ Multiple Selection  ⇒ Select entry   </p> <p> ⇒ Change Mode  ⇒ Select mode  </p>
Changing modes of entries by Category	<p> ⇒ Select Category   ⇒ Manage Entries  </p> <p> ⇒ Change Mode(Category)   ⇒ Select mode   ⇒ Enter Handset Code  </p> <p>• Set search method to <b>By Category</b> first.</p>





#### Customized Screen

##### ? Customized Screen is not applied

- Some Customized Screens may not contain files for Wallpaper, System Graphics, ringtones or ringvideos; default settings apply for these functions.

#### Phone Book

##### ? Assigned images do not appear for incoming transmissions

- Source files may be deleted or moved to Memory Card; reassign files.
- When using copy protected files, etc., confirm that source file license/usage period has not expired.
- Images do not appear if corresponding Phone Book entry is set to Secret.
- Images do not appear for incoming Decoration Calls including image/video.
- Images may not appear when another function is active, etc.

##### ? Handset does not ring for incoming transmissions as set

- Source files may be deleted; reassign files.
- When using copy protected files, etc., confirm that source file license/usage period has not expired.
- Ringtone/ringvideo settings are disabled if corresponding Phone Book entry is set to Secret.
- Ringtones do not sound for incoming Decoration Calls with sound.
- Memory Card with source files may be removed; reinsert the card to restore settings.

##### ? Cannot enter 16 characters for Category names

- Character entry limit for Category names may be lower depending on the USIM Card in use.



<b>Emergency Calls</b> .....	<b>3-2</b>
<b>Voice Calling</b> .....	<b>3-3</b>
<b>Video Calling</b> .....	<b>3-5</b>
<b>Decoration Call</b> .....	<b>3-6</b>
<b>Speed Dial</b> .....	<b>3-7</b>

<b>Call Log</b> .....	<b>3-8</b>
<b>Call Time</b> .....	<b>3-9</b>
<b>Call Barring</b> .....	<b>3-10</b>
Restrict Destinations .....	3-10
Reject Numbers.....	3-11
<b>Optional Services</b> .....	<b>3-12</b>
<b>Additional Functions</b> .....	<b>3-14</b>
<b>Troubleshooting</b> .....	<b>3-22</b>

# 3

## Calling



## Emergency Calls

3

Calling

Your location is automatically reported to the corresponding agency (police, etc.) when you place emergency calls (110, 119 or 118) with SoftBank 3G handsets. (Emergency Location Report)

933SH reports Location Information based on positioning signals from radio stations.

- Registration/transmission fees do not apply.
- Positioning accuracy is affected by location/signal conditions. Always provide your location and purpose on the phone.
- Location Information is not reported when emergency calls are placed without Caller ID (such as when the number is prefixed with **184**). However, the corresponding agency may obtain your Location Information in a life threatening situation.
- Location Information is not reported during international roaming.

### Handset Restrictions & Emergency Calls

Emergency calls are possible even while some handset restrictions are active.

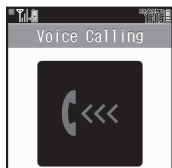
Active Restriction	Emergency Calls
Function Lock	Possible
Outgoing Calls	
Offline Mode	Restricted
Keypad Lock	
PIN Entry	



# Voice Calling

## Answering a Voice Call

Incoming Call window opens for a call.



Incoming Voice Call Window

### 1 to accept the call

- Call connects.
- Answer calls with clamshell open.

### 2 ➔ Call ends

#### Muting Ringer Temporarily

When a call arrives,

#### Earpiece Volume

During a call, or

#### After Calls to/from Unsaved Numbers

- Save to Phone Book confirmation appears.

## Placing a Voice Call

### 1 Enter phone number with area code

- To correct entry, use to place cursor under the digit and press . To delete the digits above and after the cursor, Long Press .

### 2

- Wait for connection.



### 3 ➔ Call ends

#### Specifying Line in Dual Mode

- After , ➔ Select Line(Voice) ➔  
 ➔ Select line ➔

## Placing an International Call

### 1 Enter phone number with area code ➔

### 2 Int'l Call ➔



### 3 Select country ➔ ➔

- Handset dials the number.

### 4 ➔ Call ends

#### Calling Unlisted Countries

- In , Enter Code ➔ ➔ Enter country code ➔ ➔

## Advanced

- Rejecting calls
- Placing calls on hold
- Answering with Headphones
- Adjusting Earpiece Volume
- Sending/blocking Caller ID
- Muting Microphone
- Recording caller voice (And more on P.3-14 - 3-16)
- Answering calls automatically when using Headphones (P.3-21)



## Placing Calls while Abroad

See below to place a call to Japan from abroad. Apply for Global Roaming beforehand. See SoftBank Mobile Website for details: [http://mb.softbank.jp/en/global\\_services/](http://mb.softbank.jp/en/global_services/) Access roaming area/rate information or print it out to carry with you while traveling abroad.


### 1 Enter phone number with area code ➡

### 2 Int'l Call ➡ ➡ **日本(JPN)** ➡ ➡

- Handset dials the number.

### 3 ➡ Call ends

#### Calling SoftBank Handsets

- In , always select **日本(JPN)**.

#### Calling Landlines & Mobiles within the Same Country

- Perform steps in "Placing a Voice Call" on P.3-3.


#### Calls Overseas

- Calling may not be possible outside Japan. Connections depend on available network, signal strength, and handset settings.


## Answer Phone

Record caller messages on handset. Answer Phone cannot be used when handset is off or out-of-range. Use Voicemail to record caller messages when Answer Phone is not available.

### 1 (Long)

- Answer Phone is set ( appears).

#### Canceling Answer Phone

 (Long)

#### Answering Calls while Recording



- No message will be recorded.

## Playing Messages

### 1

### 2 Select record ➡









- Playback stops automatically at the end of message.

#### Deleting All Records








After 1,  ➡ Delete All ➡  ➡

Enter Handset Code ➡  ➡ Yes ➡ 

#### Playback Operations

Volume Control	 or 
Replay/Skip Backward	
Stop	
Skip Forward	
Delete	 ➡ Yes ➡ 
Loudspeaker On/Off	

## Advanced

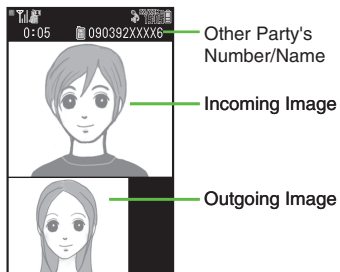
-  Recording caller messages
-  Changing ring time
-  Sampling outgoing message
-  Muting Earpiece (P.3-14)
-  Placing calls by entering country code directly
-  Adding a country code automatically when placing calls
-  Adding/changing/deleting country codes (And more on P.3-15)



## Video Calling

View the other party's image or send an Outgoing Image to compatible handsets. Handle Video Calls like Voice Calls. This page describes functions/operations unique to Video Call.

### Window Description

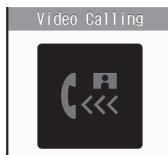


### Important Video Call Usage Notes

- If both parties are not using the same Video Call system, call may be interrupted. (Video Call charges apply.)
- Video Calls cannot be placed while TV is active.

### Answering a Video Call

Incoming Call window opens for a call.



Incoming Video Call Window

- 1 to accept the call
- 2 Call ends

### Answering without Camera Image

[Incoming Video Call Window] →

Yes

- Video Call charges apply to the caller.

### After Calls to/from Unsaved Numbers

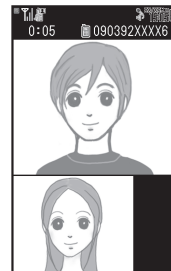
- Save to Phone Book confirmation appears.

### Engaged Video Call Operations

Toggle View	
Toggle Outgoing Image	
Open Help	Help

### Placing a Video Call

- 1 Enter phone number
- 2 Video Call



- Call is accepted and image appears.

- 3 Call ends

### Specifying Line in Dual Mode

After 1, Select Line(Video) →

Select line

### Advanced

- Answering Video Calls automatically (And more on P.3-14)
- Adjusting Outgoing Image brightness Canceling Internal Camera image reversal (And more on P.3-16)
- Sending Alternative Image when initiating Video Calls Disabling Loudspeaker for Video Calls Muting Microphone when initiating Video Calls (And more on P.3-21)



## Decoration Call

Show decorative message in incoming call windows on recipient's handset.

- Available without a separate contract.
- Recipient's handset must be Decoration Call-compatible.
- Charges apply to the caller when Decoration Call is placed successfully.

### Answering a Decoration Call

Incoming Call window opens for a call.



Incoming Decoration Call Window

If Softkeys do not appear, handle incoming Decoration Call like any other call.

### 1 to accept the call

- Call connects.
- Answer calls with clamshell open.

### 2 ➔ Call ends

- Open/save Decoration Call files from received call records.

#### Note

- Decoration Call file may not play depending on recipient handset settings.

### Placing a Decoration Call

Follow these steps to place a Decoration Call by entering a phone number:

### 1 Enter phone number ➔

➔ **Deco. Call** ➔



### 2 **Deco. Call File** ➔

### 3 **Deco. Call Folder** ➔ ➔

### Select file ➔

- To check selected file, press .

### 4

- Handset dials the number. (It may take some time.)

### 5 ➔ Call ends

#### Placing Your First Decoration Call

- A confirmation appears. Follow onscreen instructions.
  - To show confirmation next time as well, press (□).

#### Placing Decoration Video Calls

After , **Call Type** ➔ ➔ **Video Call** ➔ ➔ ➔ 4

### Advanced

- Creating Decoration Call files
- Editing Decoration Call files
- Saving received Decoration Call files
- Restricting incoming/outgoing Decoration Calls
- Hiding incoming Decoration Call window (And more on P.3-17)



# Speed Dial

## Saving Phone Numbers

Save phone numbers to Speed Dial/Mail list for easy dialing.

- 1 → **Phone** →
- 2 **Speed Dial/Mail** →
- 3 **Select number** → → → **Select entry** →
- 4 **Select phone number** →



- Select mail address prompt appears. To save mail address for easy messaging, select one and press . (Omit .)

- 5 **Do not Assign** →

## 6 → Saved

- To save additional phone numbers, repeat - .

### Using Headphones for Speed Dial

- Save a phone number to .

### Canceling Speed Dial Entries

- In , select entry → → **Remove Selected or Remove All** → → **Yes** →
- Omit entry selection step when canceling all entries.

## Using Speed Dial

- 1 - - (entry number)

- 2

### Placing Video Calls

- In , → **Speed Video** →

### Placing Decoration Calls

- In , → **Speed Deco. Call** → → **Deco. Call File** → → **Select/create file** →

### Using Headphones

- In Standby, Long Press Call Button until a double beep sounds; handset dials the number saved in . To end the call, Long Press Call Button until a beep sounds.





## Call Log


Open recent dialed/received call records.



3


Calling

1 



- All Calls opens; press  to open Dialed Numbers, Dialed Ranking and then Received Calls.







2 **Select record**  

- Open Decoration Call record and press  for the corresponding file.

### When the Same Number is Dialed More than Once Using the Same Call Option

- Only the last record appears. (All records appear for S! Circle Talk and Decoration Call.)

### Advanced

-   Dialing from records
-  Sending messages from records
-  Saving Phone Book entries from records
-  Placing Decoration Calls from records
-  Initiating S! Circle Talk from records (And more on **P.3-18**)

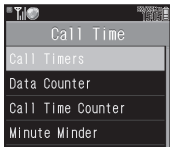


## Call Time

Check estimated time of the most recent call and all calls.

1  → **Settings** →  →   
**Call**

2 **Call Time/Data Counter** → 




Call Time/Data Counter Menu



3 **Call Timers** → 



4 **Dialed Calls or Received Calls** → 

### Resetting Dialed or Received Call Timer

After 4,  → Enter Handset Code

→  → Yes → 

### Advanced

  Setting handset to beep during Voice Calls  Checking packet transmission volume  Resetting Data Counter (And more on P.3-18)



## Restrict Destinations

Allow calls to numbers saved in Phone Book or Permitted List only.

3 Calling

### Limiting to Phone Book

- 1 → **Settings** → → → **Call** → **Call Barring** →
- 2 **Restrict Destinations** → → **Enter Handset Code** →



Restrict Destinations Menu

- 3 **Phonebook Entries** → → **On** →

### When Phonebook Entries is On

- Handset Code is required to add/edit Phone Book entries.

### Limiting to Permitted List

#### Specifying Numbers

- 1 In Restrict Destinations menu, **Specified Numbers** →



Specified Numbers Menu

- 2 **Permitted List** →
- 3 **<Empty>** →
- 4 **Enter phone number** →
  - Repeat - to add phone numbers.

#### Activating Permitted List

- 1 In Specified Numbers menu, **Switch On/Off** →
- 2 **On** →



### Advanced

- Designating Permitted List numbers from saved information
- Editing Permitted List (P.3-19)

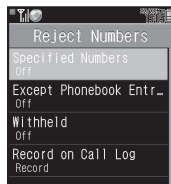
## Reject Numbers

Reject calls from specified/unsaved numbers or calls without Caller ID.

### Rejecting Specified Numbers

#### Specifying Numbers

- 1 → **Settings** → → → **Call** → **Call Barring** →
- 2 **Reject Numbers** → → **Enter Handset Code** →



Reject Numbers Menu

### 3 **Specified Numbers** →



Specified Numbers Menu

- 4 **Set Reject Number** →
- 5 **<Empty>** →
- 6 **Enter phone number** →
  - Repeat - to add phone numbers.

#### Activating Rejection

- 1 In Specified Numbers menu, **Switch On/Off** →
- 2 **On** →

### Rejecting Unsaved Numbers

- 1 In Reject Numbers menu, **Except Phonebook Entries** →
- 2 **On** →

### Rejecting Withheld Caller ID

Calls from public phones or with undisplayable Caller ID are also rejected.

- 1 In Reject Numbers menu, **Withheld** →
- 2 **On** →

### Advanced

- Designating numbers to reject from saved information ● Editing Reject Numbers list ● Excluding rejected calls from Call Log (P.3-19)



## Optional Services

Call Forwarding and Voicemail can only be set simultaneously when Call Forwarding is set to Video Calls.

3  
Calling

<b>Call Forwarding</b>	Automatically divert all or all unanswered incoming calls to another preset phone number
<b>Voicemail</b>	Redirect all or unanswered calls to Voicemail Center; access messages from handset/touchtone phones
<b>Call Waiting*</b>	Answer incoming calls or open another line during a call
<b>Group Calling*</b>	Switch between open lines or connect multiple lines at once for teleconferencing
<b>Call Barring</b>	Restrict incoming/outgoing calls depending on conditions
<b>Caller ID</b>	Show or hide your own number when placing calls

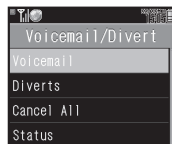
\* A separate contract is required.

### Initiating Call Forwarding

Follow these steps to divert calls to a phone number saved in Phone Book after selected ring time (**No Answer** set):

1 → **Settings** → → **Call**

2 **Voicemail/Divert** →



Voicemail/Divert Menu

3 **Diverts** →



4 **Select call type** →

5 **No Answer** →



6 **Phone Book** → → **Select entry** →

7 **Select phone number** → 

- Omit if only one number is saved.

8

9 **Select ring time** →

**Diverting Calls without Handset Response**  
In , **Always** → → -

**Entering Forwarding Number Directly**  
In , **Enter Number** → → **Enter phone number** → → **Select ring time** →



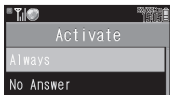
### Advanced

● Checking service status (P.3-20)

**Initiating Voicemail**

Follow these steps to divert calls to Voicemail Center after selected ring time (**No Answer** set):

- 1 In **Voicemail/Divert** menu, **Voicemail** → ● → **Activate** → ●



- 2 **No Answer** → ● → **Select ring time** → ●

Diverting Calls without Handset Response  
In ●, **Always** → ●

**Missed Call Notification**

Activate this function for records of calls missed while handset is off/out-of-range and Voicemail is active.

- 1 ● → **Settings** → ● → ● → **Call**



Call Menu

- 2 **out Missed Calls** → ● → ●
  - Follow the voice guidance for further operations.

**Playing Messages**

- 1 In **Call** menu, **Voicemail/Divert** → ●



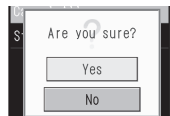
Voicemail/Divert Menu

- 2 **Voicemail** → ●
- 3 **Call Voicemail** → ●
  - Follow the voice guidance for further operations.

Deleting New Voicemail Message Indicator  
In ●, **Delete Icon** → ● → **Yes** → ●

**Canceling Call Forwarding/Voicemail**

- 1 In **Voicemail/Divert** menu, **Cancel All** → ●



- 2 **Yes** → ●

**Advanced**

- Activating Call Waiting ● Talking on multiple lines simultaneously ● Setting/canceling outgoing call restriction ● Setting/canceling incoming call restriction (And more on P.3-20 - 3-21)



## Receiving a Call

### ■ Handling Incoming Calls

Rejecting calls	<b>Voice Call</b> When a call arrives,  → <b>Reject</b> →
	<b>Video Call</b> When a call arrives,
Placing calls on hold	When a call arrives, • Press  to answer the call on hold.
Answering with Headphones	When a call arrives, <b>Long Press Call Button</b> • To end the call, Long Press Call Button.

### ■ Answer Phone

Recording caller messages	When a Voice Call arrives,  → <b>Record Message</b> →
Changing ring time	→ <b>Settings</b> →  →  → <b>Call</b> → <b>Answer Phone</b> →  → <b>Answer Time</b> →  → Enter time →
Sampling outgoing message	→ <b>Settings</b> →  →  → <b>Call</b> → <b>Answer Phone</b> →  → <b>Outgoing Message</b> → • Press  to stop playback.
Muting Earpiece	→ <b>Settings</b> →  →  → <b>Call</b> → <b>Answer Phone</b> →  → <b>Volume</b> →  → <b>Silent</b> →

## ■ Remote Monitor (Video Call)

Answering Video Calls automatically	<b>Start Here</b> →  → <b>Settings</b> →  →  → <b>Call</b> → <b>Video Call</b> →  → <b>Remote Monitor</b> →  → Enter Handset Code →  → See below
	<b>Saving Numbers from Phone Book</b> <b>Auto Answer List</b> →  → <b>&lt;Empty&gt;</b> →  → <b>Change</b> →  → <b>From Phone Book</b> →  → <b>Select entry</b> →  → <b>Select phone number</b> → • To enter a phone number directly, select <b>&lt;Empty&gt;</b> and press .
	<b>Saving Numbers from Call Log</b> <b>Auto Answer List</b> →  → <b>&lt;Empty&gt;</b> →  → <b>Change</b> →  → <b>From Call Log</b> →  → <b>Select record</b> →
Editing Auto Answer List	<b>Start Here</b> →  → <b>Settings</b> →  →  → <b>Call</b> → <b>Video Call</b> →  → <b>Remote Monitor</b> →  → Enter Handset Code →  → <b>Auto Answer List</b> →  → See below
	<b>Editing Numbers</b> <b>Select entry</b> →  → <b>Edit</b> →
Changing ring time	<b>Deleting Entries</b> <b>Select entry</b> →  → <b>Delete</b> →  → <b>Yes</b> →
	→ <b>Settings</b> →  →  → <b>Call</b> → <b>Video Call</b> →  → <b>Remote Monitor</b> →  → Enter Handset Code →  → <b>Answer Time</b> →  → Enter time →



## Placing a Call

## Basic Operations

Adjusting Earpiece Volume	● → Settings → ● → In Phone menu, Earpiece Volume → ● → Adjust level → ●
Sending/blocking Caller ID	After phone number entry, ☎ → Hide My ID or Show My ID → ●

## International Calls

Placing calls by entering country code directly	* * (+ appears) → Enter country code → Enter phone number with area code → ☎ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Omit the first 0 of the area code except when calling Italy or some other countries.</li> </ul>
Adding a country code automatically when placing calls	Start Here ● → Settings → ● → Call → Int'l Calling → ● → Auto Add Code → ● → See below <b>Activating Auto Add Code</b> Switch On/Off → ● → On → ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When Auto Add Code is active, preset country code is added to all phone numbers (except emergency call numbers) unless + is included.</li> </ul> <b>Selecting a Country from List</b> Country Code → ● → Select country → ● <b>Specifying a Country Code</b> Country Code → ● → Enter Code → ● → Enter country code → ●
Saving frequently used international prefix	● → Settings → ● → Call → Int'l Calling → ● → Int'l Prefix → ● → Enter Handset Code → ● → Enter prefix → ●

Adding/changing/deleting country codes

Start Here ● → Settings → ● → Call → Int'l Calling → ● → Country Codes → ● → See below

## Adding

&lt;Empty&gt; → ● → Enter name → ● → Enter country code → ●

## Changing

Select country → ● → Change → ● → Enter name → ● → Enter country code → ●

## Deleting

Select country → ● → Delete → ● → Yes → ●





## During a Call

## ■ Voice Call &amp; Video Call

Muting Microphone	<b>Voice Call</b> During a call, (🗑️) (press again to cancel)
	<b>Video Call</b> During a call, (🗑️) → <b>Mute</b> → (👤) • To cancel, select <b>Unmute</b> .
Activating/canceling Loudspeaker	<b>Activating Loudspeaker for Voice Call</b> During a call, (👤) → While message appears, (👤) • To cancel, press (👤).
	<b>Canceling Loudspeaker for Video Call</b> During a call, (🗑️) (press again to activate)
Switching sound output	During a call, (🗑️) → <b>Transfer Audio</b> → (👤) → <b>To Phone or To Bluetooth</b> → (👤)
Opening Phone Book	During a call, (🗑️) → <b>Phone Book</b> → (👤) → <b>Select entry</b> → (👤) • Press (🗑️) twice to return to call window.
Saving Phone Book entries	During a call, (🗑️) → <b>Phone Book</b> → (👤) → (🗑️) → <b>Add New Entry</b> → (👤) → <b>Complete fields</b> → (🗑️) • Press (🗑️) to return to call window.
Disabling touch tone signaling	During a call, (🗑️) → <b>Disable DTMF</b> → (👤)
Placing calls on hold	During a call, (🗑️) → <b>Hold</b> → (👤) • Subscription to Call Waiting or Group Calling is required to place Voice Calls on hold. • To resume Voice Calls, press (🗑️), select <b>Retrieve</b> and press (👤). • To resume Video Calls, press (🗑️).

## ■ Voice Call Only

Recording caller voice	During a call, (🗑️) → <b>Record Caller Voice</b> → (👤) → <b>Recording starts</b> → (👤) → <b>Recording ends</b>
Opening messages	During a call, (🗑️) → <b>Messaging</b> → (👤) → <b>Select Messaging folder</b> → (👤) → <b>Select folder</b> → (👤) → <b>Select message</b> → (👤) • Press (🗑️) three times to return to call window.
Creating messages	During a call, (🗑️) → <b>Messaging</b> → (👤) → <b>Create Message or Create New SMS</b> → (👤) → <b>Complete message</b> → (🗑️)

## ■ Video Call Only

Adjusting Outgoing Image brightness	During a call, (🗑️) → <b>Exposure</b> → (👤) → <b>Adjust level</b> → (👤) • Alternative Image brightness is fixed.
Canceling Internal Camera image reversal	During a call, (🗑️) → <b>Settings</b> → (👤) → <b>Mirror Image</b> → (👤) → <b>Off</b> → (👤)



## Decoration Call

Creating Decoration Call files	<p><b>Start Here</b> → <b>Data Folder</b> → <b>Decoration Call</b> → <b>Create New File</b> → <b>Text Input</b> → <b>Enter text</b> → <b>Images</b></p> <p>→ See below</p>
	<p><b>Using Still Images</b></p> <p><b>Picture</b> → <b>Pictures</b> → <b>Select file</b> → <b>Sounds</b> → <b>Select folder</b> → <b>Select file</b> → <b>Yes or No</b> → <b>Save here</b></p>
	<p><b>Using Video</b></p> <p><b>Video</b> → <b>Videos</b> → <b>Select file</b> → <b>Yes or No</b> → <b>Save here</b></p>
	<p><b>Using Flash® Animation</b></p> <p><b>Flash®</b> → <b>Select file</b> → <b>Yes or No</b> → <b>Save here</b></p>
	<p>→ <b>Data Folder</b> → <b>Decoration Call</b> → <b>Select file</b> → <b>Edit</b> → <b>Edit</b> → <b>Save as New or Overwrite</b></p> <p>• For <b>Save as New</b>, select <b>Save here</b> and press .</p>
Saving received Decoration Call files	<p><b>Select record</b> → <b>Save File</b> → <b>Save here</b></p>
Restricting incoming/outgoing Decoration Calls	<p>→ <b>Settings</b> → <b>Call</b> → <b>Decoration Call</b> → <b>Switch On/Off</b> → <b>Off</b> → <b>Enter Handset Code</b></p>
Hiding incoming Decoration Call window	<p>→ <b>Settings</b> → <b>Call</b> → <b>Decoration Call</b> → <b>Play in Receiving</b> → <b>Off</b></p>

Using mobile camera to create Decoration Call files

**Start Here** → **Data Folder** → **Decoration Call** → **Create New File** → **Text Input** → **Enter text** → **Images**

→ See below

### Capturing Still Images

**Picture** → **Take Picture** to shoot → **Save here**

### Recording Video

**Video** → **Record Video** to start recording → to stop → **Save** → **Yes or No** → **Save here**

Showing options upon Decoration Call failure

→ **Settings** → **Call** → **Decoration Call** → **Notice** → **On**



## Call Log

Dialing from records	<p><b>Calling Dialed Numbers (Redial)</b></p> <p> → <b>Select record</b> → </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To place Video Calls, press  instead of , then select <b>Video Call</b> and press .</li> </ul>
	<p><b>Calling from Received Call Records</b></p> <p> → <b>Select record</b> → </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To place Video Calls, press  instead of , then select <b>Video Call</b> and press .</li> </ul>
Sending messages from records	<p> → <b>Select record</b> →  → <b>Create Message</b> →  → <b>S! Mail or SMS</b> →  → <b>Complete message</b> → </p>
Saving Phone Book entries from records	<p> → <b>Select record</b> →  → <b>Save to Phone Book</b> →  → <b>As New Entry</b> →  → <b>Complete other fields</b> → </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To add to an existing entry, select <b>As New Detail</b>.</li> </ul>
Placing Decoration Calls from records	<p> → <b>Select record</b> →  → <b>Deco. Call</b> →  → <b>Deco. Call File</b> →  → <b>Select/create file</b> → </p>
Initiating S! Circle Talk from records	<p> → <b>Select record</b> →  → <b>Call S! Circle Talk</b> →  → </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Set Connection status to <b>Online</b> first.</li> </ul>
Deleting records	<p><b>One Record</b></p> <p> → <b>Select record</b> →  → <b>Delete</b> →  → </p>
	<p><b>All Records</b></p> <p> →  → <b>Delete All</b> →  → <b>Enter Handset Code</b> →  → <b>Yes</b> → </p>
Hiding Dialed Ranking	<p> → <b>Phone</b> →  → <b>Call Log Setting</b> →  → <b>Hide Dialed Ranking</b> → </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Handset Code is required to re-select <b>Show Dialed Ranking</b>.</li> </ul>

## Call Time/Data Communication

## ■ Call Time

Setting handset to beep during Voice Calls	<p> → <b>Settings</b> →  → <b>Call</b> → <b>Call Time/Data Counter</b> →  → <b>Minute Minder</b> →  → </p>
Hiding Call Time during calls	<p> → <b>Settings</b> →  → <b>Call</b> → <b>Call Time/Data Counter</b> →  → <b>Call Time Counter</b> →  → </p>
Resetting Call Timers	<p> → <b>Settings</b> →  → <b>Call</b> → <b>Call Time/Data Counter</b> →  → <b>Call Timers</b> →  → <b>Clear Timers</b> →  → <b>Enter Handset Code</b> →  → <b>Yes</b> → </p>

## ■ Data Communication

Checking packet transmission volume	<p><b>Start Here</b> →  → <b>Settings</b> →  → <b>Call</b> → <b>Call Time/Data Counter</b> →  → <b>Data Counter</b> → </p> <p>→ See below</p>
	<p><b>Most Recent Volume</b></p> <p><b>Last Data</b> → </p>
	<p><b>All Volume</b></p> <p><b>All Data</b> → </p>
Resetting Data Counter	<p> → <b>Settings</b> →  → <b>Call</b> → <b>Call Time/Data Counter</b> →  → <b>Data Counter</b> →  → <b>Clear Counter</b> →  → <b>Yes</b> → </p>



## Restrict Destinations

Designating Permitted List numbers from saved information	<p><b>Start Here</b> → Settings → Call → Call Barring → Restrict Destinations → Enter Handset Code → Specified Numbers → Permitted List → &lt;Empty&gt; → See below</p>
	<p><b>From Phone Book</b> Ph. Book List → Select entry</p>
	<p><b>From Call Log Records</b> From Call Log → Select record</p>
Editing Permitted List	<p><b>Start Here</b> → Settings → Call → Call Barring → Restrict Destinations → Enter Handset Code → Specified Numbers → Permitted List → See below</p>
	<p><b>Editing Numbers</b> Select number/name → Edit</p> <p><b>Deleting Numbers</b> Select number/name → Delete → Yes</p>

## Reject Numbers

Designating numbers to reject from saved information	<p><b>Start Here</b> → Settings → Call → Call Barring → Restrict Numbers → Enter Handset Code → Specified Numbers → Set Reject Number → &lt;Empty&gt; → See below</p>
	<p><b>From Phone Book</b> Ph. Book List → Select entry</p>
	<p><b>From Call Log Records</b> From Call Log → Select record</p>
Editing Reject Numbers list	<p><b>Start Here</b> → Settings → Call → Call Barring → Restrict Numbers → Enter Handset Code → Specified Numbers → Set Reject Number → See below</p>
	<p><b>Editing Numbers</b> Select number/name → Edit</p> <p><b>Deleting Numbers</b> Select number/name → Delete → Yes</p>
Excluding rejected calls from Call Log	<p>Settings → Call → Call Barring → Reject Numbers → Enter Handset Code → Record on Call Log → Do not Record</p>



## Optional Services

## ■ All Services

Checking service status	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <b>Settings</b> → ● → ☎ → <b>Call</b> → Select service → ● → <b>Status</b> → ●</li> <li>● For <b>Call Barring</b>, select restriction and press ●.</li> </ul>
-------------------------	--

## ■ Call Waiting (Contract Required)

Activating Call Waiting	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <b>Settings</b> → ● → ☎ → <b>Call</b> → <b>Call Waiting</b> → ● → <b>On</b> → ●</li> </ul>
Placing Line 1 on hold to answer Line 2	<p>A tone sounds during a Voice Call → ☎</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Press ☎ to switch between lines.</li> <li>● Press ☎ to end active line and re-engage the party on hold.</li> </ul>

## ■ Group Calling (Contract Required)

Opening another line during a Call	<p>During a Voice Call, enter phone number → ☎</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Long Press ☎ to select a number from Call Log records.</li> </ul>
Switching between open lines (Swap Calls)	<p>During a Voice Call, ☎</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Press ☎ to switch between lines.</li> </ul>
Talking on multiple lines simultaneously	<p>While switching between lines, ☎ → <b>Group Calling</b> → ● → <b>Conference All</b> → ●</p>
Switching to private conversation	<p>During Group Calling, select number/name → ● → <b>Private</b> → ●</p>

## ■ Call Barring

Changing Network Password	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <b>Settings</b> → ● → ☎ → <b>Call</b> → <b>Call Barring</b> → ● → <b>Change NW Password</b> → ● → Enter current Network Password → ● → Enter new Network Password → ● → Re-enter new Network Password → ●</li> </ul>
Setting/canceling outgoing call restriction	<p>[Start Here] ● → <b>Settings</b> → ● → ☎ → <b>Call</b> → <b>Call Barring</b> → ● → <b>Bar Outgoing Calls</b> → ● → See below</p> <p><b>Setting Restriction</b></p> <p>Select restriction → ● → <b>On</b> → ● → Enter Network Password → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>Outgoing SMS messages are also restricted.</b></li> <li>● Outgoing S! Circle Talk requests are not affected.</li> <li>● Following restrictions are available:             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ All Outgoing Calls: Restrict all non-emergency calls</li> <li>■ Bar Int'l Call: Restrict all international calls</li> <li>■ Local &amp; Home Only: Restrict all international calls except to Japan</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p><b>Canceling All Restrictions</b></p> <p><b>Cancel All</b> → ● → Enter Network Password → ●</p>



Setting/canceling incoming call restriction	<p><b>Start Here</b> </p> <p>See below</p> <p><b>Setting Restriction</b></p> <p>Select restriction   Enter Network Password </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Incoming SMS messages are also restricted.</li> <li>Incoming S! Circle Talk requests are not affected.</li> <li>Following restrictions are available:           <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>All Incoming Calls: Reject all calls</li> <li>Bar if Abroad: Reject calls when outside Japan</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p><b>Canceling All Restrictions</b></p> <p>Cancel All  Enter Network Password </p>
	<p><b>Caller ID</b></p> <p>Showing/hiding Caller ID    </p>
	<p><b>Settings</b></p> <p><b>Voice Call</b></p> <p>Answering calls automatically when using Headphones</p> <p><b>Start Here</b> </p> <p>See below</p> <p><b>Activating Auto Answer</b></p> <p>Switch On/Off  </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When Auto Answer is active, Auto Answer tone sounds after ringtone even in Manner mode; cancel afterward.</li> </ul> <p><b>Changing Ring Time</b></p> <p>Answer Time  </p>

## Video Call

Sending Alternative Image when initiating Video Calls	<p><b>Start Here</b> </p> <p>See below</p> <p><b>Setting Alternative Image</b></p> <p>Default Image </p> <p><b>Changing Alternative Image</b></p> <p>Alternative Image  </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Omit file selection step when using Customized Screen images.</li> </ul>
	<p>Disabling Loudspeaker for Video Calls</p> <p> </p>
	<p>Muting Microphone when initiating Video Calls</p> <p> </p>
Changing quality of Incoming/Outgoing Images	<p> </p>
Setting image that is sent while call is on hold	<p> </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Omit file selection step when using Customized Screen images.</li> </ul>
Setting Backlight status	<p> </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Selecting <b>Normal Setting</b> applies Display Backlight settings.</li> </ul>



#### Receiving a Call

##### ? Cannot use Answer Phone or Caller Voice




- Answer Phone and Caller Voice are disabled when less than 12 seconds remain or 20 messages are recorded. Delete messages.
- Answer Phone and Caller Voice are not available for Video Calls.

#### Placing a Call


##### ? Cannot place call via Speed Dial

- Speed Dial is not available when Phone Book access is restricted by Application Lock.

##### ? Cannot place call

- If  appears, cancel Keypad Lock.
- If  appears, cancel Function Lock.
- If  appears, cancel Offline Mode.

##### ? Call won't connect and there's a beeping tone

- Did you include the area code or the first 0? Dial the number including the area code or 0.
- Handset may be out-of-range ( appears). Move to a place where signal is strong and retry.

#### During a Call

##### ? Outgoing image is distorted during Video Calls

- Rapid motion can make images appear choppy or distorted.

##### ? Conversation is hampered

- Conversations may be hampered by ambient noise.
- Check Earpiece Volume when using Loudspeaker. Increasing Earpiece Volume may cause feedback/interference.

##### ? Call is choppy or cut off

- Network signal may be weak. Move to a place where signal is strong and retry.
- Battery may need to be charged or replaced. Charge battery or install a charged battery.

##### ? Clicking noise is heard during call

- Handset may be moving into another service area. Noise is heard when Network signal switches. This is normal.

##### ? Cannot hear other party's voice

- Earpiece Volume may be low. Increase Earpiece Volume (P.3-3).
- Sound output may be set to use handsfree device. Set Transfer Audio (P.3-16) to *To Phone*.

#### Other

##### ? Call Time (in *Dialed Calls* or *Received Calls*) seems incorrect

- Ring time for incoming or outgoing calls is not counted. (On hold time is counted.)

##### ? Cannot save phone number for Call Forwarding

- Does the number start with 1, 00, 0120 or 0990? Public service numbers, international call numbers starting with 00, toll-free numbers and fee-based service numbers cannot be saved.



<b>Messaging</b> .....	<b>4-2</b>
Basics .....	4-2
Customizing Handset Address .....	4-3
<b>Sending Messages</b> .....	<b>4-4</b>
Sending S! Mail .....	4-4
Sending SMS.....	4-7
Restricting Outgoing Messages.....	4-8
<b>Incoming Messages</b> .....	<b>4-9</b>
Opening & Replying.....	4-9
Customizing S! Mail Retrieval.....	4-11
<b>Handling Messages</b> .....	<b>4-12</b>
Managing & Using Messages.....	4-12
Sorting Messages.....	4-14

<b>Chat Folders</b> .....	<b>4-15</b>
Using Chat Folders.....	4-15
<b>Mail Groups</b> .....	<b>4-16</b>
Creating Groups for Broadcast Mail .....	4-16
<b>PC Mail</b> .....	<b>4-17</b>
<b>Additional Functions</b> .....	<b>4-20</b>
<b>Troubleshooting</b> .....	<b>4-35</b>

# 4

## Messaging





## Basics

Use the following messaging services.

### SMS

Exchange up to 160 alphanumeric characters with SoftBank handsets.

### S! Mail

Exchange up to 30,000 characters with e-mail compatible handsets, PCs, etc; attach media files, etc.

#### Large Size Messages

Transmit messages of up to 1 MB including large images or multiple files; may incur high charges depending on subscribed price plan.

### PC Mail

Receive or reply to PC mail account messages. Use 933SH to handle PC Mail messages like SMS or S! Mail.

### Available Entry Items

	Recipient	Subject	Message	Attachment
SMS	Available*	N/A	Available	N/A
S! Mail	Available	Available	Available	Available
PC Mail	Available	Available	Available	Available

\*SoftBank handset numbers only.

- A separate contract is required to use S! Mail and receive e-mail from PCs, etc.
- For more information, see SoftBank Mobile Website (P.15-23).

### Auto Retry Function

If recipient's handset is off/out-of-range, a sent message is saved in Server Mail Box and delivery attempted at regular intervals. (Undeliverable messages are deleted.)

### Auto Resend

When Auto Resend is active, handset makes up to two attempts to send unsent messages automatically. Cancel to disable (P.4-31).



## Customizing Handset Address


Change alphanumeric before @ of the default handset mail address.

For more information, see SoftBank Mobile Website (P.15-23).

### Changing Address

1  → **Settings** → 

2 **Address Settings** → 

- Handset connects to the Internet. Select **English** and press , then follow onscreen instructions.

### Saving Address

When handset address is changed, SoftBank sends new address confirmation via S! Mail.

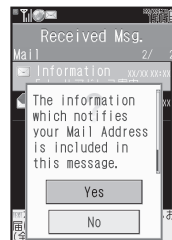


To save new address to My Details, follow these steps. (New address is effective even if not saved.)

1 **Message** → 



2 **Information** → 



3 **Yes** → 



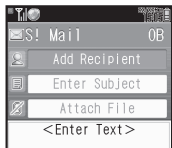
4 



## Sending S! Mail

Follow these steps to send S! Mail to a number/address saved in Phone Book:

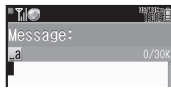
- 1 ➔ **Create Message** ➔   
 When a PC Mail Account exists, select **S! Mail** and press .



S! Mail Composition Window

- 2 **Select recipient field** ➔
- 3 **Phone Book** ➔
- 4 **Select entry** ➔

- 5 **Select number or mail address** ➔   
  - Omit if only one number or address is saved.
  - When a mail address is entered, do not use single-byte katakana in message text or subject.
- 6 **Select subject field** ➔ ➔ **Enter subject** ➔
- 7 **Select message text field** ➔



Text Entry Window

- 8 **Enter message** ➔



S! Mail Composition Window

- 9 ➔ **Transmission starts**   
  - To cancel, press during transmission.

### Incoming Calls while Creating Message

- Content is saved temporarily. End the call to return.

### Personal Mode

- When recipient is entered via Phone Book, text entry window word suggestions change according to recipient type.

### Previewing Outgoing Message

- After , ➔ **Preview Message** ➔

### Pictogram Entry

- In Pictogram List, press to toggle cross-carrier Pictograms and all Pictograms.
- Pictogram appearance may differ by carrier.

### Specifying Line in Dual Mode

- [S! Mail Composition Window] ➔ **Switch Line** ➔ ➔ **Select line** ➔

### Advanced

- Using other recipient entry methods
- Adding recipients
- Inserting signature automatically
- Converting mail type (SMS/S! Mail) (And more on P.4-20)
- Saving without sending
- Requesting delivery confirmation
- Designating/editing reply-to address (And more on P.4-21 - 4-22)
- Requesting Delivery Report for all messages
- Disabling automatic resend of unsent messages
- Hiding progress bar while sending messages (And more on P.4-31)



## Attaching Files

Send attachments to compatible handsets. Follow these steps to attach images to S! Mail:

- 1 In S! Mail Composition window after composing message, select attachment field



- 2 **Picture** **Select folder**

- 3 **Select file**



Attach File Window

- 4 **Transmission starts**

## Advanced

- Changing attached image size Set Auto Play File (And more on P.4-22)
- Disabling image auto-resize Limiting outgoing S! Mail message size Limiting incoming S! Mail message size (And more on P.4-33)

## Attaching Non-Image Files

- In , select a folder other than **Picture** and press , then select a file.

## Attaching Multiple Files

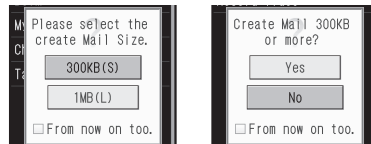
After , **Attach (1)** **Attach**

**File** **From**

- **X** in **Attach (X)** indicates the number of attached files.

## Message Size Limit

When message size reaches certain limit upon attaching a file, one of the following confirmations appears:



Select message size limit or choose **Yes** and press to proceed. (Images may be resized automatically.) To make selection the default setting hereafter, press to check **From now on too.** check-box. (Confirmation will be disabled.)

## If Recipient Cannot Receive Large Messages (Up to 1 MB)

- Message may be truncated or attachments may be lost.

## Sending Feeling Mail

- 1 In S! Mail Composition window after composing message, **Feeling Settings**



- 2 **Select category, e.g., Happy/Glad**

- 3 **Select item, e.g., I Love You**



- 4 **Transmission starts**

## Canceling Feeling Mail

[S! Mail Composition Window] Select subject field **Select Pictogram, e.g.,**



### Sending Graphic Mail

Follow these steps to:

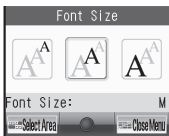
- Change font size and background color
- Insert images and My Pictograms
- Scroll text

#### 1 In text entry window, (Long)

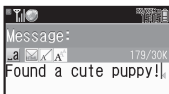


Graphic Mail Window

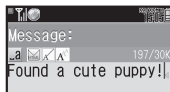
#### 2 SIZE →



#### 3 Select size → Enter text



#### 4 → BG → Select color →

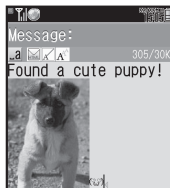


#### 5 → IMAGE → Select folder → Select file →



#### 6 Select target location →

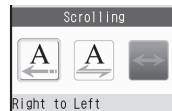
#### 7 → MY PICT → Select file →



#### 8 → EFFECT →



#### 9 Scrolling →



#### 10 Select direction → Enter text

#### 11 → Transmission starts

#### Canceling Last Action

[Graphic Mail Window] UNDO →

#### Cancelling All Graphic Mail Settings

[Graphic Mail Window] CANCEL →

→ Yes →

#### Saving as Templates

After ID, → Save as

Template → Enter name →

→ Save here →

- Only the message text is saved.

### Advanced

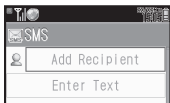
- Creating Graphic Mail from templates
- Changing text color, size & effect
- Changing text color
- Inserting background sound
- Inserting Flash® file
- Inserting horizontal line
- Flashing text
- Aligning text (left/right/center) (And more on P.4-22 - 4-23)



## Sending SMS

Follow these steps to send SMS to a number saved in Phone Book:

- 1  → **Create New SMS** → 




SMS Composition Window

- 2 **Select recipient field** → 

- 3 **Phone Book** → 

- 4 **Select entry** → 

- 5 **Select number** → 



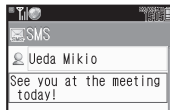
- Omit 5 if only one number is saved.

- 6 **Select message text field** → 




Text Entry Window

- 7 **Enter message** → 



SMS Composition Window

- 8  → **Transmission starts**

### Incoming Calls while Creating Message

- Content is saved temporarily. End the call to return.

### Personal Mode

- When recipient is entered via Phone Book, text entry window word suggestions change according to recipient type.

### When Message Text Exceeds Limit

- A confirmation appears. To convert SMS to S! Mail, follow these steps:


**Yes** → 

### Specifying Line in Dual Mode

[SMS Composition Window]  →

**Switch Line** →  → **Select line** → 

### Advanced







-  Using other recipient entry methods
- Adding recipients
- Using Speed Dial/Mail list
- Converting mail type (SMS/S! Mail) (And more on P.4-20)
- Saving without sending
- Requesting delivery confirmation
- Changing Server sent message storage limit (And more on P.4-21 - 4-22)
- Changing Server sent message storage limit
- Changing SMS Server number
- Changing character encoding for composing messages (P.4-34)



## Restricting Outgoing Messages

Allow messaging to handset numbers/ addresses saved in Phone Book or Permitted List only.

### Limiting to Phone Book

- 1  → **Settings** → 
- 2 **General Settings** →  → **Send/Compose** → 
- 3 **Restrictions Setting** →  → **Enter Handset Code** → 



Set Restrict Mail Menu

- 4 **Phonebook Entries** →  → **On** → 

When Phonebook Entries is *On*

- Handset Code is required to add/edit Phone Book entries.

### Limiting to Permitted List

#### Specifying Mail Addresses



- 1 In Set Restrict Mail menu, **Individual Address** → 



Individual Address Menu

- 2 **Permitted List** → 
- 3 **<Empty>** → 
- 4 **Select method** →  → **Select/enter address** → 
  - Repeat 3 - 4 to add mail addresses.

#### Activating Permitted List

- 1 In Individual Address menu, **Switch On/Off** → 
- 2 **On** → 



### Advanced

-   Deleting Permitted List entries (P.4-31)

## Opening & Replying

### Opening New Messages

Information window opens for new mail.  
See **P.4-19** to receive PC Mail.



#### Important Message Retrieval Notes

- By default, complete messages including attachments are retrieved in and outside Japan; transmission fees apply depending on subscribed price plan.
- Automatic message retrieval while abroad may incur high charges since flat-rate packet transmission plans do not apply during international roaming.
- To retrieve only the initial portion of message text automatically, set Message DL to **Manual**; retrieve complete message manually as needed.

#### Delivery Report

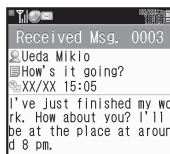
- Information window opens for Delivery Report. Follow these steps to open it:  
**Delivery Report** → **Select message with report**

### 1 Message



Message List

### 2 Select message



- Message window opens.

#### Receiving Feeling Mail

- Small Light, Vibration and ringtone respond according to settings.

#### Attached Images

- Attached images open automatically.

#### Messages with Quiz

##### Enter or select answer

- Message cannot be opened until the correct answer is entered or selected.

#### Animation View

- When a specific Pictogram is included in subject or message text, corresponding animation appears in message window background.

#### Mail Notice

- When Message DL is not set to **Auto (All)**, Server sends initial portion of message text in each of the following cases:
  - The message was sent to multiple recipients
  - Files are attached to the message

### Advanced

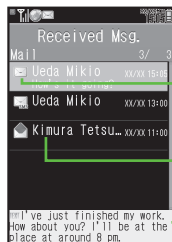
- Accessing new mail out of Standby ● Retrieving new S! Mail manually ● Viewing new messages on External Display (And more on **P.4-23 - 4-24**)
- Muting ringer, etc. for messages sorted into Secret folders ● Changing alerts for messages received during handset use (And more on **P.4-31 - 4-32**)





## Window Description

### Message List



Message Type/Status (see below)

Sender or Recipient

Message Text

### Message Type/Status

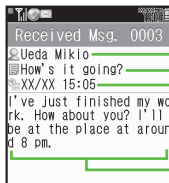
	Unread		Mail Notice (remaining portion exists)
	Read		Unread Delivery Report
	Sent		Attachments
	Failed		Protected
	Replied		Priority (High)
	Forwarded		Priority (Low)
	Send Reservation set		USIM Card SMS

SMS or PC appears for SMS/PC Mail messages (✉, etc.).

### Advanced

- Using linked info
- Saving attachments to Data Folder
- Looking up message text words in dictionaries
- Jumping to message top/bottom
- Reporting unsolicited message sources as spammers
- Selecting mail type/quote option
- Opening received message for reference
- Replying quickly using fixed text
- Replying to messages automatically (And more on P.4-24 - 4-25)
- Selecting quote option (P.4-31)

## Message Window



Sender or Recipient

Subject (except for SMS)

Received or Sent Date & Time

Message Text

Drag/swipe finger left or right across Display or press or to open previous (older) or next (newer) messages.

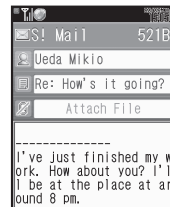
### Changing Font Size

(Long) to enlarge or (Long) to reduce

- Alternatively, pinch or spread fingers.

## Replying to Messages

### 1 In message window,



- Original message text is quoted (except for SMS and Graphic Mail).

### 2 Complete message

#### Replying to Messages Addressed to Multiple Recipients

After 1, To Sender or Reply All

#### Reply Assist Dictionary (メール返信アシスト辞書)

- When replying, this dictionary prioritizes original message words in suggestion list.
- Auto Reply
- Handset sends a reply automatically when receiving messages from saved numbers or addresses in specified mode (Manner mode, etc.).



## Customizing S! Mail Retrieval

Set complete S! Mail retrieval to manual (Server sends only initial portion of message text without attachments) or set handset to retrieve complete messages automatically by specifying sender type, mail address, etc.

### Retrieving Messages Manually

Set message retrieval for handset use within or outside Japan, separately.

- 1 → **Settings** →
- 2 **S! Mail Settings** →



- 3 **Message DL(Japan) or Message DL(Abroad)** →



Message DL Menu

- 4 **Manual** →

### Restricting Automatic Retrieval

#### By Sender Type

- 1 In Message DL menu, **Auto (Specify)** →



Auto (Specify) Menu

- 2 Select item → (/✓) →

#### By Mail Address

Specify mail addresses or domains (alphanumerics after @ of mail addresses).

- 1 In **Auto (Specify)** menu, **Individual Address** →



- 2 Select blank entry →
- 3 Select method → →
- 3 **Select/enter address** →
  - Repeat 2 - 3 to add mail addresses.

- 4

- 5 (✓) →

#### Restricting by Domain (Direct Entry)

- In 1, **Receive by the Domain** →
- Select blank entry → → **Direct Entry** → → Enter domain → →
- 

### Advanced

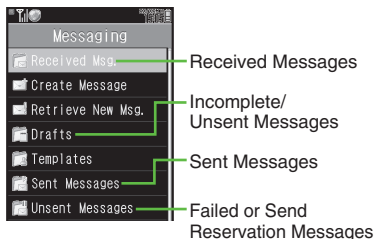
- Retrieving remaining portions (P.4-23)
- Deleting addresses/domains specified for complete message retrieval (P.4-32)



## Managing & Using Messages

### Messaging Folders

Messages are organized in folders by type.



### Checking Messages

1 → **Received Msg. or Sent Messages** →



Folder List

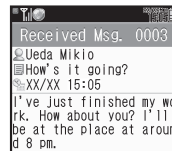
- When a PC Mail Account exists, PC Mail folder (folder with the name specified in Account Name) appears.
- Select Mail folder or PC Mail folder and press to hide/show sub folders. To open full message list, hide sub folders and press .

2 **Select folder** →



Message List

3 **Select message** →



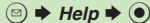
Message Window

### Auto Delete

- Oldest received/sent messages are deleted automatically to save new ones when memory is full. Protect important messages to avoid unintentional deletion.

### Opening Help

- Follow these steps in folder list, message list or message window:



### Protecting Messages

1 **In message list, select message** → → **Manage Msg.** →

2 **Lock** →

### Canceling Protection

In 2, **Unlock** →








### Advanced

- Selecting multiple messages
- Color-tagging messages
- Deleting messages (And more on P.4-26 - 4-27)
- Forwarding messages
- Sending from Drafts
- Checking Server Mail message count and volume
- Changing message window scroll unit
- Selecting automatic deletion option for received messages
- Canceling automatic deletion of oldest sent messages (And more on P.4-29 - 4-30)



## Searching Messages






Search messages by message text, sender/recipient address, etc.

- 1  ➔ **Received Msg. or Sent Messages** ➔ 
- 2  ➔ **Search** ➔ 
- 3 **Search All Msg.** ➔ 
- 4 **Select method** ➔  ➔ **Select/enter address or text** ➔ 

### Searching by Folder




In , select folder ➔  ➔ **Search** ➔  ➔ **Search Folder** ➔  ➔ 4

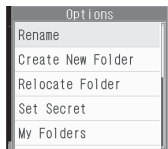
### Searching Message Text

- Follow these steps to find specific words/phrases; limit search by character type.  
[Message Window]  ➔ **Search Text** ➔  ➔ **Enter text** ➔ 
  - Press  or  to jump to next/previous search result.

## Hiding Folders

Hide Received Msg./Sent Message folder to require Handset Code for access to the folder and messages within. Chat Folders are not affected.

- 1  ➔ **Received Msg. or Sent Messages** ➔ 
- 2 **Select folder** ➔ 



- 3 **Set Secret** ➔  ➔ **Enter Handset Code** ➔  ➔ 

### Accessing Secret Folders

After 1,  ➔ **Unlock Temporarily** ➔  ➔ **Enter Handset Code** ➔ 

## Advanced



-   Moving messages manually  Renaming folders  Deleting folders  Adding folders  Moving folders  Changing status of all messages within folders to read  Canceling automatic deletion of messages within folders  Canceling Secret (P.4-27)

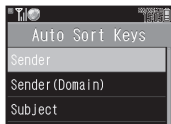


## Sorting Messages

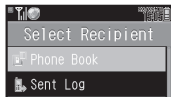
### Sorting into Designated Folders

Sort messages by sender/recipient or partially matching text in subject or SMS message text.

- 1  ➔ **Received Msg. or Sent Messages** ➔
- 2 **Select target folder** ➔ 
- 3 **My Folders** ➔  ➔ **Select blank entry** ➔




- 4 **Sender (Recipient for Sent Messages)** ➔




- 5 **Select method** ➔  ➔ **Select/enter number/address** ➔

- 6  ➔ **Saved**

#### Sorting by Domain (Direct Entry)

In , **Sender(Domain)**  
(**Recipient(Domain)** for Sent Messages) ➔  ➔ **Direct Entry** ➔

➔ **Enter domain** ➔  ➔ 

#### Sorting by Part of Subject/SMS Message Text

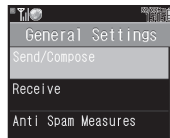
In , **Subject** ➔  ➔ **Enter text** ➔

➔ 

### Filtering Spam

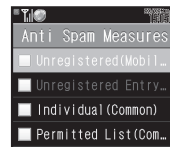
Follow these steps to filter messages from handset numbers/addresses not saved in Phone Book into Spam Folder:  
(Alternatively, set sort keys to filter messages.)

- 1  ➔ **Settings** ➔  ➔ **General Settings** ➔



- 2 **Anti Spam Measures** ➔

- 3 **Enter Handset Code** ➔





- 4 **Unregistered(Mobile)** ➔  (✓)

- 5  ➔

#### Exempting Messages from Filtering

After , **Permitted List(Common)** ➔


 ➔ **Select blank entry** ➔  ➔ **Select key** ➔  ➔ **Select/enter number/address/subject** ➔  ➔ 

➔  (✓) ➔ 

#### When a PC Mail Account Exists

- Filter PC Mail messages from addresses not saved in Phone Book.

### Advanced

-   Re-sorting messages
- Sorting spam by setting keys
- Editing/deleting sort keys (P.4-28)

## Using Chat Folders

Organize messages exchanged between handset and Chat members' handsets.  
To hide messages, set Chat Folder to Secret.

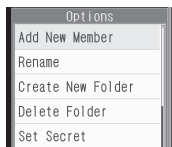
### Saving Members

- 1 → **Chat Folder** →

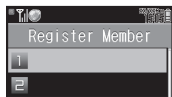


Chat Folder List

- 2 **Select folder** →



- 3 **Add New Member** →

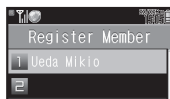


- 4 **Select blank entry** →

- Select saved member to edit number/address.

- 5 **Select method** →

- Select/enter number/  
address** →



- Repeat 4 - 5 to add members.

- 6 → **Saved**

### Changing Members

- In 4, **select member** →

- Change Member** → → **From**

### Deleting Members

- In 4, **select member** → → **Delete**

- → **Yes** → →

### Opening Chat Folders

- 1 **In Chat Folder list, select folder** →



- 2 **Select message** →

### Advanced

- Deleting folders Deleting all messages Resetting Chat Folders (P.4-28)



## Creating Groups for Broadcast Mail

Create Mail Groups to send messages to multiple recipients at one time.

Save target recipients to Phone Book beforehand.

1 → **Settings** →

2 **Set Mail Group** →



Mail Group Entry Window

3 **<Add New Group>** → →

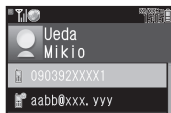
Enter name →

4 **Select Group** →



5 **<Assign New Entry>** → →

→ **Select entry** →



6 **Select number or mail address** →



- Omit if only one number or address is saved.
- Repeat - to add members.

7 → **Saved**

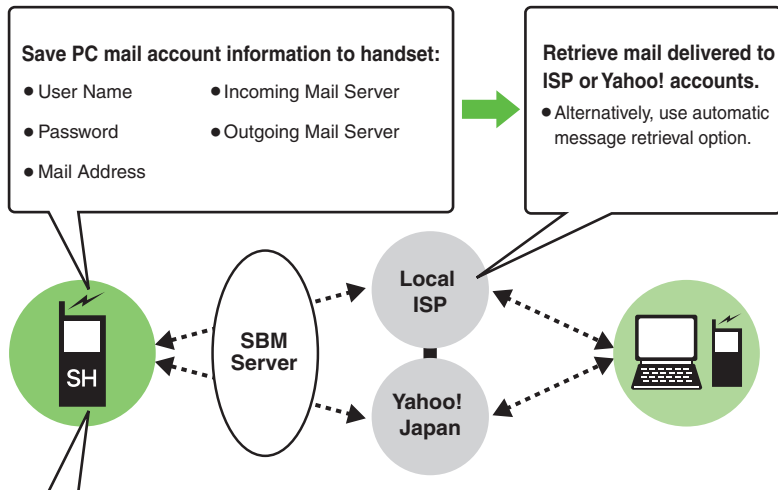


### Advanced

- Renaming Mail Groups
- Deleting Mail Groups/Group members
- Changing Mail Group members (P.4-29)

## PC Mail

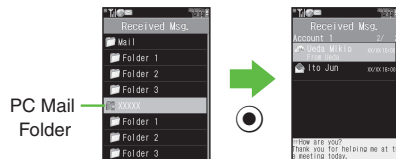
Receive or reply to PC mail account messages.



### Important PC Mail Usage Notes

- Receiving PC Mail for the first time after PC Mail Account setup may incur high charges due to large-volume packet transmissions.
- Setting handset to retrieve PC Mail automatically may incur high charges; remember this, especially when using handset outside Japan.
- Other functions may slow while handset is checking for new messages.
- Checking for new messages may incur transmission fees even when none exists.
- Single-byte katakana and Pictograms are not supported.
- When messages sent from handset to PC mail account are retrieved by handset (then opened, replied with quotes, forwarded, etc.), included Pictograms may not appear or may appear as different characters.

Messages are saved in unique folders; reply to/send messages via PC mail account addresses.



- Handle messages (sort, etc.) like S! Mail or SMS. (Unavailable functions do not appear in Options menu and some may appear under different names.)





## PC Mail Account Setup

- Proceed with setup according to information supplied by ISP.
- PC Mail services may be unavailable depending on the services, settings or contract details for your PC mail account. Confirm compatibility with POP/SMTP message retrieval/transmission via e-mail software beforehand.


### Mandatory Items for Retrieval



User Name	Required to connect to incoming mail server
Password	Required to connect to incoming mail server
ReceivingServer	Incoming mail server address

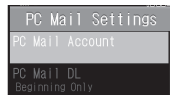
### Mandatory Items for Transmission

Mail Address	Address to use PC Mail
Sender Server	Outgoing mail server address

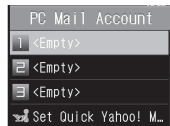
### Setting Other Items

- Edit information as needed; for description, select an item and press .

- 1  → **Settings** →  → **PC Mail Settings** →  → 







- 2 **PC Mail Account** → 



- 3 **<Empty>** → 

- 4 **Account Name** →  → **Enter name** → 

- 5 **Set Receiving** →  → **Select item** →  → **Select/enter item** →  → 

- User Name, Password and ReceivingServer are mandatory.



- 6 **Set Sending** →  → **Select item** →  → **Select/enter item** → 

- Mail Address and Sender Server are mandatory.

- 7  →  → 




- If a confirmation appears, follow onscreen prompts.

### Using Yahoo! Mail Addresses




- In , **Set Quick Yahoo! Mail** →  → **Yes or No** → 

- Follow onscreen instructions.
- Choose **No** to create a new account.

### Editing Accounts











- In , select account →  → **From** 

### Deleting Accounts

- In , select account →  → **Yes** → 

### Saving User ID & Password for Transmission

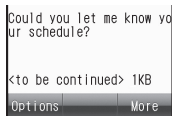
- If User Name and Password are unset Set Receiving items are automatically used for SMTP authentication. Follow these steps if ISP requires User Name and Password:

- In , **Set Sending** →  → **Sender Auth.** →  → **SMTP Auth.** →  → **User Name** →  → **Enter name** →  → **Password** →  → **Enter password** →  →  → 



## Retrieving New PC Mail

Retrieve new messages from created accounts. If message count is high, some may not be received on the first attempt.



Message Window

- Press to retrieve full message.
- Message window is similar to that of S! Mail.

### Deleting Messages

[Message List] Select message →  
 → Delete → → Select option  
 → → Yes →

### Retrieving Messages by Account

After , select account → →

## Checking Received PC Mail

- **Received Msg.** →   
 → **Select folder** →
  - Message list appears. Message list is similar to that of S! Mail.
- Select message** →
  - Message window opens.

## Replying to PC Mail

- In message window,**
  - PC Mail Composition window opens.
  - Original message text is quoted (except for HTML messages).
- Complete message** → → **Transmission starts**

### Replying without Quoting Original Message Text

[Message Window] → Reply →  
 → PC Mail → → Complete message →

### Changing Account for Outgoing Messages

[PC Mail Composition Window]  
 Select recipient field → → From:  
 → → Select account →

## Sending PC Mail

Follow these steps to create and send PC Mail:

- **Create Message** →
- Select PC Mail Account** →
- Complete message** → → **Transmission starts**

### Converting PC Mail to S! Mail

After , → **Convert to S! Mail** →  
 → Yes →

#### Note

- Single-byte katakana and Pictograms are not supported.

## Advanced

- Retrieving complete PC Mail messages
- Retrieving new messages automatically
- Retrieving PC Mail for specified folder
- Disabling automatic word wrap
- Retrieving complete messages from specified addresses
- Deleting addresses/domains specified for complete message retrieval
- Restricting complete message retrieval by size (P.4-33 - 4-34)



## Creating/Sending Messages

### Recipient

Using other recipient entry methods	In Mail Composition window, select recipient field → ● → Select method → ● → Select/enter number/address → ●
Adding recipients	In Mail Composition window, select recipient field → ● → Add Recipient → ● → Select method → ● → Select/enter number/address → ● →
Switching recipient status (To, Cc and Bcc)	In Mail Composition window, select recipient field → ● → Select recipient →  → Select status → ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Other recipients cannot see numbers/addresses set to Bcc.</li> </ul>
Using Speed Dial/Mail list	<p><b>Saving Recipients</b>   → Settings → ● → Speed Dial/Mail → ● → &lt;Empty&gt; → ● → Select entry → ● → Select number or mail address → ● → Do not Assign → ● → </p> <p><b>Creating Messages</b>                      In Standby,  -    (Speed Dial/Mail entry number) →   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When messaging to SoftBank handset numbers, select <b>S! Mail</b> or <b>SMS</b> and press ●.</li> </ul> </p>
Editing/deleting recipients	<p><b>Editing Recipients</b>                      In Mail Composition window, select recipient field → ● → See below</p> <p><b>Editing Recipients</b>                      Select recipient → ● → Edit → ●</p> <p><b>Deleting a Recipient</b>                      Select recipient →  → Delete → ●</p> <p><b>Deleting All Recipients</b>                      Select recipient →  → Delete All → ● → Yes → ●</p>



Editing Speed Dial/Mail list	<p><b>Start Here</b>  → Settings → ● → Speed Dial/Mail → ● → See below</p> <p><b>Editing Entries</b>                      Select entry →  → Change → ● → Select number/address → ● → Select new number/address → ● → </p> <p><b>Canceling Entries</b>                      Select entry →  → Remove Selected → ● → Yes → ●</p> <p><b>Canceling All Entries</b>   → Remove All → ● → Yes → ●</p>
	<p><b>Message Text</b></p>
	<p><b>Inserting signature automatically</b>   → Settings → ● → S! Mail Settings → ● → Signature → ● → Edit → ● → Enter signature → ● → Auto Insert → ● → On → ●  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Signature is inserted above message text when forwarding messages or quoting original message text in replies.</li> <li>Not available for SMS.</li> </ul> </p>
	<p><b>Inserting signature manually</b>                      In text entry window,  → Insert/Font Size → ● → Signature → ●</p> <p><b>Inserting ASCII Art</b>                      In text entry window,  → Call ASCII Art → ● → Select entry → ●</p> <p><b>Converting mail type (SMS/S! Mail)</b>                      In Mail Composition window,  → Change to SMS or Convert to S! Mail → ● → Yes → ●</p>

## ■ Save/Send Reservation/Cancel

Saving without sending	After completing message, (☺) → <b>Save to Drafts</b> → (●)
Sending automatically later	(Start Here) After completing message, (☺) → <b>Send Reservation</b> → (●) → See below
	<b>Auto Send when Signal Returns Within the Network</b> → (●) → <b>Yes</b> → (●)
Canceling sent S! Mail	<b>Designating Send Date/Time (within one week) Date &amp; Time</b> → (●) → Enter date/time → (●) → <b>Yes</b> → (●)
	(☺) → <b>Sent Messages</b> → (●) → <b>Select folder</b> → (●) → <b>Select message</b> → (☺) → <b>Set Sent Cancel</b> → (●) → <b>Yes</b> → (●) • Available for messages sent to SoftBank handsets.

## ■ Messaging Settings

- For SMS, only Delivery Report and Expiry Time are available.
- For PC Mail, only Reply to Settings and Priority are available.

Requesting delivery confirmation	In Mail Composition window, (☺) → <b>Messaging Settings</b> → (●) → <b>Delivery Report</b> → (●) → <b>On</b> → (●) • Delivery Report arrives when message is delivered. • Open sent message to check delivery status indicator: ▪ 送: Delivered, 送: Unknown, 送: Failed • Available when messaging to SoftBank handsets.
Setting priority	In Mail Composition window, (☺) → <b>Messaging Settings</b> → (●) → <b>Priority</b> → (●) → <b>Select priority</b> → (●)
Setting message to be deleted from recipient handset once read	In Mail Composition window, (☺) → <b>Messaging Settings</b> → (●) → <b>Set Auto Delete</b> → (●) → <b>On</b> → (●) • Available when messaging to SoftBank handsets.

Adding a reply request	In Mail Composition window, (☺) → <b>Messaging Settings</b> → (●) → <b>Reply Request</b> → (●) → <b>On</b> → (●) • Available when messaging to SoftBank handsets.
Restricting forward/delete	In Mail Composition window, (☺) → <b>Messaging Settings</b> → (●) → <b>Forward NG or Delete NG</b> → (●) → <b>On</b> → (●) • Available when messaging to SoftBank handsets.
Locking message with Quiz	(Start Here) In Mail Composition window, (☺) → <b>Messaging Settings</b> → (●) → <b>Quiz</b> → (●) → <b>Switch On/Off</b> → (●) → <b>On</b> → (●) → See below • Available when messaging to SoftBank handsets.
	<b>Using Preset Questions (Multiple Choice)</b> <b>Select question</b> → (●) → <b>Selection</b> → (●) → <b>Select number</b> → (●) → <b>Enter/edit option</b> → (●) → <b>Enter/edit all options</b> → <b>Select answer</b> → (☺) • May be unavailable for some questions.
Editing assigned Quiz	<b>Using Preset Questions (Exact Answer Entry)</b> <b>Select question</b> → (●) → <b>Match Characters</b> → (●) → <b>Enter answer</b> → (●) → (☺) • May be unavailable for some questions.
	<b>Creating Custom Quiz (Multiple Choice)</b> <Create Original> → (●) → <b>Enter question</b> → (●) → <b>Selection</b> → (●) → <b>Select number</b> → (●) → <b>Enter option</b> → (●) → <b>Complete entry</b> → <b>Select answer</b> → (☺) → (☺) → (☺)
	<b>Creating Custom Quiz (Exact Answer Entry)</b> <Create Original> → (●) → <b>Enter question</b> → (●) → <b>Match Characters</b> → (●) → <b>Enter answer</b> → (●) → (☺)
	In Mail Composition window, (☺) → <b>Messaging Settings</b> → (●) → <b>Quiz</b> → (●) → <b>Edit Question</b> → (●) → <b>Edit question/options/answer</b> → (☺) again after editing options • Available when messaging to SoftBank handsets.



Lowering size limit for outgoing S! Mail messages	In Mail Composition window,  → <b>Messaging Settings</b> →  → <b>Create Msg. Size</b> →  → <b>300KB</b> →
Designating/editing reply-to address	<b>[Start Here]</b> In Mail Composition window,  → <b>Messaging Settings</b> →  → <b>Reply to Settings</b> →  → See below  <b>Designating</b> <b>Switch On/Off</b> →  → <b>On</b> →  → <b>Select method</b> →  → <b>Select/enter address</b> →  <b>Editing</b> <b>Edit Address</b> →  → <b>Edit</b> →
Changing Server sent message storage limit	In Mail Composition window,  → <b>Messaging Settings</b> →  → <b>Expiry Time</b> →  → <b>Select option</b> → • Available for SMS only.

### ■ Attachments

Changing attached image size	<b>Select attached file</b> →  → <b>Resize Picture</b> →  → <b>Select size</b> → • May be unavailable for some images.
Capturing/recording and attaching	<b>[Start Here]</b> Select attachment field →  → See below  <b>Still Images</b> <b>Picture</b> →  → <b>Take Picture</b> →  →  to shoot →  <b>Video</b> <b>Video</b> →  → <b>Record Video</b> →  →  to start recording →  to stop → <b>Accept</b> →  → <b>Select storage media</b> →  <b>Sounds</b> <b>Sound</b> →  → <b>Record Voice</b> →  →  to start recording →  to stop → <b>Accept</b> →  → <b>Select storage media</b> →

Set Auto Play File	<b>Select attached file</b> →  → <b>Set Auto Play File</b> →  → <b>Switch On/Off</b> →  → <b>On</b> →  → <b>Enter Message</b> →  → <b>Enter comment</b> →  →  → • Not available for PC Mail.
--------------------	---

### ■ Graphic Mail

Creating Graphic Mail from templates	<b>Opening Templates from Messaging Menu</b> → <b>Templates</b> →  → <b>Select template</b> →  → <b>Complete message</b> →  → • Template size may change when used for creating messages.  <b>Opening Templates from S! Mail Composition Window</b> In Mail Composition window,  → <b>Launch Template</b> →  → <b>Select template</b> →  → <b>Complete message</b> →  → • Open a template before entering message text.
Changing text color, size & effect	In text entry window,  (Long) →  → <b>Select start point</b> →  → <b>Highlight text range</b> →  → <b>COLOR, SIZE or EFFECT</b> →  → <b>Set</b> →
Changing text color	In text entry window,  (Long) → <b>COLOR</b> →  → <b>Select color</b> →  → <b>Enter text</b>
Inserting background sound	<b>[Start Here]</b> In text entry window,  (Long) → <b>INSERT</b> →  → See below  <b>Inserting</b> <b>BGM Sound</b> →  → <b>Select folder</b> →  → <b>Select file</b> →  <b>Deleting</b> <b>Delete BGM</b> →  → <b>Yes</b> →



Inserting Flash® file	In text entry window,  (Long) → <b>INSERT</b> → ● → <b>Flash</b> → ● → <b>Select file</b> → ●
Previewing Flash® file	In text entry window after inserting Flash® file,  → <b>Preview</b> → ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When Graphic Mail window is open, press  first.</li> </ul>
Deleting Flash® file	In text entry window after inserting Flash® file, move cursor before Flash® icon → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When Graphic Mail window is open, press  first.</li> </ul>
Inserting horizontal line	In text entry window,  (Long) → <b>INSERT</b> → ● → <b>Line</b> → ●
Flashing text	In text entry window,  (Long) → <b>See below</b>
	<b>Flashing</b> <b>EFFECT</b> → ● → <b>Blink</b> → ● → <b>Blink On</b> → ● → Enter text
	<b>Canceling</b> → <b>Select start point</b> → ● → <b>Highlight text range</b> → ● → <b>EFFECT</b> → ● → <b>Blink</b> → ● → <b>Blink Off</b> → ●
Aligning text (left/right/center)	In text entry window,  (Long) → <b>EFFECT</b> → ● → <b>Alignment</b> → ● → <b>Select option</b> → ● → Enter text

## Receiving/Opening Messages

### Receiving




Accessing new mail out of Standby	(Long)
Retrieving new S! Mail manually	→ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When a PC Mail Account exists, select <b>S! Mail</b> and press ●.</li> <li>Retrieve messages missed while handset is out-of-range.</li> </ul>
Retrieving Server Mail list	→ <b>Server Mail Box</b> → ● → <b>Mail List</b> → ● → <b>Yes</b> → ●
Retrieving remaining portions	<b>Via Mail Notice</b> In message list, select <b>Mail Notice</b> → ● →
	<b>Via Server Mail List</b> → <b>Server Mail Box</b> → ● → <b>Mail List</b> → ● → <b>Select message</b> → ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If retrieve list confirmation appears, choose <b>Yes</b> and press ●.</li> </ul>
Retrieving all Server Mail	→ <b>Server Mail Box</b> → ● → <b>See below</b>
	<b>Directly from Server</b> <b>Retrieve All</b> → ● <b>Via Server Mail List</b> <b>Mail List</b> → ● →  → <b>Retrieve All</b> → ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If retrieve list confirmation appears, choose <b>Yes</b> and press ●.</li> </ul>










## ■ Opening

Viewing new messages on External Display	 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Available with clamshell closed.</li> </ul>
--	--

## ■ Message Window

Using linked info	<b>Dialing Numbers</b> In message window, select number → ● → <i>Call or Video Call</i> → ●
	<b>Sending Messages</b> In message window, select number or mail address → ● → <i>Create Message</i> → ● → <i>S! Mail or SMS</i> → ● → <i>Complete message</i> →  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For mail addresses, omit mail type selection step.</li> </ul>
	<b>Accessing Internet Sites</b> In message window, select URL → ● → <i>Yes</i> → ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select <i>PC Site Br.</i> to connect via PC Site Browser.</li> </ul>
	<b>Saving Location Information URLs</b> In message window, select URL → ● → <i>RegisterMyLocation</i> → ● → <i>Name</i> → ● → Enter name → ● → 
Saving attachments to Data Folder	<b>Setting Location Information as Destination</b> In message window, select URL → ● → <i>Set to Destination</i> → ● → <i>Yes</i> → ●
	In message window, select file →  → <i>Save to Data Folder</i> → ● → Enter name → ● → <i>Save here</i> → ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For templates, <i>Save as Template</i> appears. (Omit file name entry step.)</li> </ul>

Installing attached widgets	In message window, select file →  → <i>Install Attach</i> → ● → Enter name → ●
Using attachments	 In message window, select file →  → See below <b>As Wallpaper</b> <i>Set as Wallpaper</i> → ● → Enter name → ● → <i>Save here</i> → ● → <i>Vertical or Horizontal</i> → ● → ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For images smaller or larger than Display, select an option.</li> </ul>
	<b>As Ringtone/Ringvideo</b> <i>Set as Ringtone</i> or <i>Set as Ring Video</i> → ● → Enter name → ● → <i>Save here</i> → ● → Select item → ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For <i>For New Message</i> or <i>For New PC Mail</i>, enter ring time and press ●.</li> </ul>
	<b>Playing slides</b> In message window,  → <i>Slide Play</i> → ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A slide consists of message text with attachments.</li> </ul>
Saving to Phone Book	<b>Saving Sender Address</b> In message window,  → <i>Save Address</i> → ● → Select number or mail address → ● → <i>As New Entry</i> → ● → Complete other fields →  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To add to an existing entry, select <i>As New Detail</i>.</li> </ul>
	<b>Saving Linked Info</b> In message window, select number or mail address → ● → <i>Save to Phone Book</i> or <i>Save Address</i> → ● → <i>As New Entry</i> → ● → Complete other fields →  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To add to an existing entry, select <i>As New Detail</i>.</li> </ul>



Copying text	<p><b>Start Here</b> In message window,  → <i>Copy</i> → </p> <p>→ See below</p> <p><b>Sender/Recipient Number/Address</b></p> <p><i>Address</i> →  → Select number/address → </p> <p><b>Subject or Message Text</b></p> <p><i>Subject or Message Text</i> →  → Select first character →  → Highlight text range → </p>
	<p>In message window,  → <i>Copy &amp; Search Dict.</i> →  → Select first character →  → Highlight text range →  → Select dictionary →  → <i>Search</i> →  → Select word → </p>
	<p>In message window,  → <i>View Settings</i> →  → <i>Scroll Jump</i> →  → <i>Jump to Top or Jump to Bottom</i> → </p>
Looking up message text words in dictionaries	
Jumping to message top/bottom	
Deleting attachments	<p>In message window, select file →  → <i>Remove File</i> →  → <i>Yes</i> → </p>
Reporting unsolicited message sources as spammers	<p>In message window,  → <i>Report Spam</i> →  → </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Signature is not inserted automatically.</li> <li>• Not available for PC Mail.</li> </ul>

## ■ Replying

Selecting mail type/quote option	In message window,  → <i>Reply</i> →  → Select type/option →  → Complete message →
Opening received message for reference	In message window,  → <i>Rep. with View</i> →  → Select option →  → Complete message →
Replying quickly using fixed text	<p><b>Editing Quick Reply Text</b></p> <p> → <i>Settings</i> →  → <i>General Settings</i> →  → <i>Send/Compose</i> →  → <i>Set Quick Reply</i> →  → Select text →  → Edit → </p>
	<p><b>Using Quick Reply</b></p> <p>In message window,  (Long) → Select text → </p>
Replying to messages automatically	<p><b>Start Here</b>  → <i>Settings</i> →  → <i>General Settings</i> →  → <i>Send/Compose</i> →  → <i>Auto Reply</i> →  → See below</p>
	<p><b>Saving Recipients</b></p> <p><i>Address Setting</i> →  → Select blank entry →  → Select method →  → Select/enter number/address →  → Select mode →  (<input type="checkbox"/>/✓) →  → </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Select saved recipient and press  to edit number/address.</li> </ul>
	<p><b>Editing Reply Text</b></p> <p><i>Reply Message</i> →  → Select mode →  → Enter text → </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Edit text for each mode.</li> </ul>
	<p><b>Activating Auto Reply</b></p> <p><i>Switch On/Off</i> →  → <i>On</i> → </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Replies are sent via SI Mail.</li> <li>• Replies are sent to the same sender only once after each time Auto Reply is activated.</li> <li>• Auto Reply is not available for PC Mail or while abroad.</li> </ul>





## Managing Messages

## Message List

Selecting multiple messages	<p><b>Selecting</b></p> <p>In message list, <math>\text{☺}</math> → Select message → <math>\text{⊙}</math> (✓)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To uncheck, press <math>\text{⊙}</math> again.</li> </ul>
	<p><b>Selecting Up to 50 Messages at Once</b></p> <p>In message list, <math>\text{☺}</math> → Manage Msg. → <math>\text{⊙}</math> → Check in Block → <math>\text{⊙}</math></p>
	<p><b>Unchecking All</b></p> <p>In message list, <math>\text{☺}</math> → Unselect All → <math>\text{⊙}</math></p>
Color-tagging messages	In message list, $\text{☺}$ → Manage Msg. → $\text{⊙}$ → Color Label → $\text{⊙}$ → Select color → $\text{⊙}$
Sorting messages	In message list, $\text{☺}$ → View Settings → $\text{⊙}$ → Sort → $\text{⊙}$ → Select option → $\text{⊙}$
Opening sender/recipient details	In message list, select message → $\text{☺}$ → View Mail Address → $\text{⊙}$ → Select sender or recipient → $\text{⊙}$
Checking memory status	<p><math>\text{⊙}</math> → Memory Status → <math>\text{⊙}</math> → Select item → <math>\text{⊙}</math></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press <math>\text{☺}</math> to check memory status by service (SMS &amp; S! Mail or PC Mail).</li> <li>USIM Card SMS message count and volume do not appear.</li> </ul>
Opening properties	In message list, select message → $\text{☺}$ → Message Details → $\text{⊙}$
Changing template name display	$\text{☺}$ → Templates → $\text{⊙}$ → $\text{☺}$ → Item Displayed → $\text{⊙}$ → Select item → $\text{⊙}$

Saving SMS messages to USIM Card	In message list, select SMS message → $\text{☺}$ → Manage Msg. → $\text{⊙}$ → SIM Sync → $\text{⊙}$ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Available for compatible USIM Cards.</li> </ul>
Changing received message status (read/unread)	In message list, select message → $\text{☺}$ → Manage Msg. → $\text{⊙}$ → Switch to Unread or Switch to Read → $\text{⊙}$

## Deleting Messages

Deleting messages	<p><b>One Message</b></p> <p>In message list, select message → <math>\text{☺}</math> → Delete → <math>\text{⊙}</math> → Yes → <math>\text{⊙}</math></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Alternatively, delete an open message.</li> </ul>
	<p><b>All Messages</b></p> <p>In message list, <math>\text{☺}</math> → Manage Msg. → <math>\text{⊙}</math> → Delete All → <math>\text{⊙}</math> → Delete All or Except Locked Msg. → <math>\text{⊙}</math> → Enter Handset Code → <math>\text{⊙}</math></p>
	<p><b>All Messages in Drafts or Unsent Messages</b></p> <p>In message list (Drafts or Unsent Messages), <math>\text{☺}</math> → Delete All → <math>\text{⊙}</math> → Enter Handset Code → <math>\text{⊙}</math></p>
Deleting Server Mail via Mail Notice	In message list, select Mail Notice → $\text{☺}$ → Delete → $\text{⊙}$ → Select option → $\text{⊙}$ → Yes → $\text{⊙}$



Deleting Server Mail via Server Mail list	<p><b>Start Here</b> → <b>Server Mail Box</b> → <b>Mail List</b> → <b>See below</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If retrieve list confirmation appears, choose <b>Yes</b> and press <b>.</b></li> </ul>
	<p><b>One Message</b>  <b>Select message</b> → <b>Delete</b> → <b>Yes</b></p> <p><b>All Messages</b>  <b>Delete All</b> → Enter Handset Code → <b>Yes</b></p>
Deleting all Server Mail directly from Server	<p><b>Start Here</b> → <b>Server Mail Box</b> → <b>Delete All</b> → Enter Handset Code → <b>See below</b></p>
	<p><b>All Retrieved Messages</b>  <b>Except New Msg.</b></p>
	<p><b>All Messages</b>  <b>Delete All</b></p>

## ■ Folders

Moving messages manually	<p>In message list, select message → <b>Manage Msg.</b> → <b>Move to Folder</b> → <b>Select folder</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If sort messages confirmation appears, choose <b>Yes</b> and press <b>.</b>; messages sent to/received from the number/address will be sorted into selected folder automatically.</li> </ul>
Renaming folders	<p>In folder list, select folder → <b>Rename</b> → <b>Enter name</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Available in Chat Folder list as well.</li> </ul>
Deleting folders	<p>In folder list, select folder → <b>Delete</b> → <b>Enter Handset Code</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If delete message confirmation appears, choose <b>Yes</b> and press <b>.</b></li> <li>When Double Number is active, corresponding folders in other modes are also deleted.</li> </ul>
Adding folders	<p>In folder list, → <b>Create New Folder</b> → <b>Enter name</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Available in Chat Folder list as well.</li> </ul>
Moving folders	<p>In folder list, select folder → <b>Relocate Folder</b> → <b>Select target location</b></p>
Changing status of all messages within folders to read	<p>In folder list, select folder → <b>To All Read</b> → <b>Yes</b></p>
Canceling automatic deletion of messages within folders	<p>In folder list, select folder → <b>Protect</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To cancel protection, select <b>Not Protect</b> and press <b>.</b> in the steps above.</li> </ul>
Canceling Secret	<p>Unlock Secret folders temporarily and select folder → <b>Unset Secret</b> → Enter Handset Code</p>



## ■ Sorting into Folders

Re-sorting messages	In folder list, select folder → ☒ → <i>Classify</i> → ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Available in Chat Folder list as well.</li> </ul>
Sorting spam by setting keys	☒ → <i>Settings</i> → ● → <i>General Settings</i> → ● → <i>Anti Spam Measures</i> → ● → Enter Handset Code → ● → <i>Individual(Common)</i> → ● (☑) → ☒ → Select blank entry → ● → Select key → ● → Select/enter number/address/subject → ● → ☒ → ☒ → ●
Editing/deleting sort keys	<u>Start Here</u> In folder list, select folder → ☒ → <i>My Folders</i> → ● → Select entry → See below
	<b>Editing Sender/Recipient Key</b> ☒ → <i>Replace</i> → ● → Select method → ● → Select/enter number/address → ● → ☒
	<b>Editing Subject Key</b> ● → Edit → ● → ☒
	<b>Deleting an Entry</b> ☒ → <i>Delete</i> → ● → Yes → ● → ☒
	<b>Deleting All Entries</b> ☒ → <i>Clear All</i> → ● → Yes → ● → ☒

## ■ Chat Folders

Deleting folders	☒ → <i>Chat Folder</i> → ● → Select folder → ☒ → <i>Delete Folder</i> → ● → Enter Handset Code → ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If delete message confirmation appears, choose <b>Yes</b> and press ●.</li> <li>• When Double Number is active, corresponding folders in other modes are also deleted.</li> </ul>
Deleting all messages	☒ → <i>Chat Folder</i> → ● → Select folder → ● → ☒ → <i>Manage Msg.</i> → ● → <i>Delete All</i> → ● → Yes → ●
Resetting Chat Folders	☒ → <i>Chat Folder</i> → ● → ☒ → <i>Reset</i> → ● → Enter Handset Code → ● → Yes → ●



## Mail Groups

Renaming Mail Groups	<p>☰ → <b>Settings</b> → ● → <b>Set Mail Group</b> → ● → <b>Select Group</b> → ☰ → <b>Edit Name</b> → ● → Enter name → ● → <b>Yes</b> → ●</p>
Deleting Mail Groups/Group members	<p><b>Start Here</b> ☰ → <b>Settings</b> → ● → <b>Set Mail Group</b> → ● → <b>Select Group</b> → See below</p> <p><b>Mail Groups</b></p> <p>☰ → <b>Delete</b> → ● → <b>Yes</b> → ● → Enter Handset Code → ●</p> <p><b>Group Members</b></p> <p>● → <b>Select member</b> → ☰ → <b>Remove Entry</b> → ● → <b>Yes</b> → ● → ☰</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Source Phone Book entries remain even after deleting members.</li> </ul>
	<p>☰ → <b>Settings</b> → ● → <b>Set Mail Group</b> → ● → <b>Select Group</b> → ● → <b>Select member</b> → ☰ → <b>Re-assign Entry</b> → ● → <b>Select entry</b> → ● → <b>Select number or mail address</b> → ● → <b>Yes</b> → ● → ☰</p>
Changing Mail Group members	<p>☰ → <b>Settings</b> → ● → <b>Set Mail Group</b> → ● → <b>Select Group</b> → ● → <b>Select member</b> → ☰ → <b>Re-assign Entry</b> → ● → <b>Select entry</b> → ● → <b>Select number or mail address</b> → ● → <b>Yes</b> → ● → ☰</p>

## Using Messages

Forwarding messages	<p>In message window, ☰ → <b>Forward</b> → ● → <b>Select recipient field</b> → ● → <b>Select method</b> → ● → <b>Select/enter number/address</b> → ● → ☰</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Attached files are forwarded.</li> <li>To forward SMS messages, select <b>S! Mail</b> or <b>SMS</b> and press ●.</li> </ul>
Sending from Drafts	<p>☰ → <b>Drafts</b> → ● → <b>Select message</b> → ● → <b>Complete message</b> → ☰</p>
Sending unsent messages	<p><b>Start Here</b> ☰ → <b>Unsent Messages</b> → ● → <b>Select message</b> → ☰ → See below</p> <p><b>Sending without Editing</b></p> <p><b>Resend</b> → ●</p> <p><b>Edit &amp; Send</b></p> <p><b>Edit</b> → ● → <b>Complete message</b> → ☰</p>
Using sent messages	<p>☰ → <b>Sent Messages</b> → ● → <b>Select folder</b> → ● → <b>Select message</b> → ☰ → <b>Edit &amp; Send</b> → ● → <b>Complete message</b> → ☰</p>
Saving schedules from message list	<p>In message list, select message → ☰ → <b>Manage Msg.</b> → ● → <b>Save to Calendar</b> → ● → Enter subject → ● → Enter start/end date/time → ● → <b>Complete other fields</b> → ☰</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Source message is accessible from schedule window (via <b>Related Mail</b> in Options menu).</li> </ul>



Forwarding Server Mail	<p><b>Via Mail Notice</b>            In message list, select Mail Notice → ☰ → Forward → ● → <i>Notifi. Forward</i> (forward Mail Notice text only) or <i>Remote Forward</i> → ● → Select recipient field → ● → Select method → ● → Select/enter number/address → ● → ☺</p> <p><b>Via Server Mail List</b>            ☰ → <i>Server Mail Box</i> → ● → <i>Mail List</i> → ● → Select message → ☰ → <i>Remote Forward</i> → ● → Select recipient field → ● → Select method → ● → Select/enter number/address → ● → ☺</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If retrieve list confirmation appears, choose <b>Yes</b> and press ●.</li> </ul>
Opening Server Mail properties	☰ → <i>Server Mail Box</i> → ● → <i>Mail List</i> → ● → Select message → ☰ → <i>Message Details</i> → ●
Checking Server Mail message count and volume	☰ → <i>Server Mail Box</i> → ● → <i>Mailbox Volume</i> → ●

## General Settings

Changing message window scroll unit	☰ → <i>Settings</i> → ● → <i>General Settings</i> → ● → <i>Scroll Unit</i> → ● → Select unit → ●
Changing message list view	☰ → <i>Settings</i> → ● → <i>General Settings</i> → ● → <i>Message List View</i> → ● → Select option → ●
Showing complete sent/received message addresses	☰ → <i>Settings</i> → ● → <i>General Settings</i> → ● → <i>Address View</i> → ● → <i>Show All</i> → ●
Changing view for Received Msg. folder	☰ → <i>Settings</i> → ● → <i>General Settings</i> → ● → <i>Received Msg. View</i> → ● → Select option → ●
Changing view for Sent Messages folder	☰ → <i>Settings</i> → ● → <i>General Settings</i> → ● → <i>Sent Msg. View</i> → ● → Select option → ●
Selecting automatic deletion option for received messages	☰ → <i>Settings</i> → ● → <i>General Settings</i> → ● → <i>Auto Delete</i> → ● → <i>Received Msg.</i> → ● → Select option → ●
Canceling automatic deletion of oldest sent messages	☰ → <i>Settings</i> → ● → <i>General Settings</i> → ● → <i>Auto Delete</i> → ● → <i>Sent Messages</i> → ● → <i>Not Auto Del</i> → ●
Changing spam report recipient	☰ → <i>Settings</i> → ● → <i>General Settings</i> → ● → <i>Report Spam</i> → ● → Edit address → ● → Yes → ●



## General Settings (Send/Compose)

Requesting Delivery Report for all messages	☰ → Settings → ● → General Settings → ● → Send/Compose → ● → Delivery Report → ● → On → ● ● Available when messaging to SoftBank handsets.
Disabling automatic resend of unsent messages	☰ → Settings → ● → General Settings → ● → Send/Compose → ● → Auto Resend → ● → Off → ●
Designating/editing reply-to address	☰ Start Here ☰ → Settings → ● → General Settings → ● → Send/Compose → ● → Reply to Settings → ● → See below <b>Designating</b> Switch On/Off → ● → On → ● → Select method → ● → Select/enter address → ● <b>Editing</b> Edit Address → ● → Edit → ●
Selecting quote option	☰ → Settings → ● → General Settings → ● → Send/Compose → ● → Reply With Text → ● → Select option → ●
Hiding progress bar while sending messages	☰ → Settings → ● → General Settings → ● → Send/Compose → ● → Sending Status → ● → Off(Background) → ●

## Deleting Permitted List entries

☰ Start Here ☰ → Settings → ● → General Settings → ● → Send/Compose → ● → Restrictions Setting → ● → Enter Handset Code → ● → Individual Address → ● → Permitted List → ● → Select entry → ☰ → See below

## One Entry

Delete → ● → Yes → ●

## All Entries

Clear All → ● → Yes → ●

## General Settings (Receive)

## ■ Message Notice &amp; Animation View

Muting ringer, etc. for messages sorted into Secret folders	☰ → Settings → ● → General Settings → ● → Receive → ● → Message Notice → ● → Secret Folder → ● → No Response → ●
Changing alerts for messages received during handset use	☰ Start Here ☰ → Settings → ● → General Settings → ● → Receive → ● → Message Notice → ● → See below <b>Showing New Message Window</b> On Active Screen → ● → On → ● <b>Selecting Scrolling Notice Option</b> View Setting → ● → Select option → ● <b>Muting Alert Sound</b> Alert Sound → ● → Off → ●
Disabling Animation View	☰ → Settings → ● → General Settings → ● → Receive → ● → Animation View → ● → Off → ●



## ■ Feeling Mail

Hiding graphics above Information window	<p>☰ → <b>Settings</b> → ● → <b>General Settings</b> → ●</p> <p>→ <b>Receive</b> → ● → <b>Link to Feeling</b> → ● →</p> <p><b>Idle Screen Info.</b> → ● → <b>Off</b> → ●</p>
Changing illumination	<p>☰ (Start Here) → <b>Settings</b> → ● → <b>General Settings</b> → ● → <b>Receive</b> → ● → <b>Link to Feeling</b> → ● → <b>Light</b> → ● → See below</p> <p><b>Illumination Option</b></p> <p><b>Switch On/Off</b> → ● → <b>Link to Sound or Off</b> → ●</p> <p>• For <b>Link to Sound</b>, press ● again.</p> <p><b>Color</b></p> <p><b>Light Color</b> → ● → <b>Select category</b> → ● →</p> <p><b>Select color</b> → ●</p> <p><b>Key Illumination Pattern</b></p> <p><b>Key Pattern</b> → ● → <b>Select item</b> → ● →</p> <p><b>Select pattern</b> → ●</p>
Selecting Vibration option	<p>☰ → <b>Settings</b> → ● → <b>General Settings</b> → ●</p> <p>→ <b>Receive</b> → ● → <b>Link to Feeling</b> → ● →</p> <p><b>Vibration Pattern</b> → ● → <b>Select option</b> → ●</p>
Muting/changing ringtones	<p>☰ (Start Here) → <b>Settings</b> → ● → <b>General Settings</b> → ● → <b>Receive</b> → ● → <b>Link to Feeling</b> → ● → <b>Ringtone</b> → ● → See below</p> <p><b>Muting Ringer</b></p> <p><b>Switch On/Off</b> → ● → <b>Off</b> → ●</p> <p><b>Changing Ringtones</b></p> <p><b>Assign Tone</b> → ● → <b>Select category</b> → ● →</p> <p><b>Select folder</b> → ● → <b>Select tone/file</b> → ●</p>

## ■ S! Mail Settings

## ■ Automatic Retrieval

Deleting addresses/ domains specified for complete message retrieval	<p>☰ (Start Here) → <b>Settings</b> → ● → <b>S! Mail Settings</b> → ● → <b>Message DL(Japan) or Message DL(Abroad)</b> → ● → <b>Auto (Specify)</b> → ☰ → See below</p>
	<p><b>One Entry (Mail Address)</b></p> <p><b>Individual Address</b> → ☰ → <b>Select entry</b> → ☰</p> <p>→ <b>Delete</b> → ● → <b>Yes</b> → ● → ☰</p>
	<p><b>All Entries (Mail Address)</b></p> <p><b>Individual Address</b> → ☰ → <b>Select entry</b> → ☰</p> <p>→ <b>Clear All</b> → ● → <b>Yes</b> → ● → ☰</p>
	<p><b>One Entry (Domain)</b></p> <p><b>Receive by the Domain</b> → ☰ → <b>Select entry</b> → ☰</p> <p>→ <b>Delete</b> → ● → <b>Yes</b> → ● → ☰</p>
	<p><b>All Entries (Domain)</b></p> <p><b>Receive by the Domain</b> → ☰ → <b>Select entry</b> → ☰</p> <p>→ <b>Clear All</b> → ● → <b>Yes</b> → ● → ☰</p>



## ■ Attachments

Disabling image auto-resize	→ Settings →  → S! Mail Settings →  → Picture Appearance →  → Normal → • Setting applies to PC Mail as well.
Enabling/disabling image auto-open or sound auto-play	→ Settings →  → S! Mail Settings →  → Auto Play File →  → Pictures or Sounds →  → On or Off → • Setting applies to PC Mail as well.
Attaching captured/recorded files unsaved	→ Settings →  → S! Mail Settings →  → Send File Settings →  → Attach Only → • Setting applies to PC Mail as well.

## ■ Message Size

Limiting outgoing S! Mail message size	→ Settings →  → S! Mail Settings →  → Create Msg. Size →  → 300KB or 1MB → • Images are resized automatically when message size exceeds the limit upon attaching them.
Limiting incoming S! Mail message size	→ Settings →  → S! Mail Settings →  → DL Size Limit →  → 300KB → • Portions exceeding 300 KB will be deleted at Server.

## PC Mail Settings

Retrieving complete PC Mail messages	→ Settings →  → PC Mail Settings →  → PC Mail DL →  → PC Mail DL →  → All Contents →
Retrieving new messages automatically	Start Here  → Settings →  → PC Mail Settings →  → Check New Mail →  → See below <b>Enabling Automatic Retrieval</b> Check New Mail →  → On →  → Select account →  (✓) →  → • Setting Check New Mail to <b>On</b> may incur high charges; checking for new messages may incur transmission fees even when none exists. Remember this, especially when using handset outside Japan. <b>Enabling Automatic Retrieval Abroad</b> Abroad →  → Enable →  → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Automatically retrieving messages abroad may incur high charges.</li> </ul> <b>Changing Automatic Retrieval Interval</b> Interval →  → Select interval → <b>Disabling Automatic Retrieval during Specified Time</b> Inactivate Time →  → Switch On/Off →  → On →  → Start Time: →  → Enter start time →  → End Time: →  → Enter end time →
Retrieving PC Mail for specified folder	In folder list, select PC Mail folder →  → Retrieve New →
Disabling automatic word wrap	→ Settings →  → PC Mail Settings →  → Word wrap →  → Off →





Retrieving complete messages from specified addresses	<p><b>Start Here</b> <b>Settings</b> <b>PC Mail Settings</b> <b>PC Mail DL</b> <b>PC Mail DL</b> <b>DL All From List</b>   See below</p> <p><b>Selecting Sender Types</b> Select item   ( <input type="checkbox"/> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> )  </p>
	<p><b>Specifying Addresses</b> <b>Individual Address</b> <b>Select blank entry</b> <b>Select method</b> <b>Select/enter address</b> </p>
	<p><b>Specifying Domains (Direct Entry)</b> <b>Receive by the Domain</b> <b>Select blank entry</b> <b>Direct Entry</b> <b>Enter domain</b> </p>
Deleting addresses/ domains specified for complete message retrieval	<p><b>Start Here</b> <b>Settings</b> <b>PC Mail Settings</b> <b>PC Mail DL</b> <b>PC Mail DL</b> <b>DL All From List</b>   See below</p> <p><b>One Entry (Mail Address)</b> <b>Individual Address</b> <b>Select entry</b> <b>Delete</b> <b>Yes</b> </p>
	<p><b>All Entries (Mail Address)</b> <b>Individual Address</b> <b>Select entry</b> <b>Clear All</b> <b>Yes</b> </p>
	<p><b>One Entry (Domain)</b> <b>Receive by the Domain</b> <b>Select entry</b> <b>Delete</b> <b>Yes</b> </p>
	<p><b>All Entries (Domain)</b> <b>Receive by the Domain</b> <b>Select entry</b> <b>Clear All</b> <b>Yes</b> </p>

Restricting complete message retrieval by size	<p> <b>Settings</b> <b>PC Mail Settings</b> <b>PC Mail DL</b> <b>Max DL Size</b> </p> <p>Select account   <b>Select size</b> </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Effective when PC Mail DL is set to <b>All Contents</b> or <b>DL All From List</b>.</li> </ul>
--	---

## SMS Settings

Changing Server sent message storage limit	<p> <b>Settings</b> <b>SMS Settings</b> </p> <p><b>Expiry Time</b> <b>Select option</b> </p>
Changing SMS Server number	<p><b>Start Here</b> <b>Settings</b> <b>SMS Settings</b> <b>Message Center</b>   See below</p> <p><b>Editing</b> <b>Setting1(Default) to Setting3</b> <b>Edit number</b> </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Do not change Server number unless instructed to do so.</li> </ul> <p><b>Deleting</b> <b>Setting2 or Setting3</b> <b>Delete</b> </p> <p><b>Activating</b> <b>Setting2 or Setting3</b> <b>Set Default</b> </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Activated number moves to <b>Setting1(Default)</b> and shifts the others down.</li> </ul>
Changing character encoding for composing messages	<p> <b>Settings</b> <b>SMS Settings</b> </p> <p><b>Char-code</b> <b>Select encoding</b> </p>



#### Sending Messages

##### ? Cannot enter message text or attach files

- Attachment size affects text size limit. In turn, text size affects attachment size limit.

##### ? Sending failure appears in Information window

- To resend, follow these steps:  
**Sending failure** → ● → **Select message** → ● → ● → ● → ● → ● → ●

##### ? Unsent message is not resent automatically

- Auto Resend makes up to two attempts to send unsent messages automatically. Resend unsent message(s) manually.

##### ? Set Auto Play File cannot be set

- Apply to one file per message.
- Not available for Graphic Mail.
- May be unavailable for some files.

##### ? Messaging Settings are not applied

- Settings are valid for one message, and effective when viewed on compatible handsets/applications.
- Delivery Report/Priority setting may not be effective when sent to mail addresses.
- Priority setting does not affect delivery speed.

##### ? Cannot set Messaging Settings

- These settings cannot be applied to a message simultaneously (select one): Set Auto Delete, Reply Request, Forward NG, Delete NG, Quiz, Set Auto Play File.

##### ? Signature is not inserted automatically

- Auto Insert is available for S! Mail only.

##### ? Cannot cancel sent messages

- Short messages may not be canceled.
- Set Sent Cancel is available for S! Mail only.

##### ? Cannot send PC Mail

- Follow these steps to check User Name and Password for SMTP authentication:  
 ☰ → **Settings** → ● → **PC Mail Settings** → ● → **PC Mail Account** → ● → **Select account** → ● → **Set Sending** → ● → **Sender Auth.** → ● → **SMTP Auth.** → ☰ → **User Name or Password** → ●
- Some ISPs require SMTP authentication setup in addition to Set Receiving setup.




### Incoming Messages

#### ? Handset won't ring or vibrate for some incoming messages

- Handset does not ring or vibrate for messages with Low Priority.
- Handset does not ring, vibrate or open Information window for messages filtered as spam.





#### ? A confirmation requesting a reply appears

- To reply, choose **Yes** and press . Confirmation does not appear for replied messages.

#### ? Handset won't respond according to Feeling Mail settings

- Responses set in Phone Book take priority.
- Feeling Mail settings are disabled when:
  - Sender is saved in Phone Book as Secret entry
  - The message was filtered as spam
  - The message was sorted to a Secret folder

#### ? Message text appears distorted



- Follow these steps to change encoding:  
**In message window,**  ➔ **View Settings** ➔  ➔ **Char-code** ➔  ➔ **Select option** ➔ 

### Handling Messages

#### ? Cannot move messages into some folders

- To move to Secret folders, unlock temporarily or cancel Secret beforehand.

#### ? Cannot receive messages

- If  appears, memory is full; delete messages (P.4-26).
- If  appears, move to a place where signal is strong.

#### ? S! Mail is not delivered as sent

- Recipient must be subscribed to S! Mail, Super Mail or Long Mail. The maximum size of messages/ attachments handsets can receive varies by make and model. Confirm compatibility with recipient handsets.

#### ? Still images are not delivered as sent

- Recipient handset may not be JPEG-compatible. Convert JPEG files to PNG.

#### ? Video files are not delivered as sent

- Send video files to S! Mail- or VGS-compatible SoftBank handsets supporting MPEG-4.



<b>Internet Services</b> .....	<b>5-2</b>
Service Basics .....	5-2
<b>Yahoo! Keitai</b> .....	<b>5-3</b>
Using Yahoo! Keitai.....	5-3
<b>PC Site Browser</b> .....	<b>5-4</b>
Using PC Site Browser .....	5-4
<b>Browsing</b> .....	<b>5-5</b>
Basic Operations .....	5-5

<b>Bookmarks &amp; Saved Pages</b> .....	<b>5-8</b>
Using Bookmarks & Saved Pages....	5-8
<b>RSS Feeds</b> .....	<b>5-9</b>
Updating Blogs & News.....	5-9
<b>Additional Functions</b> .....	<b>5-10</b>
<b>Troubleshooting</b> .....	<b>5-17</b>

# 5

## Yahoo! Keitai & PC Site Browser



## Service Basics

Access the Mobile Internet via Yahoo! Keitai, or view PC Internet sites via PC Site Browser.

- Service requires a separate contract; retrieve Network Information to use these services.
- For more about Yahoo! Keitai, see SoftBank Mobile Website (P.15-23).


### Transmission/Information Fees

Some page content may automatically activate Internet connection incurring transmission fees. Information fees may also apply.






### Security

Electronic certificates are saved on handset to support SSL (encryption protocol for Internet transmissions of important/sensitive information).

### Opening Secure Pages

- A confirmation appears. Choose **Yes** and press  to proceed.
- When a security notice appears, subscribers must decide for themselves whether or not to open the page. Opening secure pages constitutes agreement to the terms of usage. SoftBank, VeriSign Japan, Cybertrust, Entrust Japan, GlobalSign, RSA Security and SECOM Trust Systems cannot be held liable for any damages associated with the use of SSL.

## Advanced

-   Clearing cache (temporarily saved information)  Clearing authentication information (And more on P.5-10)
-  Disabling manufacture number auto send for authentication  Resetting browser settings and stored information (Bookmarks, Saved Pages, etc.) (And more on P.5-16)



# Using Yahoo! Keitai


## Using Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu

Browse Yahoo! Keitai sites from Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu.

Internet pages may not open depending on connection/Server status, etc.

### 1 ➔ Connection starts



- Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu appears.
- To disconnect, press .

### 2 Highlight menu item ➔

- Corresponding page opens.
- Repeat 2 to open additional links.

### 3 ➔ Yes ➔ ➔ Page closes



## Returning to Previous Pages

[Internet Page]  ➔ Previous page opens

- Follow these steps to return to the initial page:

[Internet Page]  ➔ *Forward* ➔ 


## Returning to Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu






[Internet Page]  ➔ *Yahoo! Keitai* ➔ 

## User Authentication

Enter user ID or password ➔  ➔ 

## Playing Media during Download

[Internet Page] Select file ➔ 

- Play files while they transfer from the server (progressive download) or stream media files. Save media played via progressive download as needed (streamed media cannot be saved).
- Press  or  to pause or stop playback. (Progressive download continues; press  twice during playback to stop it.)
- To resume playback, press  while paused.
- Packet transmission fees apply even while playback is paused.
- Sound is heard from Speaker/Headphones regardless of  Sound Output setting.

## Using History

### 1 ➔ *Yahoo! Keitai* ➔ ➔ *History* ➔



### 2 Select record ➔ ➔ Connection starts

- Corresponding page opens.

### 3 ➔ Yes ➔ ➔ Page closes

## Entering URLs Directly

### 1 ➔ *Yahoo! Keitai* ➔ ➔ *Enter URL* ➔









### 2 Enter URL ➔ ➔ Connection starts

- Corresponding page opens.

### 3 ➔ Yes ➔ ➔ Page closes

## Advanced

-   Switching browsers
-  Using previously entered URLs
-  Deleting History records
-  Sorting History records (And more on P.5-10)
-  Customizing media playback settings (And more on P.5-13)

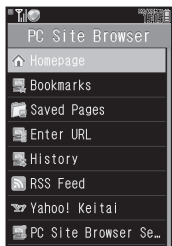


## Using PC Site Browser

Browse PC sites from Yahoo! JAPAN (preset home page).

- Internet pages may not open depending on connection/Server status, etc.
- Browsing PC sites may incur higher charges depending on subscribed price plan.

1 → **Yahoo! Keitai** → → → **PC Site Browser** →



2 **Homepage** → → → **Connection starts**



Pointer

Internet Page

- Yahoo! JAPAN Home opens.
- If a message appears, follow onscreen prompts.
- To disconnect, press .

3 **Highlight menu item** →

- Corresponding page opens.
- Repeat to open additional links.

4 → **Yes** → → **Page closes**

### Returning to Previous Pages

[Internet Page] → Previous page opens

- Follow these steps to return to the initial page:

[Internet Page] → **Forward** →

### Returning to Yahoo! JAPAN Home

[Internet Page] → **Homepage** →

### User Authentication

Enter user ID or password → →

### Using History

In , **History** → → Select record →

### Entering URLs Directly

In , **Enter URL** → → Enter URL →

### Hiding Softkeys

[Internet Page] → **Convenient Functions** → → **Softkey Area** → → **Off** →

### Advanced

- Switching browsers
- Using previously entered URLs
- Deleting History records
- Opening History properties
- Sorting History records
- Sending History records via mail (P.5-10)
- Showing navigation map for continuous scroll
- Changing scroll unit
- Hiding PC Site Browser messages (P.5-12)



# Basic Operations

## Page Browsing

### Scrolling Pages

If page content continues beyond view, use to scroll pages.

Long Press to scroll continuously.



### Switching Frames

On framed pages, switch active frame as follows:

- Tap one
- Long Press
- In pointer navigation, point to one and press to select it
- Otherwise, use to select one



Frames

### Viewing Single Frame

Select frame  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  *Convenient Functions*  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  *Frame In*  $\Rightarrow$

- To return, press .

### Tabbed Browsing

Open another page in a new tab and switch between tabs.

#### Opening a New Tab

##### 1 On a page, select menu item

$\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  *Tab Menu*  $\Rightarrow$

##### 2 Open in New Tab $\Rightarrow$



#### Switching Tabs

##### 1 (Long) $\Rightarrow$ Select tab

$\Rightarrow$

- Alternatively, switch tabs as follows:
  - Tap one
  - Use pointer to select one and press

#### Closing Tabs

(Long)  $\Rightarrow$  Select tab  $\Rightarrow$

$\Rightarrow$  *Tab Menu*  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  *Close Tab or Close All Other Tabs*  $\Rightarrow$

- Alternatively, tap on tab to close it.

## Advanced

- Looking up copied words in dictionaries
- Using Web Search
- Searching current page
- Jumping to page top/bottom
- Saving files to Data Folder
- Changing Font Size
- Disabling automatic image display/sound playback (And more on P.5-11 - 5-12)

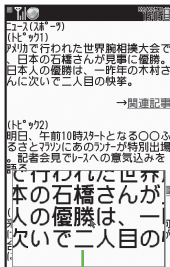




## Selecting Items in Enlarged View

Enlarge area to select items with finger.

### 1 On a page, Long Touch area



Enlarged View

### 2 Drag finger to highlight item in enlarged view ➔ Release

Enlarging Areas in Pointer Navigation  
[Internet Page] Point to area ➔

(Long)

- Use to move pointer in enlarged view; highlight item and press to execute it.
- To close enlarged view, press a key other than .

## Selecting Text

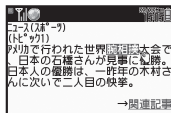
Activate pointer navigation to enable text selection (Drag Mode). Select text to copy or look up words in dictionaries.

- Text may not be selectable or linked page may open depending on the site or page.
- Follow these steps to use a dictionary:

### 1 On a page, point to first character ➔ (Long)

- Drag Mode is activated.

### 2 Highlight text range



### 3

- Text range remains unchanged even when pointer is moved.

### 4 ➔ Select dictionary



- Dictionary opens with text inserted.

### 5 Search ➔ ➔ Select word, etc. ➔

Starting Over

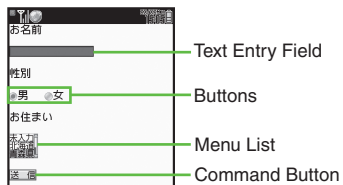
After , point to first character ➔

➔ From



## Additional Page Operations

Enter text or select/execute items.



### Text Entry

1 On a page, select text entry field → ●

2 Enter text → ●  
• Internet page returns.

### Using Entered Text (Input Memory)

[Internet page] Select text entry field →

● → ☺ → Insert/Font Size → ● →

Input Memory → ● → Select text → ●

### Pull-down Menu Item Selection

1 On a page, select menu list field → ●

2 Select item → ●

### When Multiple Selection is Supported

• Select items as needed and press [OK].

### Page Item Indicators

#### Selection Items

Buttons ○ or boxes □ appear.

1 On a page, select button or box → ●



• ○/□ changes to ●/☑

#### Execution Items

Execute the assigned command.

1 On a page, select command → ●



## Using Bookmarks & Saved Pages

### Bookmarks

Bookmark sites for quick access.

#### Saving Bookmarks

- 1 On a page, → **Bookmarks** → → **<Add New Entry>** →
  - **<Add New Entry>** appears in gray for unsavable pages.

- 2 Check/edit URL →
- 3 Check/edit title →
- 4 Save →

### Opening Bookmarks

- 1 → **Yahoo! Keitai** → → **Bookmarks** →



List Type

- 2 Select title →
  - Corresponding page opens.

#### Switching Bookmark Type

After 1, → **Change List** →

Select type →

- Alternatively, tap type indicator to toggle lists.

#### Opening Bookmarks Online

[Internet Page] → **Bookmarks** →

→ Select title →

### Saved Pages

Save page content; handset opens saved pages without connecting to the Internet.

#### Saving Pages

- 1 On a page, → **Saved Pages** → → **Save** →
  - **Save** appears only for savable pages.

- 2 Check/edit title →

#### Opening Saved Pages

- 1 → **Yahoo! Keitai** → → **Saved Pages** →



- 2 Select page →
  - Corresponding page opens.

#### Opening Saved Pages Online

[Internet Page] → **Saved Pages** →

→ **Open List** → → Select page

→

### Advanced

- Deleting titles
- Editing titles
- Changing title order
- Sorting titles into folders
- Deleting pages
- Editing page titles
- Changing page order (And more on P.5-13 - 5-14)



## Updating Blogs & News

Register RSS-compatible sites; view content updates without opening source sites.

Transmission fees apply.

### Subscribing to RSS Feeds

 appears for RSS-compatible sites.

 RSS Indicator

Available for PC Site Browser.

**1** On a compatible page,  → **Register In RSS Feed** → 

**2** Select feed →  (  /  ) → **Complete selection** → 

**3** **Save** →    
 • Choose **Yes** to update immediately or **No** and press .

### Via RSS Icons

Use RSS icons to subscribe to RSS feeds from sites that are not RSS-compatible. Available for PC Site Browser.

**1** On a page, select icon → 

**2** **Yes** →  → **Save** → 

### Checking Updates

Follow these steps to update all feeds:


**1**  → **Yahoo! Keitai** → 

**2** **PC Site Browser** →  → **RSS Feed** → 



RSS Feed List

**3** **Reload All** →  → 

**4** **Yes or No** → 

**5** **Select feed** → 



Title List

**6** **Select title** → 


• Information appears.

### Updating Single RSS Feeds


[RSS Feed List] Select feed →  →

**Reload** →  →  → **Yes or No** → 

### Accessing Source Sites

[Title List] Select title →  → **Select**

**linked title** →  → **Yes** →  → 

→ **Yes or No** → 

### Advanced

-  Disabling feed updates
-  Sorting feeds into folders
-  Deleting feeds
-  Sorting feeds
-  Opening feed properties
-  Exchanging feeds with other devices
-  Sending feeds via mail (P.5-15)



## Connecting/Browsing

### General

Switching browsers	On a page,  → <i>Convenient Functions</i> →  → <i>Change to PC Browser or Change to Y! Keitai</i> →  → <i>This Page or Linked Page</i> →  →  → <i>Yes or No</i> →
Using previously entered URLs	<i>Start Here</i> →  → <i>Yahoo! Keitai</i> →  → <i>See below</i> <i>Yahoo! Keitai</i> <i>Enter URL</i> →  →  → <i>URL Entry Log</i> → → <i>Select URL</i> →  → <i>PC Site Browser</i> <i>PC Site Browser</i> →  → <i>Enter URL</i> →  → → <i>URL Entry Log</i> →  → <i>Select URL</i> →  →

### History

Deleting History records	<i>Start Here</i> →  → <i>Yahoo! Keitai</i> →  → <i>History</i> →  →  → <i>Change to PC Browser or Change to Y! Keitai</i> →  → <i>See below</i> <i>One Record</i> <i>Select record</i> →  → <i>Delete</i> →  → <i>Yes</i> → <i>All Records</i> → <i>Delete All</i> →  → <i>Enter Handset Code</i> →  → <i>Yes</i> →
Opening History properties	→ <i>Yahoo! Keitai</i> →  → <i>History</i> →  →  → <i>Details</i> →
Sorting History records	→ <i>Yahoo! Keitai</i> →  → <i>History</i> →  →  → <i>Sort</i> →  → <i>By Domain or By Date</i> →

### Sending History records via mail

→ *Yahoo! Keitai* → → *History* → → → *Select record* → → *Send URL* → → *S! Mail or SMS* → → *Complete message* →

- S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.

### Memory Operation

For PC Site Browser, perform the following sequence instead of *Browser Settings* → .

*PC Site Browser* → → *PC Site Browser Settings* →

Clearing cache (temporarily saved information)	→ <i>Yahoo! Keitai</i> →  → <i>Browser Settings</i> →  → <i>Memory Operation</i> →  → <i>Delete Cache</i> →  → <i>Yes</i> →
Clearing cookies	→ <i>Yahoo! Keitai</i> →  → <i>Browser Settings</i> →  → <i>Memory Operation</i> →  → <i>Delete Cookies</i> →  → <i>Yes</i> →
Clearing authentication information	→ <i>Yahoo! Keitai</i> →  → <i>Browser Settings</i> →  → <i>Memory Operation</i> →  → <i>Delete Auth Info</i> →  → <i>Yes</i> →



## Page Operations

## ■ Yahoo! Keitai &amp; PC Site Browser

Using linked info	<b>Dialing Numbers</b> On a page, highlight number → ● → <i>Call or Video Call</i> → ●
	<b>Sending Messages</b> On a page, highlight number or mail address → ● → <i>Create Message</i> → ● → <i>S! Mail or SMS</i> → ● → <i>Complete message</i> → ∇ • For mail addresses, omit mail type selection step.
Copying text	On a page, ☺ → <i>Copy Text</i> → ● → <i>Select first character</i> → ● → <i>Highlight text range</i> → ●
Looking up copied words in dictionaries	On a page, ☺ → <i>Convenient Functions</i> → ● → <i>Copy &amp; Search Dict.</i> → ● → <i>Select first character</i> → ● → <i>Highlight text range</i> → ● → <i>Select dictionary</i> → ● → <i>Search</i> → ● → <i>Select word, etc.</i> → ●
Using Web Search	On a page, ☺ → <i>Convenient Functions</i> → ● → <i>Web Search</i> → ● → <i>Enter search text</i> → ●
Searching current page	On a page, ☺ → <i>Convenient Functions</i> → ● → <i>Search</i> → ● → <i>Enter search text</i> → ● • Press ● to jump to next search result, if any.
Jumping to page top/bottom	On a page, ☺ → <i>Convenient Functions</i> → ● → <i>Jump In Page</i> → ● → <i>Page Top or Page Bottom</i> → ●
Opening page properties	On a page, ☺ → <i>Convenient Functions</i> → ● → <i>Details</i> → ● → <i>Select item</i> → ●
Sending URLs via mail	On a page, ☺ → <i>Convenient Functions</i> → ● → <i>Send URL</i> → ● → <i>S! Mail or SMS</i> → ● → <i>Complete message</i> → ∇ • S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.

Handling Flash® files	[Start Here] On a page, ☺ → <i>Convenient Functions</i> → ● → <i>Flash@Menu</i> → ● → See below
	<b>Pausing/Playing</b> <i>Pause, Resume or Replay</i> → ●
Saving files to Data Folder	[Start Here] On a page, ☺ → <i>Save Items</i> → ● → See below
	<b>Files on Page</b> <i>Select file</i> → ● → <i>Save</i> → ● → <i>Enter name</i> → ● → <i>Save here</i> → ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Some files are saved automatically.</li> <li>• End memory-consuming operations (TV recording, etc.) beforehand.</li> <li>• Confirm signal is strong, battery is adequately charged and that there is enough free memory beforehand.</li> </ul>
Updating page content	<b>Background Images</b> <i>Save Background Image</i> → ● → <i>Save</i> → ● → <i>Enter name</i> → ● → <i>Save here</i> → ●
	On a page, ☺ → <i>Reload</i> → ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To update content in Saved Pages, open a page and follow the steps above.</li> </ul>
Changing encoding to read garbled text	On a page, ☺ → <i>Settings</i> → ● → <i>Char-code</i> → ● → <i>Select option</i> → ●
Opening function shortcuts	On a page, ☺ → <i>Help</i> → ●



### ■ Yahoo! Keitai

Changing Font Size	On a page,  (Long) to enlarge or  (Long) to reduce
--------------------	--

### ■ PC Site Browser

Switching view	On a page,  → <i>PC Screen</i> or <i>Small Screen</i> → ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In Small Screen view, PC sites are redesigned to fit Display.</li> </ul>
Zooming on pages (Zoom Factor)	On a page,  (Long) to enlarge or  (Long) to reduce
Jumping to specific locations	On a page,  (Long) → <i>Quick Movement</i> map appears → <i>Select target location</i> → ●

### Internet Page Settings

#### ■ Yahoo! Keitai & PC Site Browser

For PC Site Browser, perform the following sequence instead of *Browser Settings* → ●.

*PC Site Browser* → ● → *PC Site Browser Settings* → ●

Disabling automatic image display/sound playback	<i>Start Here</i> → ● → <i>Yahoo! Keitai</i> → ● → <i>Browser Settings</i> → ● → <i>Downloads</i> → ● → See below
	<i>Image Display</i> <i>Images</i> → ● → <i>Do not Show</i> → ●
	<i>Sound Playback</i> <i>Sounds</i> → ● → <i>Do not Play</i> → ●
Changing Font Size	● → <i>Yahoo! Keitai</i> → ● → <i>Browser Settings</i> → ● → <i>Font Size</i> → ● → <i>Select size</i> → ●

Using pointer navigation	<i>Start Here</i> → ● → <i>Yahoo! Keitai</i> → ● → <i>Browser Settings</i> → ● → <i>Cursor Settings</i> → ● → See below
	<i>Activating</i> <i>Cursor Mode Settings</i> → ● → <i>Normal Mode</i> → ●
	<i>Changing Pointer Speed</i> <i>Speed Settings</i> → ● → <i>Select speed</i> → ●
Using Memory Card as primary download storage	● → <i>Yahoo! Keitai</i> → ● → <i>Browser Settings</i> → ● → <i>Download to</i> → ● → <i>Prefer Card</i> → ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Some files may be saved to handset regardless of this setting.</li> </ul>

### ■ Yahoo! Keitai

Changing scroll unit	● → <i>Yahoo! Keitai</i> → ● → <i>Browser Settings</i> → ● → <i>Scroll Unit</i> → ● → <i>Select unit</i> → ●
----------------------	--

### ■ PC Site Browser

Showing navigation map for continuous scroll	● → <i>Yahoo! Keitai</i> → ● → <i>PC Site Browser</i> → ● → <i>PC Site Browser Settings</i> → ● → <i>Scroll Settings</i> → ● → <i>Page Navigation</i> → ● → <i>On</i> → ●
Changing scroll unit	● → <i>Yahoo! Keitai</i> → ● → <i>PC Site Browser</i> → ● → <i>PC Site Browser Settings</i> → ● → <i>Scroll Settings</i> → ● → <i>Scroll Unit</i> → ● → <i>Select unit</i> → ●
Hiding PC Site Browser messages	● → <i>Yahoo! Keitai</i> → ● → <i>PC Site Browser</i> → ● → <i>PC Site Browser Settings</i> → ● → <i>Warning Message</i> → ● → <i>PC Site Browser</i> or <i>Yahoo! Keitai</i> → ● → <i>Off</i> → ●



## Streaming/Progressive Download

## General

Customizing media playback settings	<p><b>Start Here</b> During playback,  <b>Settings</b> </p> <p>➔ See below</p>
	<p><b>Changing Playback Size</b></p> <p><b>Display Size</b>  ➔ <b>Select size</b> </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Playback size may not change depending on file.</li> </ul>
	<p><b>Setting Backlight Status</b></p> <p><b>Backlight</b>  ➔ <b>Select option</b> </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Selecting <b>Normal Settings</b> applies Display Backlight settings.</li> </ul>
	<p><b>Adjusting Sound Effects</b></p> <p><b>Sound Effects</b>  ➔ <b>Select effect</b> </p>

## Streaming

Streaming from Media Player	<p><b>Start Here</b>  ➔ <b>Media Player</b>  ➔ <b>Streaming</b> </p> <p>➔  ➔ See below</p>
	<p><b>Resuming from Stopped Point</b></p> <p><b>Last Played</b> </p>
	<p><b>Using Bookmarks</b></p> <p><b>Bookmarks</b>  ➔ <b>Select title</b> </p>
	<p><b>Using History</b></p> <p><b>History</b>  ➔ <b>Select record</b> </p>

## Bookmarks

Deleting titles	<p><b>Start Here</b>  ➔ <b>Yahoo! Keitai</b>  ➔  ➔ </p> <p><b>Bookmarks</b>  ➔  ➔ See below</p>
	<p><b>One Title</b></p> <p><b>Select title</b>   ➔ <b>Delete</b>  ➔ <b>Yes</b> </p>
Editing titles	<p><b>All Titles</b></p> <p> ➔ <b>Delete All</b>  ➔ <b>Enter Handset Code</b> </p> <p>➔ <b>Yes</b> </p>
	<p> ➔ <b>Yahoo! Keitai</b>  ➔ <b>Bookmarks</b>  ➔ </p> <p>➔ <b>Select title</b>   ➔ <b>Edit</b>  ➔ <b>Title:</b> </p> <p>➔ <b>Enter title</b> </p>
Editing bookmarked URLs	<p> ➔ <b>Yahoo! Keitai</b>  ➔ <b>Bookmarks</b>  ➔ </p> <p>➔ <b>Select title</b>   ➔ <b>Edit</b>  ➔ <b>URL:</b> </p> <p>➔ <b>Edit</b> </p>
Sending bookmarked URLs via mail	<p> ➔ <b>Yahoo! Keitai</b>  ➔ <b>Bookmarks</b>  ➔ </p> <p>➔ <b>Select title</b>   ➔ <b>Send</b>  ➔ <b>As Message</b>  ➔ <b>S! Mail or SMS</b>  ➔ </p> <p><b>Complete message</b> </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.</li> </ul>
Changing title order	<p> ➔ <b>Yahoo! Keitai</b>  ➔ <b>Bookmarks</b>  ➔ </p> <p>➔ <b>Select title</b>   ➔ <b>Change Order</b>  ➔ </p> <p><b>Select target location</b> </p>
Opening title properties	<p> ➔ <b>Yahoo! Keitai</b>  ➔ <b>Bookmarks</b>  ➔ </p> <p>➔ <b>Select title</b>   ➔ <b>Details</b> </p>





Start Here → Yahoo! Keitai → Bookmarks → See below

### Creating Folders

☰ → Create Folder → Enter name →

### Moving to Folders

Select title → ☰ → Move → Select folder → Move →

### Moving from Folders

Select folder → Select title → ☰ → Move → Move →

### Renaming Folders

Select folder → ☰ → Rename → Enter name →

### Deleting All Titles within a Folder

Select folder → ☰ → Delete All → Enter Handset Code → Yes →

### Deleting Folders

Select folder → ☰ → Delete → Enter Handset Code → Yes →

Sorting titles into folders

## Saved Pages

Start Here → Yahoo! Keitai → Saved Pages → See below

### One Page

Deleting pages  
Select page → ☰ → Delete → Yes →

### All Pages

☰ → Delete All → Enter Handset Code → Yes →

Editing page titles  
→ Yahoo! Keitai → Saved Pages → Select page → ☰ → Rename → Enter title →

Changing page order  
→ Yahoo! Keitai → Saved Pages → Select page → ☰ → Change Order → Select target location →

Opening page properties  
→ Yahoo! Keitai → Saved Pages → Select page → ☰ → Details →

Switching page list view  
→ Yahoo! Keitai → Saved Pages → Select page → ☰ → List View or Preview View →



RSS Feeds		
Disabling feed updates	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Yahoo! Keitai → ● → PC Site Browser →</li> <li>● → RSS Feed → ● → Select feed → ☰ →</li> <li>Manage RSS Feed → ● → Restrict Update → ●</li> </ul>	
Sorting feeds into folders	<p><b>Start Here</b> ● → Yahoo! Keitai → ● → PC Site Browser → ● → RSS Feed → ● → See below</p> <p><b>Creating Folders</b></p> <p>☰ → Manage RSS Feed → ● → Create Folder → ● → Enter name → ●</p> <p><b>Moving to Folders</b></p> <p>Select feed → ☰ → Manage RSS Feed → ● → Move → ● → Select folder → ● → Move → ●</p> <p><b>Renaming Folders</b></p> <p>Select folder → ☰ → Manage RSS Feed → ● → Rename → ● → Enter name → ●</p> <p><b>Deleting Folders</b></p> <p>Select folder → ☰ → Delete → ● → Enter Handset Code → ● → Yes → ●</p>	
	<p><b>Start Here</b> ● → Yahoo! Keitai → ● → PC Site Browser → ● → RSS Feed → ● → See below</p> <p><b>One Entry</b></p> <p>Select feed → ☰ → Delete → ● → Yes → ●</p> <p><b>All Entries</b></p> <p>☰ → Manage RSS Feed → ● → Delete All → ● → Enter Handset Code → ● → Yes → ●</p> <p>• Alternatively, perform <b>Delete RSS Feed List</b> in Memory Operation (PC Site Browser Settings) to delete all feeds.</p>	

Sorting feeds	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Yahoo! Keitai → ● → PC Site Browser → ● → RSS Feed → ● → ☰ → Manage RSS Feed → ● → Sort → ● → Select option → ●</li> </ul>
Opening feed properties	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Yahoo! Keitai → ● → PC Site Browser → ● → RSS Feed → ● → Select feed → ☰ → Manage RSS Feed → ● → Details → ●</li> </ul>
Exchanging feeds with other devices	<p><b>Start Here</b> ● → Yahoo! Keitai → ● → PC Site Browser → ● → RSS Feed → ● → ☰ → Manage RSS Feed → ● → See below</p> <p><b>Exporting All Feeds</b></p> <p>Export All → ● → Select storage media → ●</p> <p><b>Importing (Adding Feeds)</b></p> <p>Import → ● → Select file → ● → As New Items → ● → Yes or No → ● → Yes or No → ●</p> <p><b>Importing (Overwriting Existing Feeds)</b></p> <p>Import → ● → Select file → ● → Delete All → ● → Enter Handset Code → ● → Yes → ● → Yes or No → ● → Yes or No → ●</p>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Yahoo! Keitai → ● → PC Site Browser → ● → RSS Feed → ● → Select feed → ☰ → Manage RSS Feed → ● → As Message → ● → Complete message → ☑</li> </ul>



## Security Settings

For PC Site Browser, perform the following sequence instead of **Browser Settings** ➔ ●.

**PC Site Browser** ➔ ● ➔ **PC Site Browser Settings** ➔ ●

Disabling manufacture number auto send for authentication	● ➔ <b>Yahoo! Keitai</b> ➔ ● ➔ <b>Browser Settings</b> ➔ ● ➔ <b>Security Settings</b> ➔ ● ➔ <b>Manufacture Number</b> ➔ ● ➔ <b>Off</b> ➔ ●
Disabling referer information delivery to the Server	● ➔ <b>Yahoo! Keitai</b> ➔ ● ➔ <b>Browser Settings</b> ➔ ● ➔ <b>Security Settings</b> ➔ ● ➔ <b>Send</b> ➔ ● ➔ <b>Referer</b> ➔ ● ➔ <b>Not Send</b> ➔ ●
Enabling/disabling cookies	● ➔ <b>Yahoo! Keitai</b> ➔ ● ➔ <b>Browser Settings</b> ➔ ● ➔ <b>Security Settings</b> ➔ ● ➔ <b>Cookies</b> ➔ ● ➔ <b>Select option</b> ➔ ●
Selecting script execution option	● ➔ <b>Yahoo! Keitai</b> ➔ ● ➔ <b>Browser Settings</b> ➔ ● ➔ <b>Security Settings</b> ➔ ● ➔ <b>Script Settings</b> ➔ ● ➔ <b>Select option</b> ➔ ●
Hiding confirmations before entering/exiting secure pages	● ➔ <b>Yahoo! Keitai</b> ➔ ● ➔ <b>Browser Settings</b> ➔ ● ➔ <b>Security Settings</b> ➔ ● ➔ <b>Secure Prompt</b> ➔ ● ➔ <b>Do not Show</b> ➔ ●
Opening electronic certificates saved on handset	● ➔ <b>Yahoo! Keitai</b> ➔ ● ➔ <b>Browser Settings</b> ➔ ● ➔ <b>Security Settings</b> ➔ ● ➔ <b>Root Certificates</b> ➔ ● ➔ <b>Select certificate</b> ➔ ●

Changing validity of entered user ID/ password

- ➔ **Yahoo! Keitai** ➔ ● ➔ **Browser Settings** ➔ ● ➔ **Security Settings** ➔ ● ➔ **Keep Auth Info** ➔ ● ➔ **Select option** ➔ ●
- **Per Browsing** retains entered user ID/password during browsing sessions. **On** retains such authentication information even after turning handset off.
  - Authentication information may not be retained depending on the site.

Enabling/disabling Ajax (for asynchronous communication)

- ➔ **Yahoo! Keitai** ➔ ● ➔ **Browser Settings** ➔ ● ➔ **Security Settings** ➔ ● ➔ **Restrict Ajax** ➔ ● ➔ **Select option** ➔ ●

## Resetting

For PC Site Browser, perform the following sequence instead of **Browser Settings** ➔ ●.

**PC Site Browser** ➔ ● ➔ **PC Site Browser Settings** ➔ ●

Resetting browser settings and stored information (Bookmarks, Saved Pages, etc.)

- ➔ **Yahoo! Keitai** ➔ ● ➔ **Browser Settings** ➔ ● ➔ **Initialized Browser** ➔ ● ➔ **Enter Handset Code** ➔ ● ➔ **Yes** ➔ ●

Restoring default handset settings

- ➔ **Yahoo! Keitai** ➔ ● ➔ **Browser Settings** ➔ ● ➔ **Reset Settings** ➔ ● ➔ **Enter Handset Code** ➔ ● ➔ **Yes** ➔ ●



### Connecting/Browsing

#### ? What is the bar at Display bottom?

- This is a data progress bar; the number beside it indicates transmitted (green) or received (red) data.

### Page Operations

#### ? Internet page does not open completely

- Portions of page content may not appear in tabbed browsing; close other tabs.

#### ? Text overlaps

- The site may be designed for browsing on PCs; try *Tiny* font size.
- Text may overlap when Zoom Factor is used; adjust scale.

#### ? Cannot access other functions while browsing the Internet

- When switching between Yahoo! Keitai and PC Site Browser (☐ appears), additional function activation is disabled; close either browser and retry.



<b>Digital TV .....</b>	<b>6-2</b>
Basics .....	6-2
Area Setup.....	6-3
Watching TV .....	6-4
Obtaining Program Information.....	6-7
<b>Recording/Playing.....</b>	<b>6-8</b>
Recording Programs.....	6-8
Playing Recorded Programs.....	6-9

<b>TV Timer .....</b>	<b>6-10</b>
TV Timer & TV Recording Timer....	6-10
<b>Time Shift .....</b>	<b>6-11</b>
Time Shift Recording & Playback...	6-11
<b>Additional Functions .....</b>	<b>6-12</b>
<b>Troubleshooting.....</b>	<b>6-18</b>

# 6

## Digital TV



## Basics

933SH supports One Seg terrestrial digital television broadcast services developed for mobile devices in Japan.

### Watch Live Television

Set up a channel list for your service area to access available programming. Capture screenshots while watching TV.

### Multi Job

Watch TV in one half of Display using the other to access messaging functions, browse the Internet or open Phone Book, etc.

### TV Listing (EPG) & Program Info

Find program channels and times, or open program details via current channel's schedule.

### View Data Broadcasts

In addition to audio and visuals, enjoy text, program-related information and interactive services.

### Record Shows/Time Shift

Record current program for later viewing on handset; if interrupted by incoming calls while watching TV, record it temporarily for delayed playback.

### Reserve TV Programs

Record a show or activate TV at a specified time; enter dates & times manually or reference TV Listing electronic program guide.

### Precautions

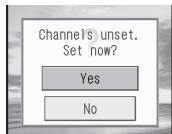
- 933SH TV is exclusively for use in Japan.
- Do not use TV while driving or cycling. Accidents may result. Phone use while driving is prohibited by the Road Traffic Law (revised November 1, 2004). When walking, always pay attention to your surroundings, especially near road/rail crossings, etc.
- When using TV while charging battery, separate AC Charger and Antenna to avoid interference.
- Call transmissions, incoming messages or mobile phone use in the immediate vicinity may affect audiovisual quality.
- Programming may not be viewable or record properly when:
  - Too far from or too close to broadcasting stations
  - In mountainous areas or near tall buildings
  - Aboard trains or in moving vehicles
  - Near high-voltage lines, neon lights or wireless base stations
  - Near railroad tracks or highways
  - Anywhere a jamming signal is broadcast/reception is unstable



## Area Setup

When activating TV for the first time, follow these steps to set up channels by area:

1 



- Setup confirmation appears.

2 **Yes** → 



3 **Select region** → 


4 **Select prefecture** →  → **Select locality** → 



- After setup, channel list appears.

5 






- To watch TV, select **Digital TV** and press 

### Watching TV without Completing Area Setup

In  **No Preference** → 

### Adding Reception Areas

 →  → **Set Channels** → 

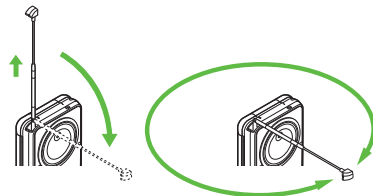
**Change Area** →  → **Select Area** →

 → **Set Area Info** →  → **From** 










### Digital TV Antenna

Pull Antenna by top bead until it clicks.

- After extending Antenna fully, fold then rotate it to find best reception. (Unless transmission source is near, extend it for better reception.)
- After use, gently retract Antenna aligning top bead. Do not carry handset with Antenna extended; damage may result.



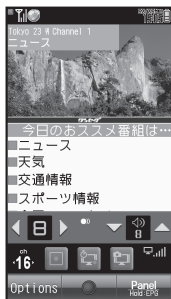
### Advanced

-   Switching reception Areas
-  Renaming Areas
-  Changing/disabling  function
-  Editing channels
-  Deleting all channels in Area
-  Adding new channels to Area
-  Updating all channels in the Area (P.6-12)




## Watching TV

1 




TV Window

2 Use Keypad to select a channel

- Use  to switch channels one by one; Long Press to find channel with stable signal automatically.

3  ➔ Yes ➔  ➔ TV ends


### Incoming Calls

- Press  to answer calls with clamshell open.

### When Answering Voice Calls with Memory Card Inserted (Time Shift)

- Current program is temporarily recorded; start playback after the call.

### Incoming Messages

- Double beep sounds and New Message notice appears. Long Press  to access messages.

## Watching TV in Widescreen

### Viewer Position

1 In TV window, rotate Display to Viewer position

2 Hold handset in landscape



- TV window rotates with handset orientation.

3 Drag finger left or right on TV image to select a channel

- Alternatively, tap channel key then drag finger left or right to select channels.

### Activating TV from Standby in Viewer Position

- Tap as follows:

**MENU ➔ TV ➔ Digital TV**

## Advanced

-  Viewing key assignments
- Searching for current program on the Internet
- Enlarging display size for portrait orientation
- Enlarging image portion in landscape (And more on P.6-12)





## Clamshell Open

In Motion Control menu, set Display Change to **Manual at Open**(press **⬆**) or **Manual**(press **⬆**) first.

### 1 In TV window,







- TV window rotates 90 degrees clockwise.

### 2 Use Keypad to select a channel

- Multi Selector response changes with TV orientation.

## Major TV Window Operations

### Handset Keys

Toggle Panel On/Off (portrait) Show/Hide Channel Area (landscape)	
Change Area	
Volume Control	
Toggle Display Size (portrait)	

### Touch Panel

Switch Channel	Drag finger left or right on TV image
Volume Control	Drag finger up or down on TV image
Toggle View	Tap TV image
Change Display Size	Pinch or spread fingers on TV image <sup>1</sup>
Change Data Broadcast View	Pinch or spread fingers on Data Broadcast area <sup>1</sup>
Change Area	Touch Area name <sup>2</sup>

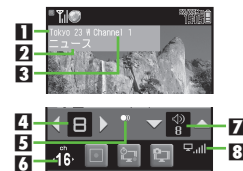
<sup>1</sup>Available in portrait orientation.

<sup>2</sup>Available in landscape orientation.

### Using Options Menu via Touch Panel

- Tap **Options**, then tap menu items to proceed.

## Panel & Channel Area Descriptions



1	Area name	5	Sound Channel
2	Program name	6	Channel
3	Station name	7	Volume
4	Channel key	8	Signal strength <sup>†</sup>

<sup>†</sup>The more bars the better.



Indicator position varies with display size.

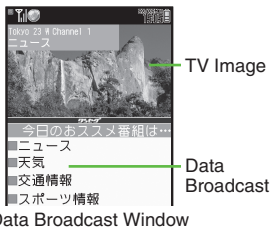
## Advanced

-  Saving current channel
-  Selecting an audiovisual mode (And more on P.6-12 - 6-13)



## Data Broadcast (Japanese)

In portrait orientation, Data Broadcast text appears below TV image. Use  to select an item and press  to access program-related information and interactive services.



### Data Broadcast Fees


- Data Broadcast information viewing is free, however, using data links/related services incurs Internet connection fees.
- A confirmation appears the first time a fee-based Network connection is established from a channel; if accepted, further Network connections are established without confirmation until the channel is changed.

## Capturing Screenshots









- Capture screenshots while watching TV. (May be unavailable if TV was activated by TV Timer, etc.)
- Saved images cannot be forwarded, edited, set as Wallpaper or attached to messages.

- 1 In TV window, 
- 2 
  - Image is saved.








### In Viewer Position

- Tap as follows:  
Options  $\rightarrow$  Useful  $\rightarrow$  Capture  $\rightarrow$  Assign  
  - In portrait orientation, tap .

### Opening Saved Images

- While Watching TV  
[TV Window]   $\rightarrow$  Useful Func.  $\rightarrow$   
  $\rightarrow$  TV-Image Folder  $\rightarrow$    $\rightarrow$   
 Select image  $\rightarrow$  
- From Standby  
  $\rightarrow$  TV  $\rightarrow$    $\rightarrow$  TV-Image Folder  
 $\rightarrow$    $\rightarrow$  Select image  $\rightarrow$  

## Advanced

-   Changing view  Returning to initial window  Deleting information saved from Data Broadcasts  Hiding Network connection confirmation  Sending/hiding Location Information  Sending manufacture number and other information (P.6-14)

## Obtaining Program Information

Find program channels and times, or open program details via current channel's schedule.

<b>TV Listing</b>	Start EPG S! Application to find program channels and times for specified area
<b>Program Info</b>	Open program details via current channel's schedule; set Reservations to record shows or activate TV

### TV Listing (Japanese)

#### 1 In TV window, (Y) (Long)

- EPG application starts; refer to the application's help menu for operational instructions.
- When using EPG application for the first time, a confirmation appears. Follow onscreen instructions.

#### In Viewer Position

Long Touch Hold:EPG

### Program Info

#### 1 In TV window, (M) (Long) → OperateProgram → (C)

#### 2 Program Info. → (C)



Program Info Window

#### 3 Select program → (C)

- To return to TV window, press (BACK) twice.

### Setting Recording Timer via Program Info

[Program Info Window] Select program → (Y) → (C)

- Timer entries set via Program Info are updated with program changes automatically. Program cancellations cancel corresponding Timer entries. (Poor signal conditions may inhibit updates or cancellations.)

### Setting TV Timer via Program Info

[Program Info Window] Select

program → (M) → Programming → (C)



## Recording Programs

Clip is saved to handset (or Memory Card, if inserted).

### Precautions

- Saved files cannot be forwarded or attached to messages.
- 933SH encryption technology prevents unauthorized copying or playback of Memory Card files through data encryption and authentication. Files copied from Memory Card to other cards on PC are unplayable.
- Copyright laws limit duplicated material to private use only, and prohibit unauthorized reproduction/other use.
- SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss or alteration of recorded content.

### Dubbing 10

- 933SH supports Dubbing 10 copy protection scheme that allows recordings to be copied from handset to Memory Card. Open file properties to check the remaining number of copies allowed to be made.

### 1 In TV window, (Long) ➔ Recording starts





Recording Window

- Changing volume, etc. does not affect recordings.
- When Small Light flashes yellow, reception is poor; change location to improve it: Small Light illuminates green for moderate, or blue for strong reception.

### 2 (Long) ➔ Recording ends


### Recording Programs in Landscape

[TV Window]  (Long)


- To stop, Long Press  while recording.

### In Viewer Position

- Tap  to start recording. To stop, tap .



- In landscape orientation, Long Touch **Hold** : .

### Chase Play (Playing while Recording)

In recording window,  (Long) ➔

Playback starts ➔  (Long) ➔

Playback stops

- To start playback in Viewer position, tap **Options** ➔ **Rec/** ➔ **Play**. Long Touch **Hold** :  to stop playback.

- Watch a program from the beginning while recording it on Memory Card.




### Memory/Battery Runs Low or Video Call/S! Circle Talk Request is Accepted

- Recording stops. (Recorded clip is saved.)

### Saving Files via the Internet while Recording

- While recording programs to handset, confirm there is enough free memory before saving files.

### Advanced

-  ● Recording programs without Data Broadcasts
-  ● Saving Data Broadcasts to Memory Card
-  ● Recording programs to handset (P.6-15)

# Playing Recorded Programs

- 1 In TV window, **TV Player**



Video List

- indicates the file is unplayable.

- 2 Select file



Playback Window

- Playback starts. (The last played file plays from where it stopped.)

- 3 (Long) **Playback stops**

## Switching Video List

After , **Change to Phone or Change to MemoryCard**

## Major Playback Operations

Adjust volume or change display size following the same operations used while watching TV.

## Handset Keys

Rewind/Fast Forward	1, 2 /  1
Skip (Forward/Backward)	/
Pause <sup>3</sup>	(● in landscape)
Set Marker	
Toggle Panel On/Off	(portrait)
Show/Hide Channel Area	(landscape)

<sup>1</sup> Each press increases speed. To resume normal playback, press (● in landscape).

<sup>2</sup> Long Press to replay. (Available when no Marker is saved.)

<sup>3</sup> In pause, use to reverse/advance frame.

<sup>4</sup> Not available during Time Shift playback. Long Press to split file.

## Touch Panel

Rewind	Drag finger left on TV image <sup>1</sup>
Fast Forward	Drag finger right on TV image <sup>1</sup>
Pause	Tap <b>Pause</b> or <sup>2</sup>
Stop Playback	Long Touch <b>Hold</b> :
Skip to Any Point	Drag slider
Toggle View	Tap TV image
Change Display Size	Pinch or spread fingers on TV image <sup>3</sup>
Change Data Broadcast View	Pinch or spread fingers on Data Broadcast area <sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Release to resume normal playback.

<sup>2</sup> In pause, drag finger left/right on TV image to reverse/advance frame.

<sup>3</sup> Available in portrait orientation.

## Advanced

- Splitting files by specifying a time point
- Playing files repeatedly
- Playing split files
- Playing video files transferred from Blu-ray Disc recorders
- Checking memory status
- Renaming files
- Deleting files
- Copying files to Memory Card
- Opening file properties
- Playing files with Markers (And more on P.6-16 - 6-17)

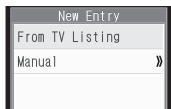


## TV Timer & TV Recording Timer

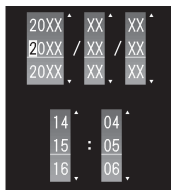
1 In TV window, → *Rec./ TimeShift* →

2 *Reservation List* → →

3 *New Entry* →



4 *Manual* → → *Programming or Recording* →



5 Enter start date/time →   
→ Enter end date/time →

6 *Channel:* → → *Select channel* → →

### Setting Timer via EPG

In 4, *From TV Listing* →

- Refer to the application's help menu for operational instructions.

### Timer Recording Precautions

Confirm target channel reception.

- End the current operations.
- Confirm battery is adequately charged and there is enough free memory.

When TV is activated for Timer recording, audio output is redirected to Speaker/Headphones even if Sound Output is set to **Bluetooth Device**. (TV audio is muted.)

### At Timer Time (TV Alarm Time)

TV and Alarm activate. Alarm ends after the set duration.



Recording starts slightly before the Timer start time and ends a few seconds after the Timer end time.

### While Using Another Function

- TV activates via Multi Job and target program/recording starts. However, if Multi Job cannot activate in the current state, TV may remain off, or the current function may end automatically (unsaved images, messages, Phone Book entries, etc. may be deleted). End all active functions/applications before Timer time.

### Advanced

- Opening/editing/deleting Timer details
- Opening/deleting Timer log
- Customizing TV Alarm settings
- Prioritizing current operation over TV Timer/TV Recording Timer (P.6-17)



## Time Shift Recording & Playback

Record current program temporarily for delayed playback.

- Recorded content is deleted after playback.
- Insert Memory Card first.

### 1 While watching TV, (L) (Long) → Recording starts



Recording in progress

### 2 While recording, (L) (Long) → Playback starts

- Playback starts from where recording was started.
- Recording and playback stop when Time Shift playback has caught up to the real-time program.

#### Recording in Viewer Position

- Tap as follows:
  - Options → Rec/⏏ → ⏏ Rec
  - To start playback while recording, tap Options → Rec/⏏ → ⏏ Start
  - In portrait orientation, tap 📺.

#### Major Playback Operations

##### Handset Keys

Fast Forward	⏏
Skip Forward	# 10
Skip Backward	* 10

\* Press (L) to resume normal Time Shift playback.

##### Touch Panel

Fast Forward	Drag finger right on TV image*
--------------	--------------------------------

\* Release to resume normal Time Shift playback.

#### Time Shift Recording Automatic Activation

When a Voice Call is answered while watching TV with Memory Card inserted, Time Shift recording starts automatically; Long Press (L) after the call for playback.

#### Advanced

- 👉 Disabling Time Shift recording automatic activation (P.6-15)



Area & Channel	
Switching reception Areas	While watching TV,  → Select Area →
Renaming Areas	While watching TV,  → Set Channels → → Change Area →  → Select Area → Change Area Name →  → Enter name →
Changing/disabling function	<small>[Start Here]</small> While watching TV,  → Set Channels →  → Channel Key Setting →  → See below
	<p><b>Toggle All Receivable Channels By Manual</b> → </p> <p><b>Disabling</b> Disable → </p>
Editing channels	<small>[Start Here]</small> While watching TV,  → Set Channels →  → CH Switch →  → Select channel →  → See below
	<p><b>Switching Channel Positions</b> Flip →  → Select target key → </p> <p><b>Deleting Channels</b> Delete →  → Yes → </p>
	While watching TV,  → Set Channels → → Change Area →  → Select Area → Reset Settings →  → Yes →
Deleting all channels in Area	While watching TV,  → Set Channels → → Change Area →  → Select Area → Reset Settings →  → Yes →
Adding new channels to Area	While watching TV,  → Set Channels → → Change Area →  → Select Area → Channel Update →  → Update Further →
Updating all channels in the Area	While watching TV,  → Set Channels → → Change Area →  → Select Area → Channel Update →  → Update All → Yes →

Watching	
Viewing key assignments	While watching TV,  → Help → • Also available while recording or playing programs.
Searching for current program on the Internet	While watching TV,  → Operate Program → → Program Info. Search →  → Search → • Follow onscreen instructions.
Enlarging display size for portrait orientation	While watching TV,  → AV Settings → Screen Size →  → Enlarge →
Enlarging image portion in landscape	With TV in landscape, Long Touch portion • Drag enlarged portion to enlarge other areas.
Canceling image smoothing	While watching TV,  → AV Settings → Smooth Mode →  → Off →
Saving current channel	While watching TV,  → Set Channels → → Save Channel →  → Select key → • To overwrite a saved channel, choose Yes and press .
Selecting an audiovisual mode	While watching TV,  → AV Settings → AV Mode →  → Select mode → • TV reception time may shorten depending on the mode.





Adjusting current AV Mode parameters	<p><b>Start Here</b> While watching TV,  → <b>AV Settings</b> →  → <b>See below</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Change AV Mode (select mode other than <b>Link to Genre</b>) first.</li> </ul>
	<p><b>Brightness</b>  <b>Image</b> →  → <b>Brightness</b> →  → <b>Adjust level</b> → </p>
	<p><b>Disabling/Enabling Brightness Adjustment via Light Sensor</b>  <b>Image</b> →  → <b>Brightness</b> →  →  (□/✓) → </p>
	<p><b>Adjusting Brightness Automatically by Scene</b>  <b>Image</b> →  → <b>Control by Scene</b> →  → <b>On(Light) or On</b> → </p>
	<p><b>Other Image-Related Parameters</b>  <b>Image</b> →  → <b>Select item</b> →  → <b>Adjust level</b> → </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Adjust <b>Contrast</b>, <b>Blackness</b> (black level), <b>Color</b> (color density), <b>Tint</b> (skin color tone) and <b>Sharpness</b>.</li> </ul>
	<p><b>Restoring Default Image Settings</b>  <b>Image</b> →  → <b>Reset</b> →  → <b>Yes</b> → </p>
Changing panel pattern in portrait orientation	<p>With TV in portrait,  → <b>Advanced</b> →  → <b>Panel Type</b> →  → <b>Select pattern</b> → </p>
	<p>With TV in landscape,  → <b>Advanced</b> →  → <b>Display Icon</b> →  → <b>On</b> → </p>
Setting indicators to always appear in landscape orientation	<p>With TV in landscape,  → <b>Advanced</b> →  → <b>Display Icon</b> →  → <b>On</b> → </p>

Switching One Seg service	<p>While watching TV,  → <b>Set Channels</b> →  → <b>Select Serv. Station</b> →  → <b>Select service</b> → </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Available for programs with multiple services.</li> </ul>
Listening to audio from Speaker	<p>While watching TV,  → <b>Advanced</b> →  → <b>Sound Output</b> →  → <b>Loudspeaker</b> → </p>
Using wireless Headphones	<p>While watching TV,  (Long)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Pair SCMS-T DRM scheme compliant Bluetooth® headphones beforehand.</li> </ul>
Setting TV to end automatically after a period of time	<p>While watching TV,  → <b>Advanced</b> →  → <b>Auto Exit</b> →  → <b>Auto Exit Time</b> →  → <b>Select time</b> → </p>
Disabling auto shut-off when handset is closed	<p>While watching TV,  → <b>Advanced</b> →  → <b>Auto Exit</b> →  → <b>Close Action</b> →  → <b>Watch TV</b> → </p>
Changing handset responses to incoming transmissions	<p><b>Start Here</b>  → <b>TV</b> →  → <b>Settings</b> →  → <b>Calls &amp; Alarms</b> →  → <b>See below</b></p>
	<p><b>Showing Alarm Notice</b>  <b>Alarm</b> →  → <b>Alarm Notice</b> → </p>
	<p><b>Showing Calls or S! Circle Talk Requests</b>  <b>Select item</b> →  → <b>Notice a Call</b> → </p>
	<p><b>Showing New Message Window</b>  <b>Incoming Message</b> →  → <b>Calls &amp; Alarms</b> → </p>
Switching audio output to wireless device	<p> → <b>TV</b> →  → <b>Settings</b> →  →  <b>Sound Output</b> →  → <b>Bluetooth Device</b> → </p>



## Data Broadcast

Changing view	With Data Broadcast in portrait,  → <i>Set Broadcast Data</i> →  → <i>Change View (Data)</i> → • To return to TV window, press .
Returning to initial window	With Data Broadcast in portrait,  → <i>Set Broadcast Data</i> →  → <i>Back to Top</i> →
Deleting information saved from Data Broadcasts	While watching TV,  → <i>Set Broadcast Data</i> →  → <i>Delete StationData</i> →  → See below <b>Deleting by Station</b> Select station →  → <i>Delete</i> →  → <i>Yes</i> → <b>Deleting All</b> → <i>Delete All</i> →  → Enter Handset Code →  → <i>Yes</i> →
Hiding Network connection confirmation	While watching TV,  → <i>Set Broadcast Data</i> →  → <i>Notify Connection</i> →  → <i>Off</i> →
Sending/hiding Location Information	While watching TV,  → <i>Set Broadcast Data</i> →  → <i>Location</i> →  → See below <b>Sending Always</b> <i>On</i> → <b>Hiding Always</b> <i>Off</i> →
Sending manufacture number and other information	While watching TV,  → <i>Set Broadcast Data</i> →  → <i>Manufacture Number</i> →  → <i>On</i> →

## TV Link (Japanese)

Saving links to Data Broadcasts or related information	While viewing Data Broadcast, select link source → • Link navigation varies by program. Follow onscreen instructions to save links.
Using TV links	→  → <i>TV</i> →  → <i>TV Link</i> →  → See below <b>Opening TV Links</b> Select link → • Connection fees may apply. <b>Opening Properties</b> Select link →  → <i>Details</i> →
Deleting TV links	→  → <i>TV</i> →  → <i>TV Link</i> →  → See below <b>One Entry</b> Select link →  → <i>Delete</i> →  → <i>Yes</i> → <b>All Entries</b> → <i>Delete All</i> →  → Enter Handset Code →  → <i>Yes</i> →



## Subtitle &amp; Sound

Changing subtitle settings	<p><b>[Start Here]</b> While watching TV,  ➔ <b>Subtitle/Sound</b> ➔  ➔ See below</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• May be unavailable depending on program content or viewing style (TV orientation, etc.).</li> </ul>
	<p><b>Showing Subtitles Always</b></p> <p><b>Display Subtitle</b> ➔  ➔ On ➔ </p>
	<p><b>Hiding Subtitles Always</b></p> <p><b>Display Subtitle</b> ➔  ➔ Off ➔ </p>
	<p><b>Changing Subtitle Language</b></p> <p><b>Subtitle Language</b> ➔  ➔ Language 2 ➔ </p>
	<p><b>Showing Subtitle Area Always</b></p> <p><b>Auto Subtitle Off</b> ➔  ➔ Off ➔ </p>
	<p><b>Showing Subtitles at the Top</b></p> <p><b>Subtitle Position</b> ➔  ➔ Upper ➔ </p>
	<p><b>Increasing Subtitle Lines</b></p> <p><b>Subtitle ScrollMode</b> ➔  ➔ On ➔ </p>
Changing sound settings	<p><b>[Start Here]</b> While watching TV,  ➔ <b>Subtitle/Sound</b> ➔  ➔ See below</p>
	<p><b>Selecting Sound Option</b></p> <p><b>Sound Type</b> ➔  ➔ Sound2 ➔ </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Available when multiple sounds are supported.</li> </ul>
	<p><b>Listening to Sub Language</b></p> <p><b>Sound Channel</b> ➔  ➔ Sub ➔ </p>
	<p><b>Listening to Main &amp; Sub Languages</b></p> <p><b>Sound Channel</b> ➔  ➔ Main + Sub ➔ </p>

## Recording

Recording programs without Data Broadcasts	While watching TV,  ➔ <b>Set Broadcast Data</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Set Recording</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Image Only</b> ➔
Saving Data Broadcasts to Memory Card	While watching TV,  ➔ <b>Set Broadcast Data</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Image Location</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Memory Card</b> ➔
Disabling Time Shift recording automatic activation	➔ <b>TV</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Settings</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Set Call Time Shift</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Off</b> ➔
Recording programs to handset	➔ <b>TV</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Settings</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Save Recording to</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Phone Memory</b> ➔



## Recorded Programs

## Playback

Splitting files by specifying a time point	During playback,
Playing files repeatedly	
Playing split files	
Playing video files transferred from Blu-ray Disc recorders	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• During playback, press  to switch sound channels (L, R or L + R). For more operations, see P.8-5 "Video Playback Operations."</li> <li>• In Recorder Contents file list, press  to rename files, change playback mode (repeat, random, etc.), check memory status, open properties or delete files.</li> </ul>

## Managing

Checking memory status	
Renaming files	
Deleting files	 <b>Single Files</b> 
	<b>All Files</b> 
Copying files to Memory Card	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• File is moved from handset to Memory Card when the number of copies made exceeds the limit.</li> </ul>
Moving files to Memory Card	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Files moved to Memory Card cannot be moved back to handset.</li> </ul>
Opening file properties	



## Markers

Playing files with Markers	<b>Start Here</b> During playback → See below
	<b>Skipping between Markers</b> ⏮ (Long) or ⏭ (Long) <b>Moving to Specific Markers</b> [ ] - [ ]
Using Marker List	<b>Start Here</b> During playback, [ ] → Set Maker → ● → Marker List → ● → See below
	<b>Starting Playback</b> Select number → ●
	<b>Deleting a Marker</b> Select number → [ ] → Delete → ● <b>Deleting All Markers</b> [ ] → Delete All → ● → Yes → ●

## TV Timer/TV Recording Timer

Opening/editing/ deleting Timer details	<b>Start Here</b> While watching TV, [ ] → Rec./TimeShift → ● → Reservation List → ● → See below
	<b>Opening Entries</b> Select entry → ●
	<b>Editing Entries</b> Select entry → [ ] → Edit → ● → Edit → [ ] • Some entries may not be edited depending on the content.
	<b>Deleting Entries</b> Select entry → [ ] → Delete → ● → Yes → ●

Opening/deleting  
Timer log

**Start Here** While watching TV, [ ] → Rec./TimeShift → ● → Reservation List → ● → [ ] → See below

## Opening Timer Log

Select record → ●

## Playing Recorded Programs

Select record → [ ]

## Deleting Records

Select record → [ ] → Yes → ●

Customizing TV  
Alarm settings

**Start Here** While watching TV, [ ] → Advanced → ● → TV Alarm → ● → See below

## Changing TV Alarm Time

Alarm Time → ● → Select time → ●

## Disabling Tone/Vibration/Small Light

Tone, Vibration or Light → ● → Off → ●

## Changing Duration

Duration → ● → Select time → ●

Prioritizing current  
operation over TV  
Timer/TV  
Recording Timer

● → TV → ● → Settings → ● → TV Reserve Prior → ● → Off → ●



## Watching

### ? TV won't activate

- Battery may be low. Charge battery or install a charged battery.

### ? Cannot watch TV

- Reception may be poor; change location to improve it. (TV signal strength is independent of handset signal strength.)
- Handset may not have been used for a period of time; retrieve Network Information.
- TV is disabled upon subscription termination.

### ? Area setup does not complete correctly

- Perform **Update All** in Channel Update. Area setup may not complete correctly depending on the area or service availability.

## Recording

### ? Ringtone does not sound as set while recording

- When a Chaku-Uta® file, etc. is set as ringtone, default ringtone may sound for incoming transmissions while recording.

## TV Recording Timer

### ? *Could not start recording.* appeared as recording result

- Recording failed due to low battery/memory, active function, etc.

### ? *Recording aborted.* appeared as recording result

- Recording was interrupted due to low memory, Memory Card removal, etc.



<b>Camera</b> .....	<b>7-2</b>
Getting Started .....	7-2
<b>Photo Camera</b> .....	<b>7-3</b>
Capturing Still Images .....	7-3
Using Portrait Photography Features .....	7-7
<b>Video Camera</b> .....	<b>7-9</b>
Recording Video .....	7-9
<b>Review</b> .....	<b>7-12</b>
Opening Saved Files .....	7-12

<b>Shooting Modes</b> .....	<b>7-13</b>
Using Shooting Modes (Photo Camera) .....	7-13
<b>Editing Images</b> .....	<b>7-16</b>
Picture Editor.....	7-16
Composite .....	7-20
<b>Printing</b> .....	<b>7-21</b>
Printing Images .....	7-21
<b>Additional Functions</b> .....	<b>7-22</b>
<b>Troubleshooting</b> .....	<b>7-26</b>

# 7

## Camera & Imaging



## Getting Started

Capture still images or record video.

### Portrait Photography

Automatically locks focus on faces, or releases shutter when subjects smile or turn their faces to camera.

### Auto Focus

Measures the distance between subjects and camera to adjust focus.

### Multiple Shooting Modes

Apply effect or add frame, capture sequential/panoramic or scan images, or use long exposure.

### Review

Open/play last saved mobile camera file quickly with a single key; access older files as needed.

### Precautions

- Clean dust/smudges from lens cover with a dry, soft cloth before use.
- Mobile camera is a precision instrument, however, some pixels may appear brighter or darker.
- Shooting/saving images while handset is hot may affect the image quality.
- Exposing lens to direct sunlight may damage color filter and affect image color.

### Auto Shut-off

- Before image capture/recording, mobile camera shuts down after a period of inactivity and handset returns to Standby.

### Shutter Click


- Shutter click and Self-timer tone sound at fixed volume regardless of handset settings.

### Internal & External Cameras

- Use Internal Camera or External Camera; unless noted otherwise, operations in this chapter are described for External Camera.
  - Sizes are limited and shooting modes are not available for Internal Camera.



### Advanced

- Opening Help
- Changing function assigned to Camera Key (  ) (P.7-22)



## Capturing Still Images

### Viewer Position

Operation descriptions are based on landscape orientation.

#### 1 Rotate Display to Viewer position

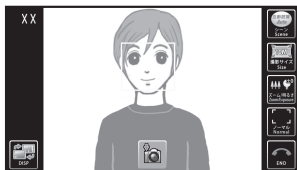


Photo Viewfinder

- After all indicators appear briefly, Photo Viewfinder appears.
- When rotating Display to Viewer position for the first time, Viewer Position menu opens; tap **Take Picture** to complete setup.
- Frames appear on detected faces.
- Alternatively, touch area on which to lock focus.

#### 2 Frame subject on Display



Captured Image Window

- Shutter clicks; captured image is saved.
- Open saved images via Review or Data Folder.

#### 3 Tap **OK**

- Viewfinder returns.

#### 4 Tap **END** → Camera shuts down

### Clamshell Open

Descriptions are for operation with handset keys.

#### 1

- Photo Viewfinder appears.

#### 2 Frame subject on Display



- Shutter clicks; captured image is saved.
- Open saved images via Review or Data Folder.

#### 3

- Viewfinder returns.

#### 4 → Camera shuts down

### Capturing Self Portraits

Open handset and rotate Display 180 degrees. Turn handset around and look into the lens to capture yourself.



### Advanced

-   Activating Mobile Light  Adjusting focus quickly for close-up shots  Adjusting camera's light sensitivity  Changing image size  Adjusting color balance according to lighting conditions (And more on P.7-22 - 7-24)



## Pre-Image Capture Operations

Use handset keys or tap indicators.

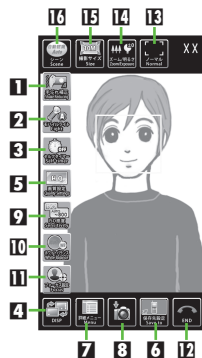
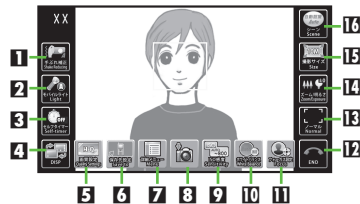
## Handset Keys

Zoom In/Out	
Toggle Mode	
Adjust Brightness	
Change Image Size	
Toggle Mobile Light Mode	
Toggle Indicator View	
Toggle Internal Camera and External Camera	
Open Help	

Press to open Options menu for more functions/settings.

## Touch Panel

Indicators appear along the edges of Display. Tap one to adjust the corresponding setting or execute the assigned command.



<b>1</b> Shake Reducing	<b>9</b> ISO Sensitivity
<b>2</b> Mobile Light	<b>10</b> White Balance
<b>3</b> Self-timer	<b>11</b> Focus
<b>4</b> Toggle indicator view	<b>12</b> Exit
<b>5</b> Picture Quality	<b>13</b> Shutter Mode
<b>6</b> Save to	<b>14</b> Zoom/Exposure
<b>7</b> Options menu	<b>15</b> Picture Size
<b>8</b> Release shutter	<b>16</b> Scene

### toggling Indicator View In Photo Viewfinder, tap (DISP)

### Additional Operations & Restriction Shortcuts:

Zoom In/Out	Drag finger up or down on image
Adjust Brightness	Drag finger left or right on image
Focus Lock	Tap image

- Tap (Menu) to open Options menu for more functions/settings.
- Toggle Internal/External camera with clamshell open.

### Opening Help

- Tap as follows:  
 (Menu) → *Help*

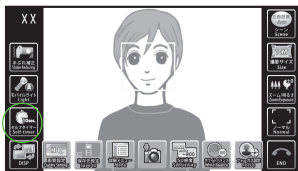


## ■ Touch Panel Operation Example

Follow these steps to use Self-timer:

### 1 In Photo Viewfinder, tap (DISP)

### 2 Tap (Self-timer)



- **10sec.** appears on indicator. A ten-second Self-timer is ready.
- Tap indicator to toggle status (5 sec., 2 sec. and Off).

### 3 Frame subject on Display



- After selected time elapses, captured image appears.
- Tap **OK** to return to Viewfinder.

#### Releasing Shutter during Countdown

After , 

#### Incoming Calls/Alarm during Countdown

- Countdown stops. (Self-timer remains active.)

## Image Size & Print/Display Size

933SH Picture Size & Corresponding Print/Display Size:

<b>10M</b>	A3 prints
<b>5M</b>	A3 prints
<b>3M</b>	A4 prints
<b>Full HD</b>	Full HD size display wallpaper
<b>Wallpaper</b>	933SH Wallpaper
<b>VGA</b>	VGA size display wallpaper
<b>QVGA</b>	QVGA size display wallpaper

#### Auto Resize Zoom

- At **10M**, Picture Size changes with zoom scale (print quality may be affected); check the size on indicator before image capture.



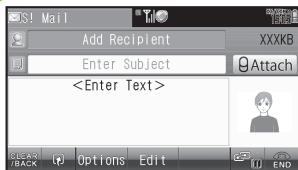
## Sending Captured Images

### Via Mail

- 1 In captured image window, tap **Send**



- 2 Tap message size limit



- Mail Composition window opens.
- Images may be resized automatically.

- 3 Complete message and tap **Send**

### Using Handset Keys

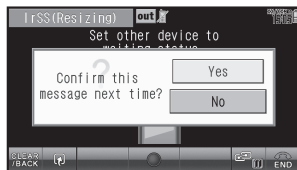
In captured image window, **YR** →  
 Select message size limit → ● →  
 Complete message → **YR**

### Applying the Selected Message Size Limit Hereafter

- Before selecting message size limit, tap **Check** or press **END** to check **From now on too**. checkbox.

### Via Infrared

- 1 In captured image window, Long Touch **Send**



- 2 Tap **Yes** or **No**

### Using Handset Keys

In captured image window, **YR**  
 (Long) → **Yes** or **No** → ●



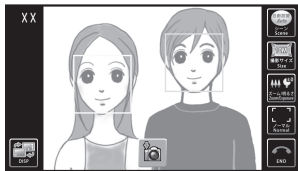
## Using Portrait Photography Features

Most operation descriptions are based on Viewer position.

### Locking Focus on Faces Automatically

933SH camera locks focus on faces automatically; frames appear on detected faces. (Portrait auto focus)

Detection may fail depending on face angle, distance from subject or environment.



#### When Multiple Faces are Detected

- Frame appears on each face; tap one on which to lock focus.

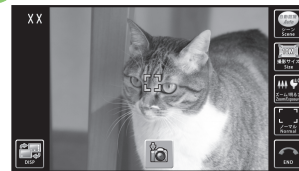
### Capturing with Focus Lock

Lock focus on subject; camera continuously focuses on the subject even if it moves.

- Chase Focus tracks the subject's movement, and Continuous AF adjusts focus as the distance to the subject changes.
- Chase Focus distinguishes the subject by color; light-colored subjects or subjects having the same color as the background may not be tracked correctly.

#### 1 In Photo Viewfinder, frame subject in center of Display

#### 2 Half press or tap subject





- Focus Lock is set.

#### 3

- Captured image appears.
- Tap **OK** to return to Viewfinder.

#### Using Handset Keys

In Photo Viewfinder, frame subject in center of Display →  → 

#### Canceling Focus Lock

- Release  or press .

### Advanced

-  ● Adjusting smile detection level ● Setting Center Auto Focus ● Correcting portrait auto focus images (And more on P.7-23 - 7-24)





## Releasing Shutter upon Smile/ Face Detection

Available Shutter Modes:

<b>Egao focus shutter</b>	Releases shutter when subject smiles
<b>Furimuki shutter</b>	Releases shutter when subject turns face to camera

Adjust smile detection level as needed.


### 1 In Photo Viewfinder, tap (Normal)

- Tap indicator to toggle Shutter Mode between **Egao** ( appears), **Furimuki** ( appears) and **Normal**.

### 2 Shutter is released upon smile/face detection

- Captured image appears.
- Tap **OK** to return to Viewfinder.

#### Using Handset Keys

In Photo Viewfinder,  ➔ Shutter is released upon smile/face detection

## Capturing with Tailored Settings

In Auto mode, 933SH camera detects subject type/environment (Portrait, Landscape, Night, Portrait+Night, Food, Scan Text, Scan Barcode or Scan Card) and applies suitable settings automatically. Select a specific mode for a particular subject/environment.

Examples of Specific Modes:

<b>Baby</b>	Brightens skin tone
<b>Food</b>	Yields vivid colors
<b>Sea</b>	Enhances the blue
<b>Fireworks</b>	Intensifies the black
<b>Pet</b>	Increases shutter speed

### 1 In Photo Viewfinder, tap (Scene)



Scene Menu




### 2 Tap mode


- For **Auto**, select **Find Only Scene** (to disable Scan Card and Scan Barcode) or **Find Card/Barcode**.

### 3 Frame subject in center of Display ➔


- Captured image appears.
- Tap **OK** to return to Viewfinder.

#### Using Handset Keys

In Photo Viewfinder,  ➔ **Scene** ➔  ➔ **Select mode** ➔ 

- For **Auto**, select **Find Only Scene** (to disable Scan Card and Scan Barcode) or **Find Card/Barcode** and press .

#### Toggling Scene Menu Pages

- In Scene menu, tap **Next** or press .

#### Saving Custom Settings

- To save the current camera settings, tap as follows:

In Scene menu, **User Settings** ➔ **Save** ➔ **Yes**


- To load the saved settings, open Scene menu and tap **User Settings**.

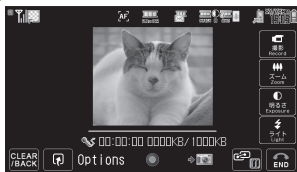


## Recording Video



### Viewer Position

Operation descriptions are based on landscape orientation.

- 1 In Photo Viewfinder, tap  (Menu)
- 2 Tap **Camera Mode**
- 3 Tap **Video Camera**



Video Viewfinder

- 4 **Frame subject on Display**  
 
  - Recording starts after a tone.


5 



Save Menu

- 6 **Tap Save**
  - Video is saved. (Viewfinder returns.)

#### Playing Unsaved Video

In , tap **Preview**

#### Incoming Calls













- If a call arrives before video is saved, recorded clip is temporarily saved. End the call to return.

#### When Battery Runs Low

- Recording stops. (Recorded clip is saved.)

### Clamshell Open







Descriptions are for operation with handset keys.

- 1   
    - Video Viewfinder appears.
    - Omit step of pressing  if Video Camera is already active.
  - 2 **Frame subject on Display**  
 
    - Recording starts after a tone.
  - 3 
- 
- Save Menu
- Recording stops with a tone.
- 4 **Save**  
    - Video is saved. (Viewfinder returns.)
    - Play saved video via Review, Data Folder or Media Player.
  - 5   **Camera shuts down**

7

Camera &amp; Imaging

### Advanced

-   Activating Mobile Light
-  Adjusting focus quickly for close-up shots (And more on P.7-22)
-  Capturing images while recording video
-  Changing recording time/size
-  Enlarging Viewfinder size (And more on P.7-24)



## Operations in Video Viewfinder

Use handset keys or tap indicators.

### Handset Keys

Zoom In/Out	
Toggle Mode	
Adjust Brightness	
Change Record Size	
Toggle Mobile Light Mode	
Change Quality	
Pause/Resume Recording	
Cancel Recording (Start Over)	
Toggle Internal Camera and External Camera	
Open Help	

\*May be unavailable depending on recording size. Press to open Options menu for more functions/settings.

### Touch Panel

Zoom In/Out	Tap <b>Zoom</b> ➔ Drag slider
Adjust Brightness	Tap <b>Exposure</b> ➔ Drag slider
Toggle Mobile Light Mode	Tap <b>Light</b>
Focus Lock	Tap image
Pause/Resume Recording	Tap <b>Pause/Restart</b> *
Cancel Recording (Start Over)	Tap <b>CLEAR/BACK</b> (in Viewer position only)

\*May be unavailable depending on recording size. Tap **Options** to open Options menu for more functions/settings.

#### Opening Help

- Tap as follows:  
**Options** ➔ **Help**

## Sending Recorded Video via Mail

Most operation descriptions are based on Viewer position.

### 1 In Save menu, tap **Send**



### 2 Tap **Save and Send**

- Mail Composition window opens.
- Message creation confirmation appears depending on file size; choose **Yes** to proceed. (Choose **No** to cancel attachment.)

### 3 Complete message and tap **Send**

#### Using Handset Keys

In Save menu, **Send** ➔ ➔ **Save and Send** ➔ ➔ **Complete message** ➔

#### Hiding Message Creation Confirmation Hereafter

- While confirmation appears, tap **Check** or press to check **From now on too** checkbox.





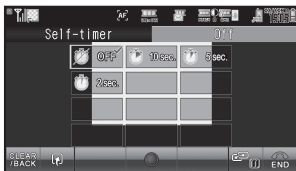
## Self-timer

Most operation descriptions are based on Viewer position.

### 1 In Video Viewfinder, tap *Options*




### 2 Tap *Self-timer*










### 3 Tap time

### 4 Frame subject on Display



- After selected time elapses, recording starts.
- To stop recording, press .
- For more, see operation descriptions on P.7-9.

## Using Handset Keys

- In Video Viewfinder,  → *Self-timer*
-  → *Select time* →  → *Frame subject on Display* →  → 
- Releasing Shutter during Countdown After  
- Incoming Calls/Alarm during Countdown
- Countdown stops. (Self-timer remains active.)



## Opening Saved Files

Most operation descriptions are based on Viewer position.

### Opening Last Saved File

Open/play last saved mobile camera file quickly with a single key; access older files as needed.

1 Tap **MENU** ➔ Tap **Camera**

2 Tap **Review**



Review Window

### Using Handset Keys

(Long)

### Exiting Review

- Tap (END) or press .

### Hiding Indicators/Softkeys

- Tap Display or press .

### Enlarging Images

- After , tap **Zoom** or press .

### Pausing Video

- During playback, tap or press . To resume, tap or press .

### Opening Help

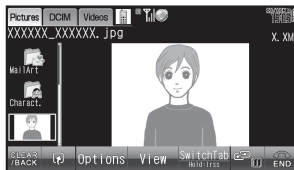
- Tap as follows:

**Options** ➔ **Help**

- Alternatively, press .

### Accessing Older Files

1 In Review window, tap file  
➔ Tap **List**



Review File List

- File list appears.
- Tap **Switch Tab** to toggle lists.

2 Tap file

- File opens/plays.

### Using Handset Keys

In Review window, ➔ **Select file**  
➔

- Press to toggle lists.

### Sending Images

Send images to blogs, etc. via mail. Infrared and other options can also be used for sending images to other devices. To send images to blogs, complete Blog Setting beforehand.

1 In Review file list, select image ➔ Tap **Options**

2 Tap **Send/Blog**

3 Tap option

- Follow onscreen instructions.

### Using Handset Keys

In Review file list, select image ➔ ➔ **Send/Blog** ➔ ➔ **Select option** ➔



## Using Shooting Modes (Photo Camera)

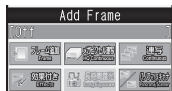
May be unavailable depending on selected image size.

### Continuous Shoot




Available Modes:

<b>4 Pictures</b>	Capture four separate images with Index Image
<b>9 Pictures</b>	Capture nine separate images with Index Image
<b>Overlapped</b>	Capture five images to create a composite image

- 1 In Photo Viewfinder,  ➔ **Modes** ➔ 




Mode Menu




- 2 **Continuous Shoot** ➔ 
- 3 **Select mode** ➔  ➔ **Select speed** ➔ 

### 4 Frame subject on Display










- After image capture, Index Image or a composite image appears. (All captured images are saved.)
- When shooting speed is set to **Manual** (4 Pictures and 9 Pictures modes), repeat  for each frame.

#### Checking Captured Images before Saving

- Set Auto Save to **Off** beforehand. After image capture, Index Image or a composite image appears.
  - Long Press  to save all captured images.
  - Follow these steps to save selected image:
    -  **Select image** ➔ 

### Continuous Shoot (Large)







Capture ten continuous shots of **1M(864x1152)** images at high speed.

- 1 In Photo Viewfinder,  ➔ **Modes** ➔ 
- 2 **HQ Continuous** ➔  ➔ **On** ➔ 
- 3 **Frame subject on Display** ➔ 
- After image capture, the first preview image appears.
- 4  **Select image** ➔ 
  - Image is saved and preview returns.

#### Saving All Captured Images

In   (Long)

#### Saving Strobe Photo (Composite Image)

In   ➔ **Strobe Photo** ➔  ➔ **Yes** ➔  ➔  ➔ 



## Adding Frames

- 1 In Photo Viewfinder, → *Modes* →
- 2 Add Frame →
- 3 Preset Frames →



- 4 Select frame →
- 5 Frame subject on Display →
  - Captured image appears.
  - Press to return to Viewfinder.

## Using Frames in Data Folder

In , *Data Folder* → → Select frame → → → Frame subject on Display →

## Camera Effects

- 1 In Photo Viewfinder, → *Modes* →
- 2 Camera Effects →



- 3 Select effect →
- 4 Frame subject on Display →
  - Captured image appears.
  - Press to return to Viewfinder.

## Long Exposure

Capture low-light shots (fireworks, night scenes, etc.) clearly.

- 1 In Photo Viewfinder, → *Modes* →
- 2 Long Exposure →
- 3 Select time →
- 4 Frame subject on Display →



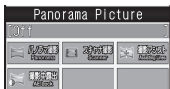
- Shutter is left open for an extended period of time, then captured image appears.
- Press to return to Viewfinder.



## Panorama Picture

1 In Photo Viewfinder, ➔ Modes ➔

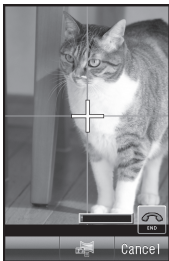
2 Panorama/Scanner ➔



Panorama/Scanner Menu

3 Panorama Picture ➔ ➔ On ➔

4 Frame subject on Display ➔



- Move handset slowly to keep aligned with either of yellow lines.
- Image is captured automatically when the bar () turns blue.

5

- Image is saved.

## Checking Captured Images before Saving

- Set Auto Save to **Off** beforehand. After image capture, Save menu opens.
  - To check captured images, follow these steps in Save menu: **Preview** ➔
  - To save captured images, follow these steps in Save menu: **Save** ➔

## Scanning Images

1 In Photo Viewfinder, ➔ Modes ➔

2 Panorama/Scanner ➔

3 Scanner ➔

4 Select size ➔ ➔ Frame subject on Display ➔



- Move handset slowly to scan the area to capture. (Refer to indicators on Display.)

5

- Image is saved.

## Checking Captured Images before Saving

- Set Auto Save to **Off** beforehand. After image capture, Save menu opens.
  - To check captured images, follow these steps in Save menu: **Preview** ➔
  - To save captured images, follow these steps in Save menu: **Save** ➔

## Advanced

- Changing Panorama settings Changing Panorama image preview method (P.7-24)



## Picture Editor

### Picture Editor Options

The following options are available. Some images may not be editable depending on file type and size.

Resize	Select from preset sizes or crop image
Frame	Add Frame to images
Paste	Add text/dates to images
Retouch	Dress up images with preloaded visual effects
Stamp	Add stamps to images
Face Arrange	Make smiley, angry or sad faces
Correction	Correct images
Rotate	Rotate images
Scribbling	Scribble or sketch
File Format	Convert file format and change file size

### Basic Operation

- 1 → **Data Folder** →
- 2 **Pictures** → → **Select image** →
- 3 → **Edit** →
- 4 **Picture Editor** →



Picture Editor Menu

- 5 **Select effect** → → **Edit**



- To start over, press .

- 6 **When finished**,



- 7 **Save as New** →

- To overwrite, select **Overwrite** and press . (Omit .)

- 8 **Enter name** → → **Save here** →

### Canceling Effects

After , **Undo** →

- To restore effect immediately after canceling, select **Redo** and press .

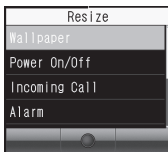


## Changing Image Size

Select from preset sizes or crop image.

### Resize to Preset Size

- 1 In Picture Editor menu, **Resize** ➡ ●



Resize Window

- 2 Select size ➡ ●

- 3 ● Specify image area



- If crop frame does not appear, omit 3.

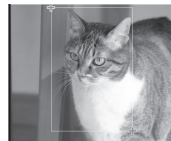
- 4 ●
- Editing is complete.

### Zooming In/Out

After 3, ● ➡ ● ➡ 4

## Cropping Images

- 1 In Resize window, **Cut** ➡ ●
- 2 ● Move + to the upper left corner of the portion to crop ➡ ●



- 3 ● Move + to the lower right corner of the portion to crop ➡ ●

- 4 ●
- Editing is complete.

### Specifying Image Area

After 3, ● ➡ 4

### Zooming In/Out

After 3, ● ➡ ● ➡ 4

## Advanced

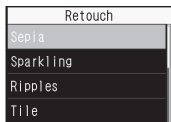
- Using additional editing options (P.7-25)



## Applying Visual Effects

Render in sepia tones or add blur, etc.

- 1 In Picture Editor menu, **Retouch** ➔ ●



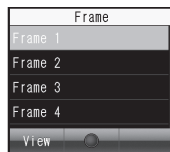
- 2 Select effect ➔ ●



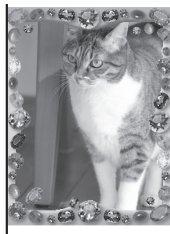
- 3 ●
  - Editing is complete.

## Adding Frames

- 1 In Picture Editor menu, **Frame** ➔ ●



- 2 Select frame ➔ ●



- 3 ●
  - Editing is complete.

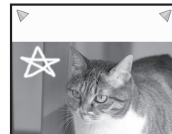
## Scribbling

Drag finger on Display to scribble or sketch.

- 1 In Picture Editor menu, **Scribbling** ➔ ●



- 2 Drag finger freely on image



- 3 ●
  - Editing is complete.

## Changing Line Thickness &amp; Color

In 2, (⊖) ➔ Select thickness ➔ ● ➔

Select color ➔ ● ➔ (⌘)

## Zooming In

In 2, (⌘)

## Viewing Portions Outside Display

In 2, drag arrows at the corners

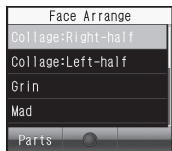




## Face Arrange

Make faces smiley, sad, etc.

- 1 In Picture Editor menu, **Face Arrange** ➔ ●



Face Arrange Menu

- 2 Select type ➔ ●

- 3 ●

● Editing is complete.

### Important Face Arrange Usage Note

- When using Face Arrange, take care not to create images that may embarrass or offend others. Always obtain permission before photographing others.

## Adjusting Positions

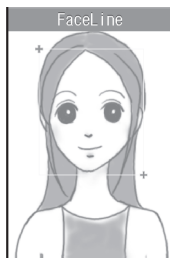
Change the default positions and sizes of targets to fit the image.

- 1 In Face Arrange menu, ● ➔ ●

- A rectangle appears with + in the upper left corner.

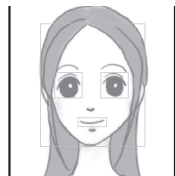
- 2 ● ➔ ●

- 3 ● ➔ ●



- 4 ●

- Face line is set. Set the eyes and then mouth in the same way.



- 5 ● ➔ Yes ➔ ● ➔ Save here ➔ ●

- Image is saved as a new entry with Face Arrange positions adjusted. Complete Face Arrange. Face Arrange is applied to the adjusted positions.



# Composite

## Composite Options

The following options are available. Some images may not be editable depending on file type and size.

Split Picture	Combine up to four images into one
Merge Panorama	Combine two still images into one

## Panorama Images

Panorama Image Effects:

Near View	Best suited for close-up shots
Document	Use for images with text
Standard	Apply to other images

- 1 → **Data Folder** →
- 2 **Pictures** → → **Select image** →
- 3 → **Edit** →
- 4 **Composite** →

## 5 Merge Panorama →



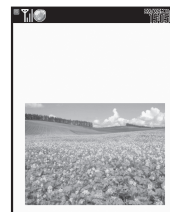
- File selected in 2 is set as left image.

## 6 <Empty> → → **Select image** →

## 7 EFFECT → → **Select effect** →

- Editing is complete.

## 8 When finished,



- Merged image appears.

## 9

## 10 Enter name → → **Save here** →

### Changing Images

After , select image → → →

Select image →

### Switching Image Positions

After ,

## Advanced

- Combining reduced images (P.7-25)



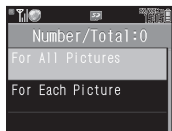
## Printing Images

### Digital Print Order Format (DPOF)

Select images from Memory Card and specify the number of copies to print on DPOF-compatible printers, or at digital printing services.

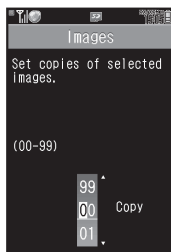
DPOF settings made on other devices are unusable; delete existing settings to create new ones on handset.

- 1 → **Settings** → →
- 2 **Memory Card** → → **DPOF** →
- 3 **Number of Copies** →



- 4 **For Each Picture** → → **Select folder** →

- 5 **Select image** →



- 6 **Enter a number of copies to print** →

- For more settings, repeat 5 - 6.

- 7

#### Applying a Number to All Images

In 4, **For All Pictures** → → Enter a number of copies to print →

#### Canceling Specified Number

In 6, enter 00 → →

#### Viewing Current Print Settings

In 6, **Check Settings** →

### Using Printers

Connect handset to a Bluetooth®-compatible printer and print images in Pictures folder.

- Activate Bluetooth® on the printer.
- Some images may not be sent depending on file type and size.

- 1 → **Data Folder** → → **Pictures** →

- 2 **Select image** → → **Print** →

- 3 **Via Bluetooth** → → **Select printer** →

- 4 **Yes** →
  - To cancel, press .

#### When Authorization Code is Required

Enter Authorization Code →

### Advanced

- Changing print settings (P.7-25)



## Photo Camera & Video Camera

### General

Accessing files from Viewfinder	In Photo/Video Viewfinder,  ➔ <b>Data Folder</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Select file</b> ➔
Opening Help	In Photo/Video Viewfinder,  ➔ <b>Help</b> ➔ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press  to toggle Help window for Touch Panel, indicator descriptions and key assignments.</li> </ul>
Changing function assigned to Camera Key ()	➔ <b>Camera</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Set Camera Key</b> ➔ ➔ <b>Select function</b> ➔

### Capturing

Activating Mobile Light	In Photo/Video Viewfinder,  ➔ <b>Mobile Light</b> ➔  ➔ <b>On or Automatic</b> ➔ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Low Light</b> is also available for still image capture.</li> <li>Do not use Mobile Light near people's faces or look into the light yourself.</li> </ul>
Adjusting brightness	In Photo/Video Viewfinder,  ➔ <b>Settings</b> ➔ ➔ <b>Exposure</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Adjust level</b>
Changing image quality	In Photo/Video Viewfinder,  ➔ <b>Settings</b> ➔ ➔ <b>Picture Quality or Video Quality</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Select quality</b> ➔
Adjusting focus quickly for close-up shots	In Photo/Video Viewfinder,  ➔ <b>Focus Setting</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Macro</b> ➔
Adjusting focus manually	In Photo/Video Viewfinder,  ➔ <b>Focus Setting</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Manual Focus</b> ➔  ➔  ➔ <b>Adjust focus</b> ➔ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To readjust focus, press .</li> </ul>

Locking focus	In Photo/Video Viewfinder, <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Frame subject in center of Display first.</li> <li>To start over, press  again.</li> </ul>
---------------	---

### Saving

Selecting automatic save option	<b>[Start Here]</b> In Photo/Video Viewfinder,  ➔ <b>Save Setting</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Auto Save</b> ➔  ➔ <b>See below</b> <b>For Still Images</b> <b>Select option</b> ➔ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When <b>Off</b>, press  after image capture to save.</li> </ul> <b>Saving Video Automatically</b> <b>On</b> ➔
Changing save location	In Photo/Video Viewfinder,  ➔ <b>Save Setting</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Save Pictures to or Save Videos to</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Select option</b> ➔

## Photo Camera

### General

Changing shutter click sound	In Photo Viewfinder,  ➔ <b>Shutter Setting</b> ➔ ➔ <b>Shutter Sound</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Select pattern</b> ➔ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Shutter click sounds for Continuous Shoot, Panorama Picture and Scanner are fixed.</li> </ul>
Switching indicator view	In Photo Viewfinder,  ➔ <b>Settings</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Display Setting</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Select option</b> ➔
Changing send option assigned to	In Photo Viewfinder,  ➔ <b>Settings</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Set Send Key</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Short press or Long press</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Select option</b> ➔ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Change send option separately for each key press method.</li> </ul>



Disabling quick transition to Viewfinder after saving images	In Photo Viewfinder,  → <b>Save Setting</b> →  → <b>Background Save</b> →  → <b>Off</b> →
--	---

## ■ Capturing

Adjusting camera's light sensitivity	In Photo Viewfinder,  → <b>Settings</b> →  → <b>ISO Sensitivity</b> →  → <b>Select level</b> → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ISO Sensitivity is <b>Auto (~800)</b> by default. However, 800 or higher sensitivity may be applied depending on environment.</li> </ul>
Changing image size	In Photo Viewfinder,  → <b>Picture Size</b> →  → <b>Select size</b> →
Adjusting smile detection level	In Photo Viewfinder,  → <b>Shutter Setting</b> →  → <b>Egao level</b> →  → <b>Select level</b> → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Lower the level when detection is slow.</li> </ul>
Adjusting color balance according to lighting conditions	In Photo Viewfinder,  → <b>Settings</b> →  → <b>White Balance</b> →  → <b>Select mode</b> →
Disabling shake reduction	In Photo Viewfinder,  → <b>Settings</b> →  → <b>Shake Reducing</b> →  → <b>Off</b> →

## ■ Focus

Setting Center Auto Focus	In Photo Viewfinder,  → <b>Focus Setting</b> →  → <b>Center Auto Focus</b> →
Canceling Continuous AF	In Photo Viewfinder,  → <b>Focus Setting</b> →  → <b>Continuous AF</b> →  → <b>Off</b> →

Canceling Chase Focus	In Photo Viewfinder,  → <b>Focus Setting</b> →  → <b>Chase Focus</b> →  → <b>Off</b> →
Changing Focus Mark	In Photo Viewfinder,  → <b>Focus Setting</b> →  → <b>Focus Mark</b> →  → <b>Select pattern</b> →

## ■ Correction/Preview

Checking image details before saving	<p>After image capture,  -  (Long) or Long Touch portion</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Available when Auto Save is <b>Off</b>.</li> <li>Use  or drag within enlarged portion to see other portions enlarged. Press  or double-tap to enlarge further. Press  to cancel.</li> <li>Key Assignments: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Portrait <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> (Upper left)  (Upper center)  (Upper right)</li> <li> (Left)  (Center)  (Right)</li> <li> (Lower left)  (Lower center)  (Lower right)</li> </ul> </li> <li>Landscape (rotated 90 degrees counterclockwise) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> (Upper left)  (Upper center)  (Upper right)</li> <li> (Left)  (Center)  (Right)</li> <li> (Lower left)  (Lower center)  (Lower right)</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>May be unavailable depending on image size, etc.</li> </ul>
--------------------------------------	--



Correcting portrait auto focus images	<small>(Start Here)</small> After image capture, $\rightarrow$ <i>Correlate to Face</i> $\rightarrow$ $\rightarrow$ See below <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Available when Auto Save is <i>Off</i>.</li> </ul>
	<b>Adjusting Face/Background Brightness Against sun</b> $\rightarrow$ $\rightarrow$
	<b>Blurring Out-of-Focus Portions Portrait</b> $\rightarrow$ $\rightarrow$
Brightening backlit subjects (Dynamic Range Adjustment)	After image capture, <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>May be unavailable or require access via Options menu depending on Auto Save setting.</li> </ul>
Seeking guidance for better shots	After image capture, tap  (Guide) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Follow onscreen instructions.</li> </ul>
<b>■ Panorama Picture</b>	
Changing Panorama settings	<small>(Start Here)</small> In Photo Viewfinder, $\rightarrow$ <i>Modes</i> $\rightarrow$ $\rightarrow$ <i>Panorama/Scanner</i> $\rightarrow$ $\rightarrow$ See below
	<b>Hiding Guides</b> <i>Assisting Lines</i> $\rightarrow$ $\rightarrow$ <i>Off</i> $\rightarrow$
	<b>Locking Display Brightness during Image Capture</b> <i>AE-Lock</i> $\rightarrow$ $\rightarrow$ <i>Enable</i> $\rightarrow$
Changing Panorama image preview method	In Panorama preview, $\rightarrow$ <i>Manual Scroll or Full Image</i> $\rightarrow$ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Available when Auto Save is <i>Off</i>.</li> </ul>

**■ Bluetooth® Watches**

Releasing shutter remotely with a Bluetooth® watch	<b>In Photo Viewfinder, press the corresponding button on Bluetooth® watch</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Connect handset to a Bluetooth® watch and set Set Remote Shutter to <i>On</i> beforehand. For details, see the Bluetooth® watch guide.</li> </ul>
Disabling remote shutter control via Bluetooth® watches	<b>In Photo Viewfinder,  <math>\rightarrow</math> <i>Shutter Setting</i> <math>\rightarrow</math> <math>\rightarrow</math> <i>Set Remote Shutter</i> <math>\rightarrow</math> <math>\rightarrow</math> <i>Off</i> <math>\rightarrow</math> </b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Available when a Bluetooth® watch is registered.</li> </ul>

**Video Camera**

Capturing images while recording video	<b>While recording, </b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Captured images are saved when saving recorded clip; open them via Review or Data Folder.</li> </ul>
Changing recording time/size	<b>In Video Viewfinder,  <math>\rightarrow</math> <i>Record Time/Size</i> <math>\rightarrow</math> <math>\rightarrow</math> <i>For Message or Extended Video</i> <math>\rightarrow</math> <math>\rightarrow</math> Select size <math>\rightarrow</math> </b>
Enlarging Viewfinder size	<b>In Video Viewfinder,  <math>\rightarrow</math> <i>Display Size</i> <math>\rightarrow</math> <math>\rightarrow</math> <i>Enlarge</i> <math>\rightarrow</math> </b>
Recording video without sound	<b>In Video Viewfinder,  <math>\rightarrow</math> <i>Settings</i> <math>\rightarrow</math> <math>\rightarrow</math> <i>Microphone</i> <math>\rightarrow</math> <math>\rightarrow</math> <i>Off</i> <math>\rightarrow</math> </b>
Changing video encoding	<b>In Video Viewfinder,  <math>\rightarrow</math> <i>Save Setting</i> <math>\rightarrow</math> <math>\rightarrow</math> <i>Video Encode or Audio Encode</i> <math>\rightarrow</math> <math>\rightarrow</math> Select option <math>\rightarrow</math> </b>
Disabling shake reduction	<b>In Video Viewfinder,  <math>\rightarrow</math> <i>Shake Reducing</i> <math>\rightarrow</math> <math>\rightarrow</math> <i>Off</i> <math>\rightarrow</math> </b>



## Editing Images

## Picture Editor

Using additional editing options	<p><b>Start Here</b> → <b>Data Folder</b> → <b>Pictures</b> → <b>Select file</b> → <b>Edit</b> → <b>Picture Editor</b> → <b>See below</b></p>
	<p><b>Changing Text/Outline Color</b></p> <p><b>Paste</b> → <b>Select text color</b> → <b>Select outline color</b></p>
	<p><b>Adding Text</b></p> <p><b>Paste</b> → <b>Free Text</b> → <b>Enter text</b> → <b>Move text</b></p>
	<p><b>Adding Dates</b></p> <p><b>Paste</b> → <b>Date</b> → <b>Move date</b></p>
	<p><b>Adding Stamps</b></p> <p><b>Stamp</b> → <b>Select stamp</b> → <b>Move stamp</b></p>
	<p><b>Correcting Image Parameters</b></p> <p><b>Correction</b> → <b>Select type</b></p>
	<p><b>Rotating Images</b></p> <p><b>Rotate</b> → <b>Select type</b></p>
	<p><b>Converting File Format</b></p> <p><b>File Format</b> → <b>File Format</b> → <b>Select format</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Changing file format may affect file size/image quality.</li> <li>To return to Picture Editor menu, press <b>BACK</b>.</li> </ul>
	<p><b>Changing File Size</b></p> <p><b>File Format</b> → <b>File Size</b> → <b>Select size</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Changing file size may affect image quality.</li> <li>To return to Picture Editor menu, press <b>BACK</b>.</li> </ul>

## Composite

Combining reduced images	<p><b>Start Here</b> → <b>Data Folder</b> → <b>Pictures</b> → <b>Select file</b> → <b>Edit</b> → <b>Composite</b> → <b>See below</b></p>
	<p><b>Creating Split Picture</b></p> <p><b>SplitPicture 480x854</b> or <b>SplitPicture 240x320</b> → <b>&lt;Empty&gt;</b> → <b>Select file</b></p> <p>When finished, <b>Enter name</b> → <b>Save here</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Repeat from selecting <b>&lt;Empty&gt;</b> as needed.</li> </ul>
	<p><b>Previewing Split Picture</b></p> <p>While creating Split Picture, <b>View Composite</b></p>
	<p><b>Changing Images</b></p> <p>While creating Split Picture, select image → <b>Select another</b></p>
DPOF	<p><b>Start Here</b> → <b>Settings</b> → <b>Connectivity</b> → <b>Memory Card</b> → <b>DPOF</b> → <b>See below</b></p>
	<p><b>Changing print settings</b></p> <p><b>Adding Dates to Prints</b></p> <p><b>Settings</b> → <b>Add Date</b> → <b>On</b></p> <p><b>Creating an Index Print</b></p> <p><b>Settings</b> → <b>Index Print</b> → <b>On</b></p> <p><b>Resetting</b></p> <p><b>Reset Settings</b> → <b>Yes</b></p>



## Mobile Camera

### ? Mobile camera won't activate/ shuts down automatically

- Battery may be low. Charge battery or install a charged battery.
- Leaving handset at high temperature may cause camera area to heat up, disabling mobile camera activation; wait a while and retry.
- Prolonged camera use may cause camera area to heat up, resulting in automatic shutdown; wait a while and retry.

### ? Cannot use Background Save or Auto Save

- Background Save/Auto Save is not available when Save Pictures to is set to *Ask Each Time*.

### ? Display went dark during image capture

- 933SH camera has built-in mechanical shutter and ND filter. Strong shocks to handset during image capture may close mechanical shutter for camera protection, resulting in blank Viewfinder. Reactivate mobile camera to reopen the shutter.

### ? Captured image appears all white

- When Long Exposure is active (⏱, etc. appears), images captured in daylight or good light appear all white.

### ? Image is dark or distorted

- Avoid capturing strong light sources (sun, lamps, etc.) in the background.

## Editing Images

### ? Cannot save/send edited images

- Edited images may be too large to save or send via mail.

## DPOF

### ? Cannot specify print settings properly

- If Memory Card image files have been deleted or renamed on PCs or other devices, reset print settings and start over with settings.





<b>Media Player</b> .....	<b>8-2</b>
Media Basics .....	8-2
<b>Music</b> .....	<b>8-4</b>
Playing Music.....	8-4
<b>Video</b> .....	<b>8-5</b>
Playing Video.....	8-5

<b>Playlists</b> .....	<b>8-6</b>
Using Playlists .....	8-6
<b>S! Appli</b> .....	<b>8-7</b>
Using S! Applications .....	8-7
<b>Additional Functions</b> .....	<b>8-8</b>
<b>Troubleshooting</b> .....	<b>8-13</b>

# 8

## Media Player & S! Applications



## Media Basics

Use Media Player to play music/video on 933SH.

- Download media files from Mobile Internet sites via Media Player or transfer files from PCs or AQUOS Blu-ray Disc recorders (hereafter "Blu-ray Disc recorders").
- Transfer PC music files and save them on Memory Card.

### Music File Support

#### My Music

(Handset/Memory Card)

Downloads/Transferred Files

#### SD AUDIO

(Memory Card)

Transferred SD-AudioFiles

#### WMA

(Memory Card)

Transferred WMA Files

### Video File Support

#### My Videos

(Handset/Memory Card)

Downloads/Recorded Files

#### Recorder Contents/ SD VIDEO

(Memory Card)

Transferred SD-Video Files

### Playback Precautions

- Media Player is not compatible with some recording/playback formats. Files may not play depending on the Memory Card status.
- Playback stops for incoming calls.
- When battery is low, Media Player will not play. Playback stops if battery runs low during playback.
- Turn down the volume if distortion is noticeable in Speaker sound.
- Handset plays media while it downloads (streaming/progressive download). Packet transmission fees apply even while playback is paused.

### Compatibility

- Files transferred from PCs cannot be used as ringtones or System Sounds.



## Downloading Media Files

Download media files from the Internet. Read information (price, expiry date, etc.) on the source site.

### 1 ➔ **Media Player** ➔



Media Player Menu

### 2 **Music or Videos** ➔

### 3 **Download Music or Download Videos** ➔

- Follow the links to download media.

#### Download via Music Search (Japanese) In **Music Search** ➔

- Follow onscreen instructions.

## Saving Music Files from PCs

- Use software to convert music file format.
- For software usage and specifications, see the provider's website, etc.
- SoftBank does not guarantee compatibility with any software.
- USB Cable may be purchased separately.

### Handling Transferred Files

- Copyright laws limit duplicated material to private use only.
- Files created with PC software, etc. may not play.
- Comply with copyright and other intellectual property laws when using obtained files.

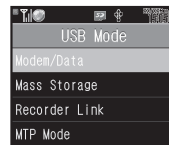
## Saving AAC Files

Convert PC music files to 933SH-compatible format (P.15-20), then save to corresponding Memory Card folder (P.15-24) via Mass Storage. Install USB Cable driver beforehand.

## Saving WMA Files

Follow these steps to save WMA files via compatible software:  
(Copy protected files can only be played on the handset with which the files were transferred.)

### 1 **Connect handset to a PC via USB Cable**



### 2 **MTP Mode** ➔

- Copy music from PC. Refer to the software's help menu for operational instructions.

### 3 ➔ **Yes** ➔ ➔ **Connection ends**

- Disconnect USB Cable.

#### If Menu in 1 Does Not Appear

- Follow these steps:  
 ➔ **Settings** ➔ ➔ **Connectivity**  
 ➔ **USB Mode** ➔ ➔ **From**
  - Operations on the PC may be required; if prompted, follow onscreen instructions.



# Playing Music

1 → **Media Player** → → **Music** →

2 **My Music** → → **Select tab (folder)**



Music Playlists Window

3 **All Music** →

4 **Select file** →



Music Playback Window

- Album art appears for compatible Chaku-Uta Full® files. (WMA album art is not supported.)

## Using Other Functions while Playing Music

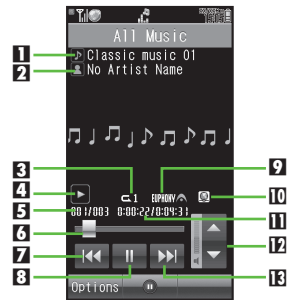
- After , or
- To stop playback, follow these steps in Standby: → **Yes** →
- Playing SD AUDIO or WMA Files**  
In , **SD AUDIO** or **WMA** → → **From**
- Searching Music Files**  
After , → **Search** → → Enter search text →
- Lyric Display-Compatible Files**  
• Press to display lyrics.

## Music Playback Operations

<b>Replay</b>	(Long Press: rewind*)
<b>Skip Forward</b>	(Long Press: fast forward*)
<b>Volume Down</b>	(Long Press: mute)
<b>Volume Up or Cancel Mute</b>	
<b>Pause</b>	
<b>Stop</b>	While paused,
<b>Switch Sound Output</b>	(Long)
<b>Open Help</b>	

\*Release for playback.

## Music Playback Window Description



<b>1</b> Title	<b>8</b> Pause*
<b>2</b> Artist name	<b>9</b> Sound Effects
<b>3</b> Playback Mode	<b>10</b> Information link
<b>4</b> Status	<b>11</b> Elapsed time
<b>5</b> Track number	<b>12</b> Volume control*
<b>6</b> Playback slider*	<b>13</b> Fast forward*
<b>7</b> Rewind*	

\*Use Touch Panel.

## Advanced

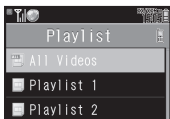
- Resuming from stopped point
- Specifying start point
- Accessing linked information
- Switching audio output to wireless device
- Playing repeatedly or randomly
- Changing Sound Effects (P.8-8)



## Playing Video

1 → **Media Player** → → **Videos** →

2 **My Videos** → → **Phone Memory or Memory Card** →



Video Playlists Window

3 **All Videos** →

4 **Select file** →



Video Playback Window

5 → **Playback stops**

**Playing Video Files Transferred from Blu-ray Disc Recorders**

In 2, **Recorder Contents** → → 4

**Playing SD VIDEO Files**

In 2, **SD VIDEO** → → 4

**Searching Video Files**

After 3, → **Search** → → Enter search text →

**At Alarm Time**

- Playback stops.

**Video Recorded on Other Devices**

- Video image may appear rotated.

### Video Playback Operations

For pause, volume up/down, sound output or help, see P.8-4 "Music Playback Operations."

<b>Replay</b>	(Long Press: rewind)
<b>Skip Forward</b>	(Long Press while paused: advance frame, Long Press: fast forward)
<b>Toggle Display Size</b>	

\*Release for playback.

### Video Playback Window Description



1	Title	6	Elapsed time
2	Author name	7	Volume
3	Clip number	8	Information link
4	Status	9	Sound Effects
5	Playback Mode	10	Pause

\*Use Touch Panel.

### Advanced

- Resuming from stopped point
- Specifying start point
- Accessing linked information
- Switching audio output to wireless device
- Playing repeatedly or randomly
- Changing Sound Effects
- Changing playback size
- Setting Backlight status
- Hiding linked information (P.8-8)



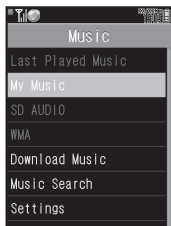
## Using Playlists

Playlists store playback orders. Add favorite media files to Playlists, or organize files by artist/genre. Playlists store only file locations. Source files remain in All Music or All Videos.

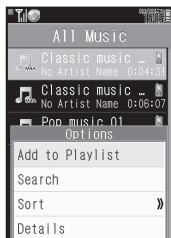
### Adding to Playlist

Follow these steps to add a music file to **プレイリスト1**:

- 1 → **Media Player** → → **Music** →



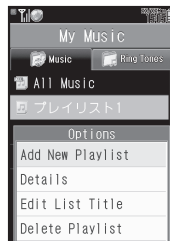
- 2 **My Music** →
- 3 **All Music** → → **Select file** →



- 4 **Add to Playlist** → → **プレイリスト1** →

### Renaming Playlists

- 1 In Playlists window, select **Playlist** →



- 2 **Edit List Title** → → **Enter name** →



### Advanced

- Organizing Playlists
- Sorting files
- Opening properties
- Deleting/editing SD AUDIO files
- Deleting All WMA files
- Downloading Contents Keys (P.8-9)
- Organizing Playlists
- Sorting files
- Downloading Contents Keys
- Opening properties
- Deleting SD VIDEO files
- Renaming files transferred from Blu-ray Disc recorders (And more on P.8-10)



## Using S! Applications

Try out the preloaded S! Applications or download and use 933SH-compatible S! Applications, including games. Refer to the S! Application's help menu or the source Internet site, etc. for operational instructions.

### Remote Control

- Use *ファミリツカヘコ* for AQUOS

S! Application (Japanese) to control a TV, VCR, etc. via infrared.

- 1 → **S! Appli** →
- 2 **S! Appli Library** →



S! Appli Library

- 3 **Select application** →

### Network S! Applications

- A message appears indicating that Internet connection is required. Follow onscreen instructions.

### Incoming Calls

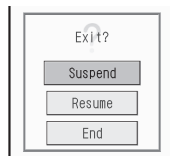
- Incoming calls automatically pause S! Application.

### Opening S! Appli Notification History

In , **Notification History** →

## Exiting S! Applications

- 1



- 2 **End** →

### Pausing S! Applications

In , **Suspend** →

### Resuming S! Applications

→ **Resume** →

- Select **Cancel** to open Main Menu and keep the S! Application paused. (Additional function activation may be disabled depending on the S! Application.)
- Select **End** to end the S! Application.

## Advanced

- Downloading S! Applications ● Adjusting S! Application sound volume ● Canceling surround effect ● Setting handset responses to incoming transmissions ● Setting S! Application to activate in Standby ● Setting Permissions ● Opening properties (P.8-11)
- Moving S! Applications to Memory Card ● Changing S! Application settings ● Deleting S! Applications ● Restoring default S! Application settings
- Restoring default S! Appli Library ● Synchronizing Memory Card S! Applications with 933SH ● Opening Java™ license information (P.8-12)



## Media Playback

### Music & Video

Resuming from stopped point	● → <i>Media Player</i> → ● → <i>Music or Videos</i> → ● → <i>Last Played Music or Last Played Video</i> → ●
Specifying start point	During playback, ⊞ → <i>Time Search</i> → ● → Enter time → ●
Accessing linked information	During playback, ⊞ → <i>Access Web Link</i> → ● → Yes → ●
Switching audio output to wireless device	● → <i>Media Player</i> → ● → <i>Settings</i> → ● → <i>Sound Output</i> → ● → <i>Bluetooth Device</i> → ●

### Music

Playing repeatedly or randomly	[Start Here] During playback, ⊞ → <i>Playback Mode</i> → ● → See below
	<b>Repeat One File</b> <i>Repeat</i> → ●
	<b>Repeat All Files</b> <i>Repeat All</i> → ●
	<b>Play Randomly</b> <i>Random</i> → ●
	<b>Repeat Randomly</b> <i>Random Repeat</i> → ●
Changing Sound Effects	During playback, ⊞ → <i>Sound Effects</i> → ● → Select effect → ●

### Video

Some functions may be unavailable depending on file.

Playing repeatedly or randomly	[Start Here] During playback, ⊞ → <i>Settings</i> → ● → <i>Playback Mode</i> → ● → See below
	<b>Repeat One File</b> <i>Repeat</i> → ●
	<b>Repeat All Files</b> <i>Repeat All</i> → ●
Changing Sound Effects	During playback, ⊞ → <i>Settings</i> → ● → <i>Sound Effects</i> → ● → Select effect → ●
	During playback, ⊞ → <i>Settings</i> → ● → <i>Display Size</i> → ● → Select size → ●
Changing playback size	During playback, ⊞ → <i>Settings</i> → ● → <i>Display Size</i> → ● → Select size → ●
Setting Backlight status	During playback, ⊞ → <i>Settings</i> → ● → <i>Backlight</i> → ● → Select option → ● • Selecting <b>Normal Settings</b> applies Display Backlight settings.
Hiding linked information	During playback, ⊞ → <i>Settings</i> → ● → <i>Web Link Setting</i> → ● → Off → ●





## Managing Music Files

Organizing Playlists	<p><b>Start Here</b> → <b>Media Player</b> → <b>Music</b> → <b>My Music</b> → <b>Select tab (folder)</b> → <b>See below</b></p> <p><b>Adding New Playlists</b>  <b>Add New Playlist</b> → <b>Enter name</b></p> <p><b>Deleting Playlists</b>  <b>Select Playlist</b> → <b>Delete Playlist</b> → <b>Yes</b></p> <p><b>Deleting Playlist Files</b>  <b>Select Playlist</b> → <b>Select file</b> → <b>Delete</b> → <b>Yes</b></p> <p><b>Changing File Order</b>  <b>Select Playlist</b> → <b>Select file</b> → <b>Change Order</b> → <b>Move file</b></p>
	<p>→ <b>Media Player</b> → <b>Music</b> → <b>My Music</b> → <b>Select tab (folder)</b> → <b>All Music</b> → <b>Sort</b> → <b>Select option</b></p>
	<p><b>Start Here</b> → <b>Media Player</b> → <b>Music</b> → <b>See below</b></p> <p><b>SD AUDIO Files</b>  <b>SD AUDIO</b> → <b>All Music</b> → <b>Select file</b> → <b>Details</b></p> <p><b>Other Files</b>  <b>My Music</b> → <b>Select tab (folder)</b> → <b>Select Playlist</b> → <b>Select file</b> → <b>Details</b></p>
Sorting files	
Opening properties	

## Deleting/editing SD AUDIO files

**Start Here** → **Media Player** → **Music** → **SD AUDIO** → **See below**

## Deleting Single Files

**All Music** → **Select file** → **Delete Track** → **Yes**

- Source files will be deleted.

## Deleting All Entries

**All Music** → **Del. All Tracks** → **Yes** → **Yes**

- Source files will be deleted.

## Editing Title/Artist

**All Music** → **Select file** → **Edit** → **Select item** → **Enter title or name**

## Deleting All WMA files

→ **Media Player** → **Settings** → **Delete All WMA** → **Enter Handset Code** → **Yes**

- Source files will be deleted.

## Downloading Contents Keys

→ **Media Player** → **Music** → **My Music** → **Select tab (folder)** → **Select Playlist** → **Select file (with ⌘)** → **Yes**

- Follow onscreen instructions.



## Managing Video Files

Organizing Playlists	<p><b>Start Here</b> → <b>Media Player</b> → <b>Videos</b> → <b>My Videos</b> → <b>Phone Memory or Memory Card</b> → See below</p> <p><b>Adding New Playlists</b> Add New Playlist → Enter name →</p> <p><b>Deleting Playlists</b> Select Playlist → Delete Playlist → Yes →</p> <p><b>Deleting Playlist Files</b> Select Playlist → Select file → Delete → Yes →</p> <p><b>Changing File Order</b> Select Playlist → Select file → Change Order → Move file →</p>
	<p>→ <b>Media Player</b> → <b>Videos</b> → <b>My Videos</b> → <b>Phone Memory or Memory Card</b> → <b>All Videos</b> → Sort → Select option →</p>
	<p>→ <b>Media Player</b> → <b>Videos</b> → <b>My Videos</b> → <b>Phone Memory or Memory Card</b> → <b>All Videos</b> → Select file (with %) → Yes →</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Follow onscreen instructions.</li> </ul>
Sorting files	
Downloading Contents Keys	

Opening properties	<p><b>Start Here</b> → <b>Media Player</b> → <b>Videos</b> → See below</p> <p><b>SD VIDEO Files</b> SD VIDEO → Select file → Details →</p> <p><b>Files Transferred from Blu-ray Disc Recorders Recorder Contents</b> → Select file → Details →</p> <p><b>Other Files</b> My Videos → Phone Memory or Memory Card → Select Playlist → Select file → Details →</p>
	<p>→ <b>Media Player</b> → <b>Videos</b> → <b>SD VIDEO</b> → Select file → Delete → Yes →</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Source files will be deleted.</li> </ul>
	<p>→ <b>Media Player</b> → <b>Videos</b> → <b>Recorder Contents</b> → Select file → Rename → Enter name →</p>
Deleting SD VIDEO files	
Renaming files transferred from Blu-ray Disc recorders	
Checking Memory Card memory status	
Deleting files transferred from Blu-ray Disc recorders	<p><b>Start Here</b> → <b>Media Player</b> → <b>Videos</b> → <b>Recorder Contents</b> → See below</p> <p><b>Single Files</b> Select file → Delete → Yes →</p> <p><b>All Files</b> Delete All → Enter Handset Code → Yes →</p>



## S! Applications

Downloading S! Applications	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → S! Appli → ● → S! Appli Library → ●</li> <li>→ Download → ●</li> <li>● Follow onscreen instructions.</li> </ul>
Adjusting S! Application sound volume	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → S! Appli → ● → Settings → ● →</li> <li>Application Volume → ● → Adjust level → ●</li> </ul>
Canceling surround effect	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → S! Appli → ● → Settings → ● →</li> <li>Surround → ● → Off → ●</li> </ul>
Setting handset responses to incoming transmissions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Start Here ● → S! Appli → ● → Settings → ●</li> <li>→ Calls &amp; Alarms → ● → See below</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Showing Calls</li> <li>Select item → ● → Show Call Notice → ●</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Pausing S! Application for Incoming Mail</li> <li>Incoming Message → ● → Message Priority → ●</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Showing Alarm Notice</li> <li>Alarm → ● → Alarm Notice → ●</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Showing Incoming S! Appli Request Notice</li> <li>Notification → ● → Start Notice → ●</li> </ul>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Start Here ● → S! Appli → ● → See below</li> </ul>
Setting S! Application to activate in Standby	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Activating Screensaver</li> <li>Settings → ● → Screensaver → ● → Switch On/Off → ● → On → ●</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Setting Screensaver</li> <li>S! Appli Library → ● → Select application → ●</li> <li>☰ → As Screensaver → ●</li> <li>● As Screensaver appears for compatible S! Applications.</li> <li>● Screensaver may not start or operate correctly when an external device (Headphones, etc.) is connected to handset.</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Changing Screensaver Activation Time</li> <li>Settings → ● → Screensaver → ● →</li> <li>Activation Time → ● → Enter time → ●</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Disabling Automatic Screensaver Restart</li> <li>Settings → ● → Screensaver → ● → Stop Auto Start → ● → On → ●</li> </ul>
Setting Permissions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Start Here ● → S! Appli → ● → S! Appli Library</li> <li>→ ● → Select application → ☰ → Permission</li> <li>→ ● → See below</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Customizing Permissions for S! Appli Operations</li> <li>Select item → ● → Select option → ●</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Resetting Permission Settings</li> <li>Reset Settings → ● → Yes → ●</li> </ul>
Opening properties	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → S! Appli → ● → S! Appli Library → ●</li> <li>→ Select application → ☰ → Details → ●</li> </ul>



### Moving S! Applications to Memory Card

- → S! Appli → ● → S! Appli Library → ● → ● → Select application → ● (□/√) → Complete selection → ☰ → Move to Card → ●
- When an older version of the S! Application is saved, choose **Yes** or **No** and press ●.
- Repeat application selection step as needed before pressing ☰.
- Some S! Applications cannot be moved to Memory Card.

### Changing S! Application settings

Start Here ● → S! Appli → ● → Settings → ●  
→ See below

#### Activating Notification Setting

Notification Setting → ● → On → ●

#### Setting Backlight Status

Backlight → ● → Switch On/Off → ● →

Select option → ●

- Selecting **Normal Settings** applies Display Backlight settings.

#### Disabling Backlight Flashing

Backlight → ● → Blink → ● → Off → ●

#### Disabling Vibration

Vibration → ● → Off → ●

### Deleting S! Applications

- → S! Appli → ● → S! Appli Library → ● → Select application → ☰ → Delete → ● → Yes → ●
- Handset Code may be required.
- Cancel Screensaver to delete Screensaver S! Application.

### Restoring default S! Application settings

- → S! Appli → ● → Settings → ● → Set to Default → ● → Enter Handset Code → ● → Yes → ●

### Restoring default S! Appli Library

- → S! Appli → ● → Settings → ● → Memory All Clear → ● → Enter Handset Code → ● → Yes → ●
- Delete IC Card data beforehand. (Procedures to delete IC Card data vary by Lifestyle-Appli; contact Osaifu-Keitai<sup>®</sup> service providers for details.)
- Memory All Clear deletes all downloaded S! Applications and Lifestyle-Applications; Near Chat access restriction will be canceled.

### Synchronizing Memory Card S! Applications with 933SH

- → S! Appli → ● → Settings → ● → Synchronization → ● → Yes → ●

### Opening Java™ license information

- → S! Appli → ● → Information → ●



## Music

### ? How do I delete files in All Music?

- Delete All Music files in My Music via Data Folder (Music or Ring Songs-Tones).

### ? WMA files do not appear (WMA files are not transferable)

- Did you use 933SH to transfer the files? Copy protected files can only be played on the handset with which the files were transferred.
- Copy protection information may be corrupted; perform **Delete All WMA** and re-transfer the files.
- Files transferred via Mass Storage appear when moved to corresponding Memory Card folder. (Transfer copy protected files via MTP Mode.)
- WMA files may be corrupted; perform **Delete All WMA** and retry.

### ? Cannot play WMA files

- Playback rights may have expired (license not found message appears); re-transfer the files. If files still cannot be played, they may be corrupted; perform **Delete All WMA** and retry.

## Video

### ? How do I delete files in All Videos?

- Delete All Videos files via Data Folder (Videos).

### ? Cannot play video files

- Files created with PC software, etc. may not play.

## S! Applications

### ? Cannot move S! Applications to Memory Card

- Memory Card memory may be low or the S! Application may already be saved.

### ? S! Applications do not pause for incoming transmissions despite Calls & Alarms settings

- Regardless of setting, a message appears for Screensaver S! Applications.



<b>Calendar &amp; Tasks</b> .....	<b>9-2</b>
Calendar .....	9-2
Tasks .....	9-5
<b>Alarms</b> .....	<b>9-7</b>
Using Alarms .....	9-7
<b>Wakeup TV</b> .....	<b>9-9</b>
Using Wakeup TV .....	9-9
<b>Relaxation Time</b> .....	<b>9-11</b>
Playing Animation with Music & Illumination .....	9-11
<b>Calculator</b> .....	<b>9-12</b>
Using Calculator .....	9-12
<b>Expenses Memo</b> .....	<b>9-13</b>
Adding Expenses .....	9-13
<b>Osaifu-Keitai®</b> .....	<b>9-14</b>
Osaifu-Keitai® (Japanese) .....	9-14
Locking IC Card .....	9-15
<b>Simulated Call</b> .....	<b>9-18</b>
Faking Incoming Calls .....	9-18
<b>Stopwatch</b> .....	<b>9-19</b>
Using Stopwatch .....	9-19
<b>Countdown Timer</b> .....	<b>9-20</b>
Using Countdown Timer .....	9-20
<b>World Clock</b> .....	<b>9-21</b>
Opening World Clock .....	9-21
<b>Hour Minder</b> .....	<b>9-22</b>
Using Hour Minder .....	9-22

<b>Pedometer</b> .....	<b>9-23</b>
Using Pedometer .....	9-23
<b>Compass</b> .....	<b>9-25</b>
Using Compass .....	9-25
<b>S! GPS Navi</b> .....	<b>9-26</b>
Using S! GPS Navi .....	9-26
<b>Document Viewer</b> .....	<b>9-29</b>
Opening PC Documents .....	9-29
<b>Notepad</b> .....	<b>9-30</b>
Saving Text .....	9-30
<b>ASCII Art</b> .....	<b>9-31</b>
Using ASCII Art .....	9-31
<b>Voice Recorder</b> .....	<b>9-32</b>
Recording/Playing Voice .....	9-32
<b>Scan Barcode</b> .....	<b>9-33</b>
Scanning Barcodes .....	9-33
<b>Create QR Code</b> .....	<b>9-34</b>
Creating QR Codes .....	9-34
<b>Scan Card</b> .....	<b>9-35</b>
Scanning Business Cards .....	9-35
<b>Scan Text</b> .....	<b>9-36</b>
Scanning Text .....	9-36
<b>Kanji Grabber</b> .....	<b>9-37</b>
Using Kanji Grabber .....	9-37
<b>Additional Functions</b> .....	<b>9-38</b>
<b>Troubleshooting</b> .....	<b>9-51</b>

# 9

## Handy Extras

## Calendar

### Opening Calendar

- 1 **Calendar**



Calendar Window

### Toggling View

Press to toggle Calendar window.



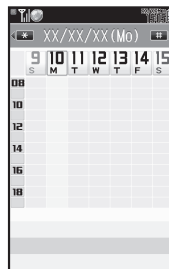
Month View



3Month View



6Month View



Week View

### Key Assignments

#### ■ All Views

Open Previous Page	
Open Next Page	
Open Help	

#### ■ Month/3Month View

Select Date	
Go to Current Date	

#### ■ 6Month View

Go to Current Month	
Select Month	

#### ■ Week View

Select Date	
Select Time Block	

### Advanced

- Changing default view
- Jumping to specified date
- Changing date color
- Selecting task view option
- Adding stamps (Month/3Month View)
- Hiding schedules
- Saving additional holidays
- Removing/restoring holidays (P.9-38)

## Saving Schedules

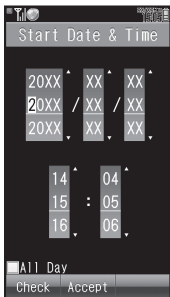
Follow these steps to save subject, start/end date/time, Alarm and schedule details: (Enter Subject or Description to save entry.)

- 1 In Calendar window, select date →



- 2 <Add New Entry> →

- 3 Enter subject →



- 4 Enter start date/time →



- 5 End: → Enter end date/time →

- 6 Alarm: →

- 7 Alarm Time: → Select time →

- 8 Description: → Enter schedule details →

- 9 → Saved

### All-Day Schedule

In 4, → From 3

### Custom Alarm Time

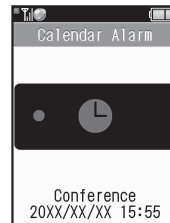
In 7, Alarm Time: → Other →

→ Enter date/time → → →

From 3

## At Alarm Time

Alarm activates; sounds/vibrates by related settings.



### Stopping Alarm to Return to Standby

- While Alarm sounds/vibrates, press ●, ☰ or [Mute].

### Stopping Alarm to Open Schedule

- While Alarm sounds/vibrates, press a key other than ●, ☰ or [Mute].

### When Another Function is Active

- Alarm may not activate until handset returns to Standby.

### Incoming Calls

- Active Alarm stops for incoming calls. Information window opens after handset returns to Standby.

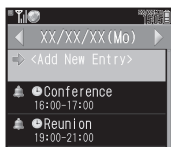
## Advanced

- Setting Category/Location ● Creating Categories ● Saving repetitive schedules (And more on P.9-39 - 9-40)



## Opening Schedules/Tasks

- 1 In Calendar window, select date →



Schedule List

- 2 Select schedule or task →

- 3 → Standby returns

## Opening Task List

In , select task → → *Go to Tasks* →

## Accessing Secret Entries

[Calendar Window] → *Unlock Temporarily* → → Enter Handset Code →

## Opening Related Message

Open schedule-related messages saved from Messaging message list.

- 1 In schedule list, select schedule →
- 2 → *Related Mail* →
  - Related message opens.
  - To return to schedule window, press .

## Deleting Message from Schedule

After , → *Related Mail:* → → → →

## Deleting Schedules

## ■ One Entry

- 1 In schedule list, select schedule →
- 2 *Delete* → → *This Appointment* → → *Yes* →

## ■ All Entries of the Day

- 1 In Calendar window, select date →
- 2 *Delete* → → *All This Day* → → *Yes* →

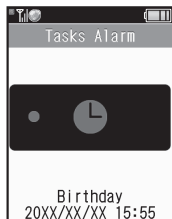
## Advanced

- Searching entries Checking memory status Deleting all entries Deleting entries by specifying week (Week View) Deleting entries by specifying month (Month/3Month View) Deleting entries in six months (6Month View) (P.9-40)



## At Alarm Time

Alarm activates; sounds/vibrates by related settings.



## Stopping Alarm to Return to Standby

- While Alarm sounds/vibrates, press or .

## Stopping Alarm to Open Task

- While Alarm sounds/vibrates, press a key other than , , or .

## When Another Function is Active

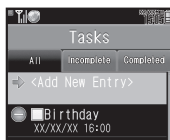
- Alarm may not activate until handset returns to Standby.

## Incoming Calls

- Active Alarm stops for incoming calls. Information window opens after handset returns to Standby.

## Opening Tasks

- 1 ➔ **Tools** ➔ ➔ **In PIM/ Life menu, Tasks** ➔



Task List

- Use to open completed or uncompleted task list.

- 2 **Select task** ➔



- 3 ➔ **Standby returns**

## Accessing Secret Entries

After 1, ➔ **Unlock Temporarily**

➔ ➔ **Enter Handset Code** ➔

## Marking Tasks as Completed

After 1, select task ➔

## Deleting Tasks

## One Entry

- 1 In task list, select task ➔

- 2 **Delete** ➔

- 3 **This Task** ➔ ➔ **Yes** ➔

## All Completed Tasks

- 1 In task list,

- 2 **Delete** ➔

- 3 **All Comp. Tasks** ➔ ➔ **Yes** ➔

## Advanced

- Searching tasks
- Sorting tasks by priority
- Checking memory status
- Deleting all tasks (P.9-41)

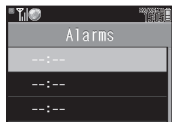
## Using Alarms

### Setting Alarm

Follow these steps to set Alarm to sound at a specific time on a specific day of the week:

(Set Snooze--Alarm repeats at set interval--Alarm Volume and Duration.)

- 1** **Alarms**



Alarm List

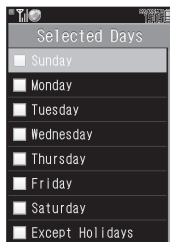
- 2** **Enter hour (24-hour format)** **Enter minutes**



- 3** **Repeat:**



- 4** **Selected Days**



- 5** **Select day** **Complete selection**

- 6** **Snooze:**

- 7** **Select interval**   
 • For custom intervals, select *Other*.

- 8** **Alarm Volume:**

- 9** **Adjust level**

- 10** **Duration:**

- 11** **Select time**   
 • For custom Duration, select *Other*.

- 12** **Saved**   
 • For more settings, repeat **2** - **12**.

- 13** **Alarm setting ends**

#### Activating Alarm Once or Daily

- In **4**, *Once or Every Day (All)*   
 **From** **5**

#### Selecting/Canceling All Days

- In **5**, **Check All or Uncheck All**

#### Excluding Holidays

- In **5**, select day **Complete selection**   
 **From** **5**

### Advanced

- Editing entries • Saving entry name • Changing Alarm tone/video • Setting handset to vibrate at Alarm Time • Sounding Alarm tone even in Manner mode • Activating Alarm based on World Clock time (P.9-42)

**At Alarm Time**

Alarm activates; sounds/vibrates by related settings.

**Stopping Alarm**

- Press a key.

**When Another Function is Active**

- Alarm may not activate until handset returns to Standby.

**Incoming Calls**

- Active Alarm stops for incoming calls. Information window opens after handset returns to Standby.

**When Snooze is Set**

Alarm repeats at the set interval. Other Alarms do not activate while handset is Snoozing.

**Canceling Snooze**

While Snoozing,  → Yes →

- Snooze is automatically canceled after a period of time.

**Canceling Alarm**

**1** In Alarm list, select entry →

**2** **Switch Off** →

- Reactivate entry to use the same settings.

**Reactivating Entry**

In , **Switch On** →

**Deleting Alarm****One Entry**

**1** In Alarm list, select entry →

**2** **Reset Alarm** →

**3** **Yes** →

**All Entries**

**1** In Alarm list, select entry →

**2** **Clear All** →

**3** **Enter Handset Code** →   
→ **Yes** →

## Using Wakeup TV

### Setting Wakeup TV

Follow these steps to activate TV at a specific time on a specific day of the week:

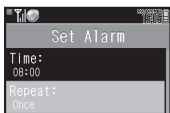
- Complete TV Area Setup beforehand.
- TV may not activate in poor signal conditions.

- 1**  $\Rightarrow$  **Tools**  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  **In PIM/ Life menu, Wakeup TV**  $\Rightarrow$



Wakeup TV List

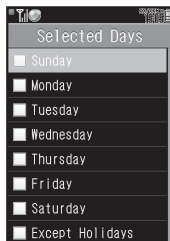
- 2**  $--:--$   $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  **Enter hour (24-hour format)**  $\Rightarrow$  **Enter minutes**  $\Rightarrow$



Wakeup TV Menu

- 3** **Repeat:**  $\Rightarrow$

- 4** **Selected Days**  $\Rightarrow$



- 5** **Select day**  $\Rightarrow$   $(\square/\checkmark)$   $\Rightarrow$  **Complete selection**  $\Rightarrow$

- 6** **Channel:**  $\Rightarrow$

- 7** **Select channel**  $\Rightarrow$

- 8**  $\Rightarrow$  **Saved**

- For more settings, repeat **2** - **8**.

- 9**  $\Rightarrow$  **Wakeup TV setting ends**

### Activating TV Once or Daily

- In **4**, **Once or Every Day (All)**  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  **From**

### Selecting/Canceling All Days

- In **5**,  $(\square/\checkmark)$   $\Rightarrow$  **Check All or Uncheck All**  $\Rightarrow$

### Excluding Holidays

- In **5**, select day  $\Rightarrow$   $(\square/\checkmark)$   $\Rightarrow$  **Complete selection**  $\Rightarrow$  **Except Holidays**  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  **From**

### Canceling Alarm

- Alarm activates at Wakeup TV time. To cancel Alarm, follow these steps:  
[Wakeup TV Menu] **Alarm On/Off:**  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  **Off**  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  **From**

### Adjusting Alarm Volume

- [Wakeup TV Menu] **Alarm Volume:**  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  **Adjust level**  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  **From**

### Advanced

- Editing entries
- Changing Alarm tone/video
- Sounding Alarm tone even in Manner mode (P.9-42)

## At Wakeup TV Time

TV activates after Alarm.



## Stopping Alarm Instantly

- While Alarm sounds/vibrates, press a key.

## When Another Function is Active

- TV may not activate depending on the function.

## After TV is On for a Period of Time

- Confirmation appears. Choose **Yes** and press  to exit TV.

## Canceling Wakeup TV

**1** In Wakeup TV list, select entry ➔

**2** **Wakeup TV Off** ➔

- Reactivate entry to use the same settings.

## Reactivating Entry

In , **Wakeup TV On** ➔

## Deleting Wakeup TV

## ■ One Entry

**1** In Wakeup TV list, select entry ➔

**2** **Reset Alarm** ➔

**3** **Yes** ➔

## ■ All Entries

**1** In Wakeup TV list, select entry ➔

**2** **Clear All** ➔

**3** **Enter Handset Code** ➔

➔ **Yes** ➔

## Playing Animation with Music & Illumination

Play preset animations or downloaded Flash® files with music and illumination. Set playback time, volume and illumination pattern as needed.

- 1 → **Tools** → → In PIM/  
Life menu, **Relaxation Time**  
→
- 2 **Select type** →
  - Animation appears.
  - For **Flash**®, select a file and press .
    - Key LEDs do not illuminate for soundless Flash® files.

### Setting Relaxation Time

Follow these steps to set playback time, volume and Key Illumination pattern:

- 1 → **Tools** → → In PIM/  
Life menu, **Relaxation Time**  
→
- 2 **Settings** →



- 3 **Playback Time** →
- 4 **Select time** →
  - For custom playback time, select **Other**.
- 5 **Volume** →
- 6 **Adjust level** →

### 7 Set Key Illumi →



- 8 **Key Pattern** →
- 9 **Select pattern** → →
- 10 → **Standby returns**

### Disabling Key Illumination

In , **Set Key Illumi** → → **Switch On/Off** → → **Off** → →



## Using Calculator

- 1  $\rightarrow$  **Tools**  $\rightarrow$   $\rightarrow$  **In PIM/**  
**Life menu, Calculator**  $\rightarrow$



Calculator Window

- 2 **Use Keypad to enter digits**  
 $\rightarrow$  **Calculate**
- 3  $\rightarrow$  **Calculator ends**

Key Assignments	
<b>+</b> (Add)	
<b>-</b> (Subtract)	
<b>x</b> (Multiply)	
<b>÷</b> (Divide)	
<b>=</b> (Sum)	
<b>C/CE</b> (Clear)	
<b>CM</b> (Clear Memory)	
<b>RM</b> (Recall Memory)	
<b>M+</b> (Add to Memory)	
<b>.</b> (Decimal)	
<b>+/-</b> (Positive/Negative Value)	
<b>%</b> (Percentage)	

### Memory Calculation

- Clear Memory before starting new Memory calculations.
- Numbers saved in Memory remain until handset power is turned off.

### Incoming Calls

- Calculations are not affected. End the call to return to Calculator.

### Using % Function

Use to find definite percentage of a known value.

Example: Calculate 30% of 800,000

- Enter 800,000  $\rightarrow$  x  $\rightarrow$  30  $\rightarrow$  %**  
**■ 240,000 appears.**

### Advanced

- Copying calculation results
- Changing exchange rate for currency conversion
- Converting currencies (P.9-42)

## Adding Expenses

### Entering Expenses

- 1 Enter amount →



- 2



- 3 Select Category → → Saved

#### Saving under Custom Category

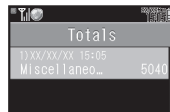
In , Other → → Enter name →

### Checking Entries

- 1 → Tools → → In PIM/  
Life menu, Expenses Memo  
→



- 2 Totals →



Expenses Memo List

- 3 → Standby returns

#### Saving Entries to Notepad

[Expenses Memo List] → Save to  
Notepad →

- All expense details are saved as a single entry.

### Deleting Entries

#### One Entry

- 1 In Expenses Memo list,  
select entry →

- 2 Delete Item →

- 3 Yes →

#### All Entries

- 1 In Expenses Memo list,

- 2 Delete All →

- 3 Enter Handset Code →   
→ Yes →

### Advanced

Changing Category of saved entry Changing amount Renaming Categories (P.9-43)

## Osaifu-Keitai® (Japanese)

Osaifu-Keitai® describes IC Card-equipped handsets that support e-money or credit functions/services. Osaifu-Keitai® encompasses a range of IC Card-based services on FeliCa-compatible SoftBank handsets. 933SH supports Osaifu-Keitai®. To use e-money, e-ticketing and reward points, etc., hold handset over a compatible reader/writer at shops, restaurants, and other retail outlets, etc.

### Basics

Before using Osaifu-Keitai®, activate Lifestyle-Appli, complete registration, customize settings and charge accounts.

#### Starting Lifestyle-Appli

- ➔ *Tools* ➔ ● ➔ In PIM/Life menu, *Osaifu-Keitai* ➔ ● ➔ *Lifestyle-Appli* ➔ ● ➔ *Select application* ➔ ●

#### Lifestyle-Appli Precautions

- Contact Osaifu-Keitai® service providers for Lifestyle-Appli registration and usage details.
- Keep service passwords/customer service contact information, etc. in a separate place.

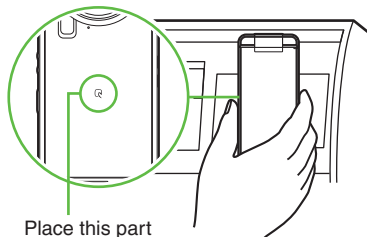
### Using Osaifu-Keitai®

Follow these steps to conduct a transaction:

Example: Making an electronic payment

- Lifestyle-Appli activation is not necessary.
- Transactions are possible even when handset power is off (if battery is adequately charged).
- Calls/Internet transmissions do not affect transactions.

- 1 Place  logo over reader/writer ➔ Confirm scan results



Place this part  
over reader/writer

- Align handset parallel to reader/writer.





### Important Osaifu-Keitai® Usage Note

- SoftBank is not liable for damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of IC Card data/settings.

#### When Placed Over Sensor

- If recognition is slow, move handset around slightly.
- Handset may respond automatically for some services.




### Advanced

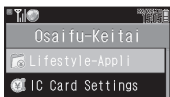
-  Enabling to view e-money balances
-  Checking e-money balance on External Display
-  Moving applications up/down Balance Info list
-  Removing applications from Balance Info list (P.9-43)

# Locking IC Card

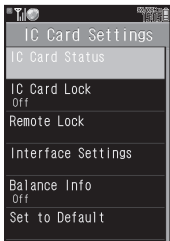
## IC Card Lock

Restrict access to/prevent unauthorized use of Osaifu-Keitai® on handset.


- 1  → **Tools** →  → **In PIM/ Life menu, Osaifu-Keitai** → 



- 2 **IC Card Settings** → 



IC Card Settings Menu


- 3 **IC Card Lock** →  → **On**  
→ 

- 4 **Enter Handset Code** →   
→ **Yes** → 

### Canceling IC Card Lock

- In , **IC Card Lock** →  → **Off** →   
→ **Enter Handset Code** → 

## Advanced

-  ● Customizing handset response to reader/writer commands ● Opening IC Card properties ● Changing IC Card Lock notice recipient ● Changing required Missed Call count for Call Remote Lock ● Restoring default Osaifu-Keitai® settings (P.9-43)

## Remote Lock

Disable Osaifu-Keitai® remotely by mail or phone.

<b>Mail Remote Lock</b>	Send mail to activate Remote Lock
<b>Call Remote Lock</b>	Call from a specified phone to activate Remote Lock

### Mail Remote Lock

#### ■ Preparation on Handset

- 1 In IC Card Settings menu, **Remote Lock** → ● → Enter Handset Code → ●



- 2 **Mail Remote Lock** → ●



Mail Remote Lock Menu

- 3 **Remote Lock PW** → ●
- 4 **Enter password** → ●
- 5 **Switch On/Off** → ●
- 6 **On** → ● → ㊄

#### Canceling Mail Remote Lock

In ㊄, **Switch On/Off** → ● → **Off** → ● → ㊄

■ **Activating Remote Lock via Mail**  
If handset cannot receive mail IC Card Lock is not set.

- 1 **Send S! Mail or e-mail to handset with password as subject**

- After handset receives message, IC Card Lock is set and notice is sent as a reply.

## Call Remote Lock

### Preparation on Handset

- In IC Card Settings menu, **Remote Lock** → **Select** → Enter Handset Code → **Select**

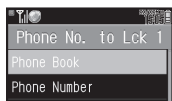


- Call Remote Lock** → **Select**



Call Remote Lock Menu

- Phone No. to Lck 1 or Phone No. to Lck 2** → **Select**



- Phone Book** → **Select** → **Select entry** → **Select** → **Select phone number** → **Select**

- Select *Phone Number* to enter directly.

- Switch On/Off** → **Select**

- On** → **Select** → **Select**

### Enabling Activation via Public Phone

- In **Set Public Phone** → **Select** → **On** → **Select** → **From** → **Select**

### Canceling Call Remote Lock

- In **Switch On/Off** → **Select** → **Off** → **Select** → **Select**

■ **Activating Remote Lock via Phone**  
If handset cannot receive calls IC Card Lock is not set.

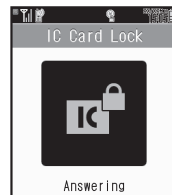
- Using one of the specified phones, call handset**

- Send Caller ID.

- Handset receives call** → **End the call**

- The call is recorded as a Missed Call.

- Within three minutes, repeat 1 - 2 twice**



- After the third Missed Call, IC Card Lock is set; a message announces Remote Lock activation. Confirm the message and end the call.

### If Series is Interrupted by Another Call

- Missed Call count is reset. Start over from the beginning.

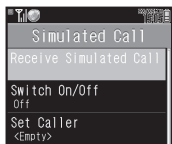
## Faking Incoming Calls

Handset rings to emulate an incoming call.

- Save name and phone number to show as Caller ID.
- Ringer may be muted by handset settings. To override Silent setting, see P.9-44.

### Setting Simulated Call

- 1 → **Tools** → → **In PIM/Life menu, Simulated Call** →



Simulated Call Menu

- 2 **Switch On/Off** → → **On** →

- 3 **Set Caller** →



- 4 **Name:** → → **Enter name** →

- 5 **Phone Number:** → → **Enter phone number** → →

- 6 **Assign Tone** → → **Select tone/file** →

- 7 → **PIM/Life menu returns**

When Name and Phone Number are Unset

- Handset rings with Caller ID "Withheld."

Canceling Simulated Call

[Simulated Call Menu] **Switch On/Off**

→ → **Off** → →

Setting Wait Time

[Simulated Call Menu] **Receive Timing**

→ → **Select time** → →

### Using Simulated Call

Available with clamshell open.

- 1 (Long)
  - Handset rings and incoming Voice Call window opens.
  - Ringtone stops after a period of time.
- 2 **In incoming Voice Call window, press**
  - Voice Call window opens. (Softkeys are dummies.)
- 3 → **Simulated Call ends**

When Receive Timing is Not Immediately

- Press or during wait time to cancel Simulated Call activation.
- Simulated Call activation is canceled by incoming calls, Alarms, etc. during wait time.

### Advanced

- Starting via Simulated Call menu
- Clearing caller information
- Overriding Silent volume setting (P.9-44)

## Using Stopwatch

Stopwatch stops when battery runs low.

- 1 → **Tools** → → → **Stopwatch** →



Stopwatch Window

- 2 → **Stopwatch starts**
- 3 → **Stopwatch stops**
  - Press to resume.
- 4 → **Yes** → → **Stopwatch ends**
  - Records are deleted when Stopwatch ends.

### Recording Lap Times

- While Stopwatch is running, → **Saving Records to Notepad**
- After , → **Save to Notepad** →
- **Resetting Records**
- After , → **From**

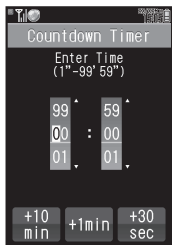
### Incoming Calls

- Stopwatch is not affected by incoming calls. End the call to return.



## Using Countdown Timer

- 1** → **Tools** → → → **Clock/Gauge** → **Countdown Timer** →

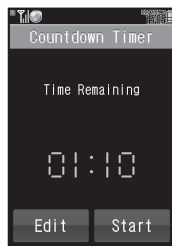


Timer Entry Window

- 2** Enter minutes → Enter seconds

- Tap **+10min**, **+1min** or **+30sec** as needed.

- 3**



Countdown Timer Window

- Press to change time.
- 4** → **Countdown starts**
- Press to stop/resume countdown.
- 5** Set time elapses → **Tone sounds**
- 6** → **Yes** → → **Countdown Timer ends**

### Using Timer Records

- After **1**, → **Select record** → → → **From** **4**

### Resetting Countdown Timer

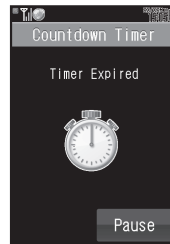
- Stop countdown and

### Incoming Calls

- Countdown is not affected by incoming calls. End the call to return.

### When Set Time Elapses

Tone sounds.



### Stopping Tone Instantly

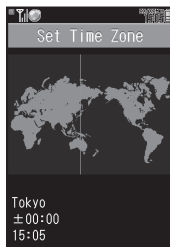
- Press or a Side Key. (Tone stops automatically after a period of time.)
- When Timer Time Elapsed during a Call**
- Tone sounds after the call.

## Opening World Clock



- 1  → **Tools** →  →   
**Clock/Gauge** → **World Clock**  
 → 












- 2 



Set Time Zone Window

- 3  **Select area** →   
 4  → **World Clock ends**

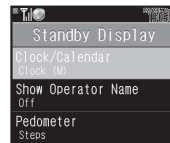
**Advancing One Hour (Daylight Saving)**  
 [Set Time Zone Window]    
 ■ To cancel, press .

**Adding Custom Time Zone**  
 [Set Time Zone Window]   → **Enter city name** →  → **+ or -** →  →  → **Enter time difference** → 

### Opening World Clock in Standby

- 1  → **Settings** →  → **In Phone menu, Display** → 

- 2 **Standby Display** → 



- 3 **Clock/Calendar** → 

- 4 **World Clock (L), etc.** → 

## Using Hour Minder

### Setting Hour Minder

Follow these steps to activate the hourly time signal at selected hours:

- 1 → **Tools** → → **Clock/Gauge** → **Hour Minder** →



Hour Minder Menu

- 2 **Switch On/Off** → → **On** →
- 3 **Select Time** →



- 4 **Select hour** → (  /  ) → **Complete selection** →

- 5 → **Saved**

- 6 → **Hour Minder setting ends**

### Adjusting Hour Minder Volume

In , **Advanced** → → **Volume:** → → **Adjust level** → → → **From**

### Changing Hour Minder Duration

In , **Advanced** → → **Duration:** → → **Select time** → → → **From**

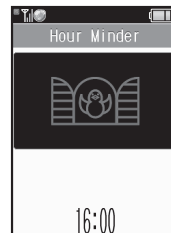
- For custom Duration, select **Other**.

### Selecting/Canceling All Hours

In , → **Check All or Uncheck All** →

### At Hour Minder Time

Hour Minder activates; sounds/vibrates by related settings.



### Stopping Tone Instantly

- Press a key.

### When Another Function is Active

- Hour Minder does not activate.

### Incoming Calls

- Active Hour Minder stops for incoming calls.

### Canceling Hour Minder

- 1 In Hour Minder menu, **Switch On/Off** → → **Off** → →

### Advanced

- Changing Hour Minder tone/video Setting handset to vibrate at Hour Minder Time Sounding Hour Minder tone even in Manner mode Activating Hour Minder based on World Clock time (P.9-44)

## Using Pedometer

### Getting Started

- Count based on a pace of approximately 100 steps per minute over even terrain.
- Accuracy may be affected by course, terrain, walking style, etc.
- Avoid holding the handset; use a body worn case or a strap, or place handset inside a pocket or bag.
  - Avoid sudden/erratic movements.
- Steps are not counted in the following cases:
  - While handset is off
  - For the first few steps
  - While handset vibrates
- Handset use may affect accuracy.
- Use Pedometer only as a rough guide.

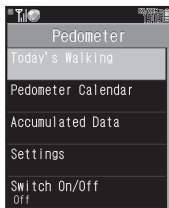
### Adjusting Counter Sensitivity

- **Tools** → **Clock/Gauge** → **Pedometer** → **Settings** → **Step Sensitivity** → **Select option**
  - Select **Low** when steps seem overcounted; select **High** when they seem undercounted.

### Saving Body Information

Weight and pace entry required to view full Pedometer data.

- 1 **Tools** → **Clock/Gauge** → **Pedometer**



Pedometer Menu

- 2 **Settings** → **Body Info.**
- 3 **Enter Handset Code**



Body Info Menu

- 4 **Height** → **Enter height**
- 5 **Weight** → **Enter weight**
- 6 **Pace** → **Yes or No**
  - Choose **Yes** to enter pace automatically based on height.
- 7 **Enter pace**

### Editing Body Information

- [Body Info Menu] **Select item** → **Enter value**
  - For **Pace**, automatic calculation confirmation appears (when height is entered).

### Activating Pedometer

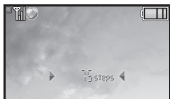
- 1 In Pedometer menu, **Switch On/Off**
- 2 **On**

### Canceling Pedometer

- In **2**, **Off**

## Pedometer Indicator

When Pedometer is active, today's step count appears in Standby.



## Viewing Step Count Records

1 In Pedometer menu, *Today's Walking* →

2



Steps Window

- Press  $\text{v}$  to toggle daily/weekly view.
- Press  $\text{X}$  to open previous day/week, or  $\text{#}$  to open next day/week. (Alternatively, tap  $\text{X}$  or  $\text{#}$ .)

3 Select time/date →  
• Hourly/daily step counts appear.

4 → Standby returns

### Resetting Today's Step Count

In → *Reset Day's Data* →  
→ *Yes* →

### Resetting Log

[Steps Window] → *Walk Data Reset* →  
→ *Enter Handset Code* →  
→ *Yes* →

- Today's data is also reset.

## Setting Targets

Information window opens, etc. when target is achieved for these items:

Steps	Walking Time
Exercise	Calories
Distance	Fat burned

1 In Pedometer menu, *Settings* →  
→ *Target* →

2 *Target Settings* →

3 Select item →  
→ *Enter value/time* →

- Other target settings may consequently change.

### Editing Targets

[Pedometer Menu] *Settings* →  
→ *Target* →  
→ *Target Settings* →  
→ *Select item* →  
→ *Enter value/time* →

### When Target is Achieved

- A tone sounds and Information window opens. (Select *Goal Achievement* and press to open Pedometer Calendar.) Follow these steps to mute achievement tone:

[Pedometer Menu] *Settings* →  
→ *Target* →  
→ *Goal Announce* →  
→ *Off* →

### About Exercise (Ex)

- Ex and MET indicate amount and intensity of physical activity, respectively. Ex for walking is calculated by multiplying 3 METs by walking duration (hour).


## Advanced

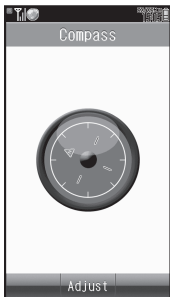
- 1 Changing Pedometer indicator • Using Pedometer Calendar • Checking accumulated data • Resetting accumulated data • Customizing achievement notice (P.9-44)

## Using Compass

Available in clamshell open or Viewer position.

### Opening Compass


- 1  → *Tools* → 
- 2  → *Clock/Gauge* → *Compass* → 










Compass Window

- Compass opens; use as a rough guide.

### Adjusting Compass

- 1 In Compass window,  → 
  - Follow onscreen instructions.

#### Compass Indicator

- When map is open, compass indicator appears; follow these steps to hide it:
  -  → *Tools* →  →  → *Clock/Gauge*
  - *SI GPS Navi* →  → *NAVI*
  - Settings* →  → *Compass Indicator*
  -  → *Off* → 

## Using S! GPS Navi

Use this GPS navigation service to pinpoint current location, find routes to destinations, and more.

- Provide current location to administrator upon request.
- Available in clamshell open or Viewer position.

### Precautions

- Location Information accuracy may be affected when GPS satellite/radio station signal reception is poor. Use S! GPS Navi under the open sky.
- SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from the provided Location Information.

### Positioning

- Pinpoints current location using signals transmitted from GPS satellites.

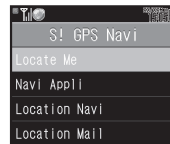
### Location Information Accuracy

- Probable distance from the actual position is classified into three levels, from Accuracy 1 (low) to Accuracy 3 (high).
- A confirmation appears when accuracy level is 1 or 2; follow these steps:

**Yes or No** ➔ ●

### Starting Navi-Appli

- 1 ● ➔ **Tools** ➔ ● ➔ ● ➔ ● ➔ **Clock/Gauge** ➔ **S! GPS Navi** ➔ ●



S! GPS Navi Menu

- 2 **Navi Appli** ➔ ●
- To disable confirmation, press ☹ before ☺.

- 3 **Yes** ➔ ●

### Opening Navi Appli List

[S! GPS Navi Menu] **Navi Appli List**

➔ ●

- To activate Navi Appli, select one and press ●.

### Selecting a Navi-Appli for S! GPS Navi

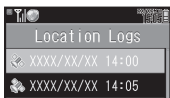
[S! GPS Navi Menu] **NAVI Settings** ➔

● ➔ **Select Navi Appli** ➔ ● ➔

**Select application** ➔ ●

## Opening Location Log

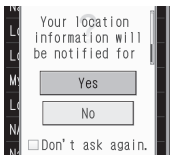
- In S! GPS Navi menu, **Location Logs** →



- Select record →
  - Details appear.
- List returns

## Pinpointing Current Location

- In S! GPS Navi menu, **Locate Me** →



- To disable confirmation, press before .
- Yes** → → Positioning starts
    - Map of your current location appears.

## Advanced

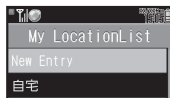
- Sending current location via mail ● Changing map source URL ● Disabling positioning ● Selecting Location Information transmission option ● Using My Location & Location Log ● Saving Location Log records to My Location ● Deleting Location Log records (P.9-45)

## Using My Location

## Saving Location Information

Follow these steps to save current location as a new entry:

- In S! GPS Navi menu, **My Location List** →



My LocationList Menu

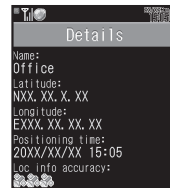
- New Entry** →
- Name** → → Enter name →
- Location Info** →
- From Current Loc.** → → Positioning complete
- 
- When accuracy level is 1 or 2, choose **No** and press to proceed to .
- 

## Saving as Home

- In , **自宅** → → From
- Saving from Location Log
- In , **From Location Logs** → → Select record → →

## Opening Entries

- In My LocationList menu, select entry →
- Location Info** →



- Details closes

## Deleting Entries

- In My LocationList menu, select entry
- **Delete** → → **Yes** →



## Using Ichi Navi (Japanese)

Locate other S! GPS Navi-compatible handset users or lost handset.

- Ichi Navi requires a separate contract and initial settings.
- If Double Number is active, service uses Line A regardless of usage mode setting.
- For more about Ichi Navi, see SoftBank Mobile Website (P.15-23).

### 1 In S! GPS Navi menu, **Location Navi** ➡ ●

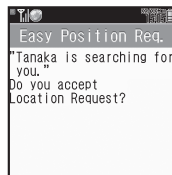
- Handset connects to the Internet. Follow onscreen instructions.

## Providing Location Information

Provide current location to administrator upon request.

- Location may be provided automatically upon administrator's request without confirmation.
- May be unavailable depending on subscription. For details, contact the nearest SoftBank Shop or SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P.15-42).

### 1 Location Information request arrives



- A confirmation appears. (Message shown above is for reference only.)

### 2 ☑ (provide) or ☒ (reject)

## Information

Information window opens after your location is provided manually (by pressing ☑) upon Location Information request or automatically upon administrator's request. Select the item and press ● to open log.

## Advanced

- ☑ ● Suppressing Information window after providing Location Information automatically (P.9-45)

## Opening PC Documents

Supported File Formats:

PDF (.pdf)
Microsoft® Excel® (.xls)
Microsoft® Word (.doc)
Microsoft® PowerPoint® (.ppt)

- Some files may not appear correctly.
- Download files via the Internet.
- When transferring files from PCs, save to corresponding Memory Card folder (P.15-24).

1 ➔ **Tools** ➔ ➔ ➔ **Doc./Rec.** ➔ **Document Viewer** ➔



2 Select file ➔

Key Assignments	
■ Handset Keys	
View Whole Page	
Scroll	
View Upper Left	
Toggle Full Screen View On/Off	
View Upper Right	
Zoom Out	
Continuous Zoom Out	(Long) (Long)
View Center	
Zoom In	
Continuous Zoom In	(Long)
View Lower Left	
Jump to Page	
View Lower Right	
Open Help	
Next Page	
Previous Page	
Fit Width	
Rotate 90 Degrees	

■ Touch panel

Scroll Around	Drag file
View Whole Page	<b>Whole</b>
Zoom Out/Zoom In	Pinch/spread fingers
Jump to Page	
Next Page	
Previous Page	
Rotate 90 Degrees	V/H

Zooming In/Out with Loupe (Magnifier)

In open file, (Long) ➔ Specify portion ➔ ➔ **Zoom Out** or **Zoom In** ➔

## Saving Text

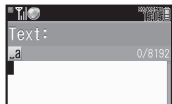
### New Notepad Entry

- 1 → **Tools** → → → **Doc./Rec.** → **Notepad** →



Notepad List

- 2 **<Add New Entry>** →



- 3 Enter text →
- 4 Select Category → → **Saved**

### Sorting Entries Temporarily

- [Notepad List]
- Press to toggle sort options (Modified, Created, Category and Accessed).

### Changing Landscape Notepad List View

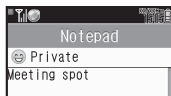
- [Notepad List] Select entry → → **Setting/Manage** → → **Landscape Display** → → Select option →

### Inserting Notepad Text during Text Entry

- In a text entry window, → **Notepad** → → **Call Notepad** → → Select entry →

### Opening Notepad

- 1 In Notepad list, select entry →



- 2 → **List returns**

### Deleting Entries

#### ■ One Entry

- 1 In Notepad list, select entry →

- 2 **Delete Item** → → **Yes** →

#### ■ Selected Entries

- 1 In Notepad list, select entry → → **Setting/Manage** →

- 2 **Multiple Selection** → → Select entry → (□/✓) → **Complete selection** →

- 3 **Delete** → → **Yes** →

### Unchecking All

- In , **Uncheck All** →

#### ■ All Entries

- 1 In Notepad list, select entry → → **Setting/Manage** →

- 2 **Delete All** → → Enter Handset Code → → **Yes** →

### Advanced

- Editing Notepad
- Searching text within all entries
- Inserting Notepad text into message text
- Sending entries via S! Mail
- Creating text files
- Importing text files
- Checking memory status
- Opening properties (P.9-46)

## Using ASCII Art

### Inserting ASCII Art

- 1 In message text entry window, ➔ **Call ASCII Art** ➔ ➔



- 2 Select entry ➔



### Previewing ASCII Art

- In , select entry ➔
- Press to insert ASCII Art.

### Editing Entries

- 1 ➔ **Tools** ➔ ➔ ➔ **Doc./Rec.** ➔ **ASCII Art** ➔



ASCII Art List

- 2 Select entry ➔ ➔ **Edit** ➔

### Opening Entries

In , select entry ➔ ➔ **View** ➔

### Adding New Entries

In , <Empty> ➔ ➔ **Create ASCII Art** ➔

### Deleting Entries

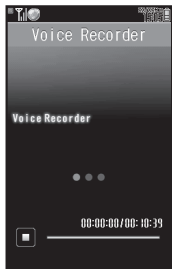
- 1 In ASCII Art list, select entry ➔ ➔ **Delete** ➔
- 2 **Yes** ➔

## Recording/Playing Voice

### Recording

- Recording stops if battery runs low while recording.
- Record conversations during calls via **Record Caller Voice**.

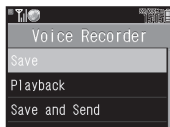
- 1 → **Tools** → → → **Doc./Rec.** → **Voice Recorder** →



Recording Window

- 2 → Recording starts

- 3 → Recording stops



- For **Extended Voice**, recording is saved automatically.

- 4 **Save** →

#### Play Before Saving

- In 4, **Playback** → → Playback starts → → Playback stops

- Starting Over

- In 4, → From 2

### Playback

- 1 In recording window, → **Ring Songs-Tones** →



- 2 **Select file** →

#### Playing Files via Data Folder

- **Data Folder** → → **Ring Songs-Tones** → → **Select file** →

#### Playback Operations

Adjust Volume	
Pause/Resume	
Stop	

### Advanced

- Saving longer recordings Sending Voice files via S! Mail Switching storage media (P.9-46)



## Creating QR Codes

Create QR Codes from these items on handset:

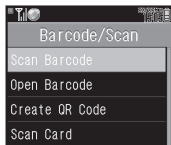
Phone Book	My Details
Text Input	Ring Songs-Tones
Pictures	Notepad

Large items are divided into multiple QR Codes.

### Procedure

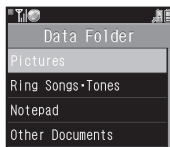
Follow these steps to create QR Codes from Data Folder files:

- 1 → **Tools** → → → **Doc./Rec.** → **Barcode/Scan** →



- 2 **Create QR Code** →

- 3 **Data Folder** →



- 4 **Select folder** → → **Select file or entry** →

- QR Code is created.

- 5

- QR Code is saved to Data Folder (Pictures).

### From Phone Book Entries

In , **Phone Book** → → **Select entry** → →

### From My Details

In , **My Details** → → →

### From Entered Text

In , **Text Input** → → **Enter text** → →

### Switching Storage Media

In , → **Save to** → → **Phone or Memory Card** → →

### Attaching to S! Mail

In , → **Send As Message** → → **Complete message** →

### Incoming Calls

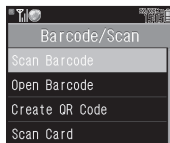
- QR Code creation is not affected by incoming calls. End the call to return.

## Scanning Business Cards

Scan business cards and save names, addresses, etc. to Phone Book.

- English business cards may not be scanned correctly.
- Some cards may not be scanned.

- 1** → **Tools** → → **Doc./Rec.** → **Barcode/Scan** →



- 2** **Scan Card** →

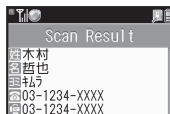
- 3** **Frame card on Display**



Scan Window

- 4** → **Scan starts**  
• Press to stop scan.

- 5** → **Scan results appear**



- 6** → →
- New Phone Book entry is saved.

### If Text Exceeds Phone Book Entry Item Character Limit

- Confirmation appears. Follow these steps to delete overage:

**Yes** →

### Switching Storage Media

After , → **Save to** → →

Select storage media → →

### Saving Scanned Image as Phone Book Picture

After , → **Add Image** → →

**On** → →

### Starting Over

After , → **Yes** → → → **From**

### Key Assignments in Scan Window

Toggle Focus Mode	
Switch to Photo Camera	
Focus Lock	
Mobile Light On/Off	
Adjust Brightness	
Open Help	

### Advanced

- Saving to Notepad Pasting to message text Copying text (P.9-49)



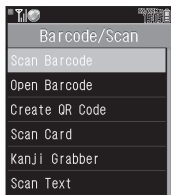
## Scanning Text

Scan text and save it to Notepad, etc.  
Available Modes:

Full	Capture text in full screen and scan a selected line
Line	Capture a few lines of text and scan a selected line

- To toggle mode, press in scan window.
- Some text cannot be scanned.

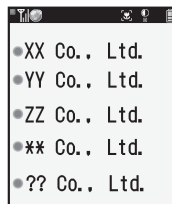
**1** → **Tools** → → **Doc./Rec.** → → **Barcode/Scan**



**2** **Scan Text** →

- To change mode, press in scan window.

**3** **Frame text in center of Display**



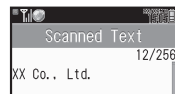
Scan Window

**4** → **Scan starts**

- Press to stop scan.

**5** **Select line** → → **Scan results appear**

**6**



**7** → **Notepad** →

### Correcting Text Type

After , → **Change Mode** → → **Select type** → → **From**

### Editing Scanned Text

After , → **Select/Edit** → → **Select character** → **Select alternative from list or edit directly** → **From**

### Starting Over

In , → **Yes** → → **From**

### Key Assignments in Scan Window

Toggle Focus Mode	
Switch to Photo Camera	
Focus Lock	
Mobile Light On/Off	
Adjust Brightness	
Open Help	

### Advanced

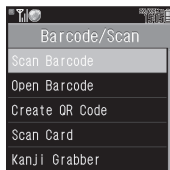
- 1** ● Scanning and pasting during text entry ● Scanning more text ● Saving scan results ● Saving linked info to Phone Book ● Opening saved scan results ● Using linked info ● Pasting to message text ● Copying text (P.9-49 - 9-50)

## Using Kanji Grabber

Scan a word of up to ten kanji and look it up in dictionaries.

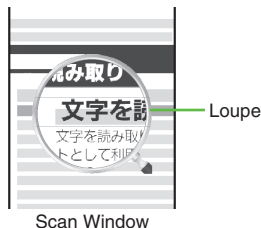
Some text cannot be scanned.

- 1 ● → **Tools** → ● → ●  
**Doc./Rec.** → **Barcode/Scan**  
 → ●



- 2 **Kanji Grabber** → ●

- 3 **Frame kanji in Loupe**



- 4 ●  
 • Scan results (kanji) appear.

- 5 ●

- 6 **Select dictionary** → ● →  
**Search** → ●

- 7 **Select word, etc.** → ●  
 • Definition/translation window opens.

Starting Over

In Ⓜ, Ⓞ → From Ⓜ

### Key Assignments in Scan Window

Toggle 2x Magnification On/Off	Ⓞ
Toggle Focus Mode	Ⓜ
Switch to Photo Camera	7
Focus Lock	Ⓞ
Mobile Light On/Off	#
Adjust Brightness	Ⓞ
Open Help	Ⓜ

### Advanced

- Scanning and pasting during text entry (P.9-50)

## Calendar

### View Settings

Changing default view	<p>● → Tools → ● → In PIM/Life menu, Calendar → ● → ☰ → Calendar Settings → ● → Default View → ● → Select type → ●</p>
Jumping to specified date	<p>● → Tools → ● → In PIM/Life menu, Calendar → ● → [B.3] → Enter date → ●</p>
Changing date color	<p>[Start Here] ● → Tools → ● → In PIM/Life menu, Calendar → ● → See below</p> <p><b>By Days of the Week</b></p> <p>☰ → Calendar Settings → ● → Set Color → ● → By Week → ● → Select day → ● → Select color → ●</p> <p><b>By Date</b></p> <p>Select date → [4.3] → Select color → ●</p> <p>• Not available in 6Month View.</p> <p><b>Resetting "By Date" Colors</b></p> <p>☰ → Calendar Settings → ● → Set Color → ● → Reset Color → ● → Select option → ● → Yes → ●</p>
	<p>● → Tools → ● → In PIM/Life menu, Calendar → ● → ☰ → Calendar Settings → ● → Tasks View → ● → Select option → ●</p>
	<p>● → Tools → ● → In PIM/Life menu, Calendar → ● → Select date → [B.3] → Select stamp → ●</p>
	<p>● → Tools → ● → In PIM/Life menu, Calendar → ● → Select date → ● → Select entry → ● → Secret: → ● → On → ● → [v]</p>

Saving additional holidays	<p>[Start Here] ● → Tools → ● → In PIM/Life menu, Calendar → ● → ☰ → Calendar Settings → ● → Set Holiday → ● → ☺ → Private → See below</p> <p><b>Adding Holidays</b></p> <p>&lt;Empty&gt; → ● → Enter name → ● → Enter date → ● → Select frequency → ● → [v]</p> <p><b>Editing Added Holidays</b></p> <p>Select holiday → ☰ → Edit → ● → Name: → ● → Enter name → ● → Date: → ● → Enter date → ● → Select frequency → ● → [v]</p>
	<p>● → Tools → ● → In PIM/Life menu, Calendar → ● → ☰ → Calendar Settings → ● → Set Holiday → ● → ☺ → Private or Public → Select holiday → ● (☐/☑)</p>

## ■ Saving/Editing Schedules

Setting Category/ Location	<p><b>Start Here</b> ● → <i>Tools</i> ● → ● → In PIM/Life menu, <i>Calendar</i> ● → ● → Select date ● → ● → Select entry ● → ● → ● → See below</p> <p><b>Category</b> <i>Category:</i> ● → ● → Select Category ● → ● → </p> <p><b>Location</b> <i>Location:</i> ● → ● → Enter location ● → ● → </p>
	<p><b>Start Here</b> ● → <i>Tools</i> ● → ● → In PIM/Life menu, <i>Calendar</i> ● → ● →  → <i>Calendar Settings</i> ● → ● → <i>Set Category</i> ● → ● → See below</p> <p><b>Renaming Categories</b> Select Category ● → ● → <i>Edit Category Name</i> ● → ● → Enter name ● → ●</p> <p><b>Changing Icons</b> Select Category ● → ● → <i>Change Icon</i> ● → ● → ● → ● → Select Pictogram ● → ●</p> <p><b>Resetting</b>  → <i>Reset Settings</i> ● → ● → Enter Handset Code ● → ● → <i>Yes</i> ● → ●</p>
Creating Categories	<p>● → ● → <i>Tools</i> ● → ● → In PIM/Life menu, <i>Calendar</i> ● → ● → Select date ● → ● → Select entry ● → ● → ● → <i>Repeat:</i> ● → ● → Select frequency ● → ● → Enter repeat time ● → ● → </p> <p>● Repeat time is not available for <i>Every Year</i>.</p>
Saving repetitive schedules	<p>● → ● → <i>Tools</i> ● → ● → In PIM/Life menu, <i>Calendar</i> ● → ● → Select date ● → ● → Select entry ● → ● → ● → <i>Repeat:</i> ● → ● → Select frequency ● → ● → Enter repeat time ● → ● → </p> <p>● Repeat time is not available for <i>Every Year</i>.</p>

Saving S! Friend's Status information	<p><b>Start Here</b> ● → ● → <i>Tools</i> ● → ● → In PIM/Life menu, <i>Calendar</i> ● → ● → Select date ● → ● → Select entry ● → ● → ● → <i>S! Friend'sStatus:</i> ● → ● → <i>Link Setting:</i> ● → ● → <i>Linked</i> ● → ● → See below</p> <p><b>Availability</b> <i>Answer Status:</i> ● → ● → <i>Edit</i> ● →  →  → </p> <p>● Set Category first.</p> <p><b>Comment</b> <i>Comment:</i> ● → ● → Enter text ● → ● →  → </p> <p>● Set Category first.</p>
	Editing entries
Changing Alarm tone/video & duration	<p><b>Start Here</b> ● → ● → <i>Tools</i> ● → ● → In PIM/Life menu, <i>Calendar</i> ● → ● → Select date ● → ● → Select entry ● → ● → ● → <i>Alarm:</i> ● → ● → See below</p> <p><b>Alarm Tone/Video</b> <i>Assign Tone/Video:</i> ● → ● → Select folder ● → ● → Select tone/file ● → ● →  → </p> <p>● Select start point if required.</p> <p><b>Duration</b> <i>Duration:</i> ● → ● → Select time ● → ● →  → </p>
	Changing Alarm volume
Selecting Vibration option	<p>● → ● → <i>Tools</i> ● → ● → In PIM/Life menu, <i>Calendar</i> ● → ● →  → <i>Alarm Settings</i> ● → ● → <i>Vibration:</i> ● → ● → Select option ● → ●</p>

Sounding Alarm tone even in Manner mode  
 ● → *Tools* → ● → In PIM/Life menu, *Calendar* → ● → ☰ → *Alarm Settings* → ●  
 → For Manner Mode: ● → *Ring* → ● → Yes → ●

■ Managing Schedules

Searching entries  
 [Start Here] ● → *Tools* → ● → In PIM/Life menu, *Calendar* → ● → See below

**By Subject**

[6] → Enter subject → ●

**By Category**

[9] → Select Category → ●

Checking memory status  
 ● → *Tools* → ● → In PIM/Life menu, *Calendar* → ● → Select date → ☰ → *Memory Status* → ●

Deleting all entries  
 ● → *Tools* → ● → In PIM/Life menu, *Calendar* → ● → ☰ → *Delete* → ● → *All Appointments* → ● → Enter Handset Code → ● → Yes → ●

Deleting entries by specifying week (Week View)  
 [Start Here] ● → *Tools* → ● → In PIM/Life menu, *Calendar* → ● → See below

**Within One Week**

Select date → ☰ → *Delete* → ● → *All This Week* → ● → Yes → ●

**Up to the End of Previous Week**

Select date → ☰ → *Delete* → ● → *Up to Last Week* → ● → Yes → ●

[Start Here] ● → *Tools* → ● → In PIM/Life menu, *Calendar* → ● → See below

Deleting entries by specifying month (Month/3Month View)

**Within One Month**

Select date → ☰ → *Delete* → ● → *All This Month* → ● → Yes → ●

**Up to the End of Previous Month**

Select date → ☰ → *Delete* → ● → *Up to Last Month* → ● → Yes → ●

Deleting entries in six months (6Month View)

● → *Tools* → ● → In PIM/Life menu, *Calendar* → ● → ☰ → *Delete* → ● → *All This 6Months* → ● → Yes → ●

**Tasks**

■ Task List

Hiding tasks  
 ● → *Tools* → ● → In PIM/Life menu, *Tasks* → ● → Select task → ☰ → *Edit* → ● → *Secret:* → ● → *On* → ● → [Yr]

■ Saving/Editing Tasks

Editing tasks  
 ● → *Tools* → ● → In PIM/Life menu, *Tasks* → ● → Select task → ☰ → *Edit* → ● → Select item → ● → Edit in the same manner as saving tasks → [Yr]

Setting priority  
 ● → *Tools* → ● → In PIM/Life menu, *Tasks* → ● → Select task → ☰ → *Edit* → ● → *Priority:* → ● → Select priority → ● → [Yr]

Changing Alarm tone/ video & duration	<p><b>Start Here</b> → <b>Tools</b> → In PIM/Life menu, <b>Tasks</b> → <b>Select task</b> → <b>Edit</b> → <b>Alarm:</b> → See below</p> <p><b>Alarm Tone/Video</b>  <b>Assign Tone/Video:</b> → <b>Select folder</b> → <b>Select tone/file</b> → <b>Y</b> → <b>Y</b>          • Select start point if required.</p> <p><b>Duration</b>  <b>Duration:</b> → <b>Select time</b> → <b>Y</b> → <b>Y</b></p>
	<p>→ <b>Tools</b> → In PIM/Life menu, <b>Tasks</b> → <b>Alarm Settings</b> → <b>Alarm Volume:</b> → <b>Adjust level</b></p>
Changing Alarm volume	<p>→ <b>Tools</b> → In PIM/Life menu, <b>Tasks</b> → <b>Alarm Settings</b> → <b>Alarm Volume:</b> → <b>Adjust level</b></p>
Selecting Vibration option	<p>→ <b>Tools</b> → In PIM/Life menu, <b>Tasks</b> → <b>Alarm Settings</b> → <b>Vibration:</b> → <b>Select option</b></p>
Sounding Alarm tone even in Manner mode	<p>→ <b>Tools</b> → In PIM/Life menu, <b>Tasks</b> → <b>Alarm Settings</b> → <b>For Manner Mode:</b> → <b>Ring</b> → <b>Yes</b></p>

## Managing Tasks

Searching tasks	<p><b>Start Here</b> → <b>Tools</b> → In PIM/Life menu, <b>Tasks</b> → <b>Find</b> → See below</p> <p><b>By Subject</b>  <b>By Subject</b> → Enter subject</p> <p><b>By Due Date</b>  <b>By Due Date</b> → Enter date</p>
	<p>→ <b>Tools</b> → In PIM/Life menu, <b>Tasks</b> → <b>Sort</b> → <b>Priority</b></p>
Sorting tasks by priority	<p>→ <b>Tools</b> → In PIM/Life menu, <b>Tasks</b> → <b>Sort</b> → <b>Priority</b></p>
Checking memory status	<p>→ <b>Tools</b> → In PIM/Life menu, <b>Tasks</b> → <b>Memory Status</b></p>
Deleting all tasks	<p>→ <b>Tools</b> → In PIM/Life menu, <b>Tasks</b> → <b>Delete</b> → <b>All Tasks</b> → Enter Handset Code → <b>Yes</b></p>

## Alarms

Editing entries	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <i>Tools</i> → ● → In PIM/Life menu, <i>Alarms</i></li> <li>→ ● → <i>Select entry</i> → ● → <i>Select item</i> → ●</li> <li>→ <i>Edit in the same manner as saving entries</i></li> <li>→ ⌵</li> </ul>
Saving entry name	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <i>Tools</i> → ● → In PIM/Life menu, <i>Alarms</i></li> <li>→ ● → <i>Select entry</i> → ● → <i>Subject:</i> → ● →</li> <li><i>Enter name</i> → ● → ⌵</li> </ul>
Changing Alarm tone/video	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>[Start Here]</b> ● → <i>Tools</i> → ● → In PIM/Life menu, <i>Alarms</i> → ● → <i>Select entry</i> → ● → <i>Assign Tone/Video:</i> → ● → See below</li> <li><b>Using Preset Tone or Data Folder File</b></li> <li><i>Select folder</i> → ● → <i>Select tone/file</i> → ● → ⌵</li> <li>• Select start point if required.</li> <li><b>Using Customized Screen Tone/Video</b></li> <li><i>Customized Screen</i> → ● → ⌵</li> </ul>
Setting handset to vibrate at Alarm Time	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <i>Tools</i> → ● → In PIM/Life menu, <i>Alarms</i></li> <li>→ ● → <i>Select entry</i> → ● → <i>Vibration:</i> → ●</li> <li>→ <i>On or Link to Sound</i> → ● → ⌵</li> <li>• Select <i>Link to Sound</i> to allow compatible SMAF files to control vibration.</li> </ul>
Sounding Alarm tone even in Manner mode	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <i>Tools</i> → ● → In PIM/Life menu, <i>Alarms</i></li> <li>→ ● → <i>Settings</i> → ● → <i>For Manner Mode</i> → ●</li> <li>→ <i>Ring</i> → ● → <i>Yes</i> → ●</li> </ul>
Activating Alarm based on World Clock time	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <i>Tools</i> → ● → In PIM/Life menu, <i>Alarms</i></li> <li>→ ● → <i>Settings</i> → ● → <i>Link to World Clk</i> → ●</li> <li>→ <i>On</i> → ●</li> </ul>

## Wakeup TV







Editing entries	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <i>Tools</i> → ● → In PIM/Life menu, <i>Wakeup TV</i> → ● → <i>Select entry</i> → ● → <i>Select item</i> → ●</li> <li>→ <i>Edit in the same manner as saving entries</i> → ⌵</li> </ul>
Changing Alarm tone/video	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>[Start Here]</b> ● → <i>Tools</i> → ● → In PIM/Life menu, <i>Wakeup TV</i> → ● → <i>Select entry</i> → ● →</li> <li><i>Assign Tone/Video:</i> → ● → See below</li> <li><b>Using Preset Tone or Data Folder File</b></li> <li><i>Select folder</i> → ● → <i>Select tone/file</i> → ● → ⌵</li> <li>• Select start point if required.</li> <li><b>Using Customized Screen Tone/Video</b></li> <li><i>Customized Screen</i> → ● → ⌵</li> </ul>
Sounding Alarm tone even in Manner mode	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <i>Tools</i> → ● → In PIM/Life menu, <i>Wakeup TV</i> → ● → <i>For Manner Mode</i> → ● → <i>Ring</i> → ●</li> <li>→ <i>Yes</i> → ●</li> </ul>
<b>Calculator</b>	
Copying calculation results	While result appears, ☺ → <i>Copy</i> → ●
Changing exchange rate for currency conversion	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <i>Tools</i> → ● → In PIM/Life menu, <i>Calculator</i> → ● → ☺ → <i>Money Converter</i> → ●</li> <li>→ <i>Exchange Rate</i> → ● → <i>Domestic or Foreign</i> → ● → <i>Enter rate</i> → ●</li> </ul>
Converting currencies	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <i>Tools</i> → ● → In PIM/Life menu, <i>Calculator</i> → ● → <i>Enter amount of money</i> → ●</li> <li>☺ → <i>Money Converter</i> → ● → <i>To Domestic or To Foreign</i> → ●</li> <li>• Set Exchange Rate first.</li> </ul>

## Expenses Memo

Changing Category of saved entry	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Tools → ● → In PIM/Life menu, Expenses Memo → ● → Totals → ● → Select entry → ● → Select Category → ●</li> </ul>
Changing amount	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Tools → ● → In PIM/Life menu, Expenses Memo → ● → Totals → ● → Select entry → ⊞ → Change Amount → ● → Edit → ●</li> </ul>
Renaming Categories	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Tools → ● → In PIM/Life menu, Expenses Memo → ● → Edit Category → ● → Select Category → ● → Enter name → ●</li> </ul>

## Osaifu-Keitai®

Enabling to view e-money balances	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Tools → ● → In PIM/Life menu, Osaifu-Keitai → ● → IC Card Settings → ● → Balance Info → ● → Enter Handset Code → ● → &lt;Empty&gt; → ● → S! Appli or Lifestyle-Appli → ● → Select application → ●</li> <li>● For use with compatible Lifestyle-Applications.</li> <li>● Start Lifestyle-Appli once before adding it to Balance Info list.</li> </ul>
Checking e-money balance on External Display	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>With clamshell closed, ● (Long) → Balance appears → ● → Balance disappears</li> <li>● Use ●● to view balances of listed entries.</li> <li>● Save Lifestyle-Appli to Balance Info list beforehand.</li> <li>● Balances do not appear if IC Card Lock is active.</li> </ul>
Moving applications up/down Balance Info list	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Tools → ● → In PIM/Life menu, Osaifu-Keitai → ● → IC Card Settings → ● → Balance Info → ● → Enter Handset Code → ● → Select application → ⊞ → Move → ● → Select target location → ●</li> </ul>

Removing applications from Balance Info list	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Tools → ● → In PIM/Life menu, Osaifu-Keitai → ● → IC Card Settings → ● → Balance Info → ● → Enter Handset Code → ● → Select application → ⊞ → Delete → ●</li> </ul>
Customizing handset response to reader/writer commands	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Tools → ● → In PIM/Life menu, Osaifu-Keitai → ● → IC Card Settings → ● → Interface Settings → ● → Enter Handset Code → ● → Select item → ● → Off → ●</li> </ul>
Opening IC Card properties	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Tools → ● → In PIM/Life menu, Osaifu-Keitai → ● → IC Card Settings → ● → IC Card Status → ●</li> </ul>
Changing IC Card Lock notice recipient	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Start Here ● → Tools → ● → In PIM/Life menu, Osaifu-Keitai → ● → IC Card Settings → ● → Remote Lock → ● → Enter Handset Code → ● → Mail Remote Lock → ● → Notice Settings → ● → Send Notice → ● → See below</li> <li><b>Changing Recipient</b></li> <li>To Set Recipient → ● → Set Recipient → ● → Select method → ● → Select/enter number/address → ● →  → </li> <li>● Omit step of pressing  when selecting <b>Phone Book</b> as setting method.</li> <li><b>Disabling Notice</b></li> <li>Off → ● →  → </li> </ul>
Changing required Missed Call count for Call Remote Lock	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Tools → ● → In PIM/Life menu, Osaifu-Keitai → ● → IC Card Settings → ● → Remote Lock → ● → Enter Handset Code → ● → Call Remote Lock → ● → Count for Lock → ● → Enter Missed Call count → ● → </li> </ul>
Restoring default Osaifu-Keitai® settings	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Tools → ● → In PIM/Life menu, Osaifu-Keitai → ● → IC Card Settings → ● → Set to Default → ● → Enter Handset Code → ● → Yes → ●</li> </ul>



## Simulated Call

Starting via Simulated Call menu	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <b>Tools</b> → ● → In PIM/Life menu, <b>Simulated Call</b> → ● → <b>Receive Simulated Call</b> → ● → <b>Yes</b> → ●</li> <li>• Simulated Call starts immediately regardless of Receive Timing setting.</li> <li>• Settings remain even after starting Simulated Call during setup.</li> </ul>
Clearing caller information	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <b>Tools</b> → ● → In PIM/Life menu, <b>Simulated Call</b> → ● → <b>Set Caller</b> → ● → [⊞]</li> <li>→ <b>Yes</b> → ● → [↻] → [↻]</li> </ul>
Overriding Silent volume setting	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <b>Tools</b> → ● → In PIM/Life menu, <b>Simulated Call</b> → ● → <b>For Silent Mode</b> → ●</li> <li>→ <b>Ring</b> → ● → <b>Yes</b> → ● → [↻]</li> </ul>

## Hour Minder

Changing Hour Minder tone/video	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <b>Tools</b> → ● → [⌚] <b>Clock/Gauge</b> → <b>Hour Minder</b> → ● → <b>Advanced</b> → ● → <b>Assign Tone/Video:</b> → ● → <b>Select folder</b> → ● → <b>Select tone/file</b> → ● → [↻] → [↻]</li> <li>• Select start point if required.</li> </ul>
Setting handset to vibrate at Hour Minder Time	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <b>Tools</b> → ● → [⌚] <b>Clock/Gauge</b> → <b>Hour Minder</b> → ● → <b>Advanced</b> → ● → <b>Vibration:</b> → ● → <b>On or Link to Sound</b> → ● → [↻] → [↻]</li> <li>• Select <b>Link to Sound</b> to allow compatible SMARF files to control vibration.</li> </ul>
Sounding Hour Minder tone even in Manner mode	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <b>Tools</b> → ● → [⌚] <b>Clock/Gauge</b> → <b>Hour Minder</b> → ● → <b>Advanced</b> → ● → <b>For Manner Mode:</b> → ● → <b>Ring</b> → ● → <b>Yes</b> → ● → [↻]</li> <li>→ [↻]</li> </ul>
Activating Hour Minder based on World Clock time	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <b>Tools</b> → ● → [⌚] <b>Clock/Gauge</b> → <b>Hour Minder</b> → ● → <b>Advanced</b> → ● → <b>Link to World Clk:</b> → ● → <b>On</b> → ● → [↻] → [↻]</li> </ul>

## Pedometer

Changing Pedometer indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <b>Settings</b> → ● → In Phone menu, <b>Display</b> → ● → <b>Standby Display</b> → ● → <b>Pedometer</b> → ● → <b>Select item</b> → ●</li> </ul>
Using Pedometer Calendar	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <b>Tools</b> → ● → [⌚] <b>Clock/Gauge</b> → <b>Pedometer</b> → ● → <b>Pedometer Calendar</b> → ●</li> <li>→ <b>Select date</b> → ●</li> <li>• Degree of achievement appears.</li> <li>• Press [⌘] or [⌘] to view previous or next month.</li> </ul>
Checking accumulated data	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <b>Tools</b> → ● → [⌚] <b>Clock/Gauge</b> → <b>Pedometer</b> → ● → <b>Accumulated Data</b> → ●</li> <li>• Change in body information is reflected in the data.</li> </ul>
Resetting accumulated data	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <b>Tools</b> → ● → [⌚] <b>Clock/Gauge</b> → <b>Pedometer</b> → ● → <b>Accumulated Data</b> → ● → [⊞]</li> <li>→ <b>Reset Walk Data</b> → ● → <b>Enter Handset Code</b> → ● → <b>Yes</b> → ●</li> <li>• Averages are also reset.</li> </ul>
Customizing achievement notice	<p>[Start Here] ● → <b>Tools</b> → ● → [⌚] <b>Clock/Gauge</b> → <b>Pedometer</b> → ● → <b>Settings</b> → ● → <b>Target</b> → ● → <b>Goal Announcement</b> → ● → <b>On</b> → ● → [↻]</p> <p>See below</p> <p><b>Changing Tone</b>  <b>Goal Sound</b> → ● → <b>Select pattern</b> → ●</p> <p><b>Changing Tone Volume</b>  <b>Goal Volume</b> → ● → <b>Adjust level</b> → ●</p> <p><b>Selecting Vibration Option</b>  <b>Vibration</b> → ● → <b>Select option</b> → ●</p> <p><b>Changing Duration</b>  <b>Duration</b> → ● → <b>Select time</b> → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• For custom Duration, select <b>Other</b> and press ●.</li> </ul>

S! GPS Navi	
Sending current location via mail	<p>● → Tools → ● → Clock/Gauge → S! GPS Navi → ● → Location Mail → ● → Positioning complete → ● → Complete message → (v)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When accuracy level is 1 or 2, choose <i>No</i> and press ● after positioning, then complete message.</li> </ul>
Changing map source URL	<p>(Start Here) ● → Tools → ● → Clock/Gauge → S! GPS Navi → ● → NAVI Settings → ● → Map URL Settings → ● → See below</p> <p><b>Adding URLs</b>          &lt;Not set&gt; → ● → Enter URL → ●</p> <p><b>Setting Destination URL</b>          Select URL → ●</p> <p><b>Viewing/Editing/Deleting URLs</b>          Select URL → (E) → Display, Edit or Delete → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Follow onscreen prompts.</li> </ul>
Disabling positioning	<p>● → Tools → ● → Clock/Gauge → S! GPS Navi → ● → NAVI Settings → ● → Positioning Lock → ● → On → ● → Enter Handset Code → ●</p>
Selecting Location Information transmission option	<p>● → Tools → ● → Clock/Gauge → S! GPS Navi → ● → NAVI Settings → ● → Send Location Info → ● → Select option → ●</p>

Using My Location & Location Log	<p>(Start Here) ● → Tools → ● → Clock/Gauge → S! GPS Navi → ● → My Location List or Location Logs → ● → Select entry or record → See below</p> <p><b>Opening Map</b>          (v) → Yes → ●</p> <p><b>Showing Routes via Navi Appli</b>          (E) → Go to → ● → Yes → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Follow onscreen instructions.</li> </ul> <p><b>Inserting into Message Text</b>          (E) → As Msg. Text → ● → Complete message → (v)</p> <p><b>Saving to Phone Book</b>          (E) → Save to Ph.Book → ● → As New Entry → ● → Complete other fields → (v)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To add to an existing entry, select <i>As New Detail</i>.</li> </ul>
	<p>● → Tools → ● → Clock/Gauge → S! GPS Navi → ● → Location Logs → ● → Select record → (E) → Set as My Location → ● → Name → ● → Enter name → ● → (E)</p>
	<p>● → Tools → ● → Clock/Gauge → S! GPS Navi → ● → Location Logs → ● → Select record → (E) → Delete or Delete All → ● → Yes → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Omit record selection step when deleting all records.</li> </ul>
	<p>● → Tools → ● → Clock/Gauge → S! GPS Navi → ● → NAVI Settings → ● → Inform Location → ● → Do not Show → ● → Enter Handset Code → ●</p>

## Notepad

Editing Notepad	<p>Start Here → Tools → Doc./Rec. → Notepad → Select entry → See below</p> <p><b>Editing Text</b>  Edit Text → Edit</p> <p><b>Changing Category</b>  Change Category → Select Category</p>
	<p>Tools → Doc./Rec. → Notepad → Select entry → Search → Enter text</p>
Searching text within all entries	<p>Tools → Doc./Rec. → Notepad → Select entry → Send → As Message Text → SI Mail or SMS → Complete message</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>SI Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.</li> </ul>
Inserting Notepad text into message text	<p>Tools → Doc./Rec. → Notepad → Select entry → Send → Via Message → Complete message</p>
Sending entries via SI Mail	<p>Tools → Doc./Rec. → Notepad → Select entry → Setting/Manage → Create Text File → Enter name → Save here</p>
Creating text files	<p>Tools → Doc./Rec. → Notepad → Select entry → Setting/Manage → Import Text File → Select file</p>
Importing text files	<p>Tools → Doc./Rec. → Notepad → Select entry → Setting/Manage → Memory Status</p>
Checking memory status	

## Opening properties

Tools → Doc./Rec. → Notepad → Select entry → Details

## Voice Recorder

Saving longer recordings	<p>Tools → Doc./Rec. → Voice Recorder → Record Time → Extended Voice → Recording ends</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Insert Memory Card to record in <i>Extended Voice</i> mode. (Recording is saved automatically.)</li> </ul>
Sending Voice files via SI Mail	<p>Tools → Doc./Rec. → Voice Recorder → Recording starts → Recording ends → Save and Send → Complete message</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Available in <i>For Message</i> mode.</li> </ul>
Switching storage media	<p>Tools → Doc./Rec. → Voice Recorder → Save Recording to → Select option</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Available in <i>For Message</i> mode.</li> <li>Set to <i>Ask Each Time</i> to select media after every recording.</li> </ul>

Scan Barcode	
Scanning during text entry	<p><b>[Start Here]</b> In a text entry window, <b>☺</b> → <b>Scan</b> → <b>●</b> → <b>Scan Code</b> → <b>●</b> → Frame barcode in center of Display → <b>●</b> → See below</p> <p><b>Pasting All Scan Results</b></p> <p><b>●</b></p> <p><b>Pasting a Part of Scan Results</b></p> <p><b>☺</b> → Select first character → <b>●</b> → Highlight text range → <b>●</b></p>
Scanning continuously	<p><b>●</b> → <b>Tools</b> → <b>●</b> → <b>☺</b> <b>Doc./Rec.</b> → <b>Barcode/Scan</b> → <b>●</b> → <b>Scan Barcode</b> → <b>●</b> → <b>☺</b> → <b>Continuous Scan</b> → <b>●</b> → <b>On</b> → <b>●</b> → Frame barcode in center of Display → <b>●</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Choose <b>Yes</b> to continue scanning or <b>No</b> and press <b>●</b> to view scan results.</li> </ul>
Reading saved barcode images	<p><b>●</b> → <b>Tools</b> → <b>●</b> → <b>☺</b> <b>Doc./Rec.</b> → <b>Barcode/Scan</b> → <b>●</b> → <b>Open Barcode</b> → <b>●</b> → Select file → <b>●</b></p>
Saving scan results	<p><b>●</b> → <b>Tools</b> → <b>●</b> → <b>☺</b> <b>Doc./Rec.</b> → <b>Barcode/Scan</b> → <b>●</b> → <b>Scan Barcode</b> → <b>●</b> → Frame barcode in center of Display → <b>●</b> → <b>☺</b> → <b>Save</b> → <b>●</b></p>
Saving to Notepad	<p><b>●</b> → <b>Tools</b> → <b>●</b> → <b>☺</b> <b>Doc./Rec.</b> → <b>Barcode/Scan</b> → <b>●</b> → <b>Scan Barcode</b> → <b>●</b> → Frame barcode in center of Display → <b>●</b> → <b>☺</b> → <b>Notepad</b> → <b>●</b></p>

Saving linked info to Phone Book	<p><b>●</b> → <b>Tools</b> → <b>●</b> → <b>☺</b> <b>Doc./Rec.</b> → <b>Barcode/Scan</b> → <b>●</b> → <b>Scan Barcode</b> → <b>●</b> → Frame barcode in center of Display → <b>●</b> → Select number or mail address → <b>☺</b> → <b>Save to Ph.Book</b> → <b>●</b> → <b>As New Entry</b> → <b>●</b> → Complete other fields → <b>☺</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To add to an existing entry, select <b>As New Detail</b>.</li> <li>When <b>MEMORY:</b> appears in scan results, press <b>●</b> to enter the items underlined with a dotted line automatically in Phone Book entry window.</li> </ul>
Opening saved scan results	<p><b>●</b> → <b>Tools</b> → <b>●</b> → <b>☺</b> <b>Doc./Rec.</b> → <b>Barcode/Scan</b> → <b>●</b> → <b>Scanned Results</b> → <b>●</b> → Select file → <b>●</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select a file and press <b>☺</b> to rename files, open properties or delete files.</li> <li>Some files may not open.</li> </ul>
Using linked info	<p><b>[Start Here]</b> <b>●</b> → <b>Tools</b> → <b>●</b> → <b>☺</b> <b>Doc./Rec.</b> → <b>Barcode/Scan</b> → <b>●</b> → <b>Scan Barcode</b> → <b>●</b> → Frame barcode in center of Display → <b>●</b> → See below</p> <p><b>Dialing Numbers</b></p> <p>Select phone number → <b>●</b> → <b>☺</b></p> <p><b>Sending Messages</b></p> <p>Select mail address → <b>●</b> → Complete message → <b>☺</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When <b>MAILTO:</b> appears in scan results, press <b>●</b> to enter the items underlined with a dotted line automatically in Composition window.</li> </ul> <p><b>Accessing Internet Sites</b></p> <p>Select URL → <b>●</b></p>

Using images as Wallpaper	<p>● → Tools → ● → ● → Doc./Rec. → Barcode/Scan → ● → Scan Barcode → ● → Frame barcode in center of Display → ● → Select image → ☒ → Set as Wallpaper → ● → Vertical or Horizontal → ● → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For images smaller or larger than Display, Wallpaper Display options appear; follow onscreen prompts.</li> </ul>
Saving images & melodies	<p>● → Tools → ● → ● → Doc./Rec. → Barcode/Scan → ● → Scan Barcode → ● → Frame barcode in center of Display → ● → Select file → ☒ → To Data Folder → ●</p>
Opening or playing files	<p>● → Tools → ● → ● → Doc./Rec. → Barcode/Scan → ● → Scan Barcode → ● → Frame barcode in center of Display → ● → Select file → ●</p>
Using images for System Graphics	<p>● → Tools → ● → ● → Doc./Rec. → Barcode/Scan → ● → Scan Barcode → ● → Frame barcode in center of Display → ● → Select image → ☒ → As System → ● → Select item → ● → Specify image area → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Some images may be usable without specifying image area.</li> </ul>

Pasting to message text	<p>[Start Here] ● → Tools → ● → ● → Doc./Rec. → Barcode/Scan → ● → Scan Barcode → ● → Frame barcode in center of Display → ● → ☒ → Send Message → ● → See below</p> <p><b>All Text</b> ● → S! Mail or SMS → ● → Complete message → ☒</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.</li> </ul>
	<p><b>Selected Text</b> ☒ → Select first character → ● → Highlight text range → ● → S! Mail or SMS → ● → Complete message → ☒</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.</li> </ul>
Copying text	<p>[Start Here] ● → Tools → ● → ● → Doc./Rec. → Barcode/Scan → ● → Scan Barcode → ● → Frame barcode in center of Display → ● → See below</p> <p><b>Text</b> ☒ → Copy → ● → Select first character → ● → Highlight text range → ●</p> <p><b>Number, Address or URL</b> Select number, mail address or URL → ☒ → Copy Telephone, Copy Address or Copy URL → ●</p>

Scan Card		
Saving to Notepad	<p>● → Tools → ● → Doc./Rec. → Barcode/Scan → ● → Scan Card → ● → Frame card in center of Display → ● → ● → ● → ● → ● → Notepad → ●</p>	
Pasting to message text	<p>[Start Here] ● → Tools → ● → Doc./Rec. → Barcode/Scan → ● → Scan Card → ● → Frame card in center of Display → ● → ● → ● → ● → Send Message → ● → See below</p> <p><b>All Text</b></p> <p>● → S! Mail or SMS → ● → Complete message → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.</li> </ul> <p><b>Selected Text</b></p> <p>☒ → Select first character → ● → Highlight text range → ● → S! Mail or SMS → ● → Complete message → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.</li> </ul>	
	Copying text	<p>[Start Here] ● → Tools → ● → Doc./Rec. → Barcode/Scan → ● → Scan Card → ● → Frame card in center of Display → ● → ● → ● → See below</p> <p><b>Text</b></p> <p>☒ → Copy → ● → Select first character → ● → Highlight text range → ●</p>

Scan Text	
Scanning and pasting during text entry	<p>In a text entry window, ☒ → Scan → ● → Scan Text → ● → Frame text in center of Display → ● → Select line → ● → ●</p>
Scanning more text	<p>● → Tools → ● → Doc./Rec. → Barcode/Scan → ● → Scan Text → ● → Frame text in center of Display → ● → Select line → ● → ● → ● → ☒ → Continue Part or Scan More → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Select <i>Continue Part</i> to enter additional text or <i>Scan More</i> to enter text after a line break.</li> </ul>
Saving scan results	<p>● → Tools → ● → Doc./Rec. → Barcode/Scan → ● → Scan Text → ● → Frame text in center of Display → ● → Select line → ● → ● → ● → ☒ → Save → ●</p>
Saving linked info to Phone Book	<p>● → Tools → ● → Doc./Rec. → Barcode/Scan → ● → Scan Text → ● → Frame text in center of Display → ● → Select line → ● → ● → Select number or mail address → ☒ → Save to Ph.Book → ● → As New Entry → ● → Complete other fields → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● To add to an existing entry, select <i>As New Detail</i>.</li> </ul>
Opening saved scan results	<p>● → Tools → ● → Doc./Rec. → Barcode/Scan → ● → Scanned Results → ● → Select file → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Select a file and press ☒ to rename files, open properties or delete files.</li> <li>● Some files may not open.</li> </ul>

Using linked info	<p>[Start Here] → Tools → Doc./Rec. → Barcode/Scan → Scan Text → Frame text in center of Display → Select line → See below</p> <p><b>Dialing Numbers</b> Select phone number →</p> <p><b>Sending Messages</b> Select mail address → Complete message →</p> <p><b>Accessing Internet Sites</b> Select URL →</p>
	<p>[Start Here] → Tools → Doc./Rec. → Barcode/Scan → Scan Text → Frame text in center of Display → Select line → Send Message → See below</p> <p><b>All Text</b> → S! Mail or SMS → Complete message →</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.</li> </ul> <p><b>Selected Text</b> → Select first character → Highlight text range → S! Mail or SMS → Complete message →</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.</li> </ul>
	<p>Pasting to message text</p>


Copying text	<p>[Start Here] → Tools → Doc./Rec. → Barcode/Scan → Scan Text → Frame text in center of Display → Select line → See below</p> <p><b>Text</b> → Copy → Select first character → Highlight text range →</p> <p><b>Number, Address or URL</b> Select number, mail address or URL → Copy Telephone, Copy Address or Copy URL →</p>
	<p><b>Kanji Grabber</b></p>
	<p>Scanning and pasting during text entry</p> <p>In a text entry window, → Scan → Kanji Grabber → Frame kanji in Loupe → Scan results appear →</p>

## Osaifu-Keitai®

### ? Cannot use Osaifu-Keitai® (S! FeliCa)

- Battery may be low. Charge battery or install a charged battery.

### ? Recognition via reader/writer takes time

- Check  logo area. Foreign articles can block/hamper recognition.

### ? Call Remote Lock does not activate even after specified number of Missed Calls

- Missed Call count is reset by calls from other numbers. If series is interrupted, start over from the beginning.
- When Call Forwarding is active, Missed Calls may not be recorded.

## Wakeup TV

### ? TV does not activate with specified channel

- If Wakeup TV Time arrives while TV is active, channel does not switch to the specified one.

## Voice Recorder

### ? Cannot record properly

- If incompatible microphone is connected, recording may fail.

### ? Noise/skipping occurs

- Avoid shocks to handset while recording; may cause noise or skipping.

### ? Recording takes time to start

- Recording window may take longer to open as more Voice files are saved on Memory Card.



## Scanning Barcode/Card/Text

### ? Cannot read barcodes properly

- Scan may fail if barcode is dirty or unclear.
- Scan may fail if barcode is scanned under inadequate light.
- Scan may fail if multiple barcodes are captured at one time.

### ? Cannot read barcodes during text entry

- Scanning is not available during calls or when mobile camera is active.

### ? Cannot read barcode images in Data Folder automatically

- When scan fails, follow onscreen instructions and select next barcode image manually.

### ? Cannot scan business cards properly

- Scan fails if business card is printed in light-colored text on a dark background, handwritten or printed in casual/decorative fonts, decorated with a background pattern, or designed with both vertical and horizontal text.
- Scan may fail if business card is printed in light-colored text on a light background, printed in italics or extremely small fonts, decorated with a logo or logo-like text, printed on a glossy paper or other material, or dirty/folded.

### ? Cannot scan text properly

- Scanning over 35 characters at one time may yield poor results.
- Adjust to frame text in [ ]. Letters at the ends may be distorted.

<b>Mobile Widget</b> .....	<b>10-2</b>
Customizing Standby Display (Japanese).....	10-2
<b>S! Quick News</b> .....	<b>10-5</b>
Receiving Content Updates (Japanese) .....	10-5
<b>S! Information Channel</b> .....	<b>10-6</b>
S! Information Channel & Weather Indicator (Japanese) .....	10-6
<b>e-Books</b> .....	<b>10-7</b>
Reading e-Books (Japanese) .....	10-7

<b>S! Friend's Status</b> .....	<b>10-8</b>
Using S! Friend's Status .....	10-8
<b>S! Circle Talk</b> .....	<b>10-11</b>
Using S! Circle Talk .....	10-11
<b>Near Chat</b> .....	<b>10-13</b>
Using Near Chat (Japanese).....	10-13
<b>Blog Tool</b> .....	<b>10-14</b>
Blogging .....	10-14
<b>Additional Functions</b> .....	<b>10-16</b>
<b>Troubleshooting</b> .....	<b>10-23</b>

# 10

## Entertainment & Communication



# Customizing Standby Display (Japanese)

Paste various widgets (applications) to Standby to access/activate information/ functions immediately from Standby.



## Obtaining Widgets

- 1 **Entertainment** → **Mobile Widget**



- 2 **Widget Contents**



- 3 **Download**

• Follow onscreen instructions.

## Installing Widgets

- Some widgets may need to be installed manually; follow these steps:  
**[Widget List] Select widget** → **Install** → **Yes**
- Activating Single Widgets**  
**[Widget List] Select widget**

## Deleting Widgets

- 1 **In Widget list, select widget**  
**Delete**  
 • *SI速報ニュース/SIともだち状況* cannot be deleted.

- 2 **Delete** → **Yes**

## Deleting All Widgets

- In Widget list, Download** → **Delete All** → **Enter Handset Code** → **Yes**
- If there is a widget saved in Standby, a confirmation appears; follow onscreen prompt.

## Advanced

- Opening properties
- Opening widget notification history
- Canceling automatic updates
- Receiving updates automatically while abroad
- Hiding confirmation abroad
- Disabling widget notifications
- Disabling cookies
- Deleting cookies (P.10-16)



## Saving Widgets to Standby

- 1
- 2 Use to select (OPEN)



- 3 Select widget
  - Corresponding icon appears in Standby.
- 4 Use to specify target location

## Using Touch Panel

Tap (OPEN) Drag widget to Standby Tap (CLOSE)

- If (OPEN) does not appear, press (tap (Widget On) in Viewer position).

## Moving Widgets with Touch Panel

After 1, Long Touch Display Move Mode Drag icon Confirm

## Using Pointer

- After 1, Long Press to activate pointer navigation; select widgets, etc.
- To cancel pointer navigation, Long Press .

## Using Widgets

- 1 Use to select widget



- 2
  - Widget activates; follow onscreen instructions.

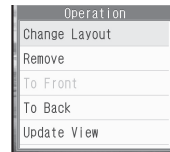
## Using Touch Panel

## Tap widget

- If no widget appears, press (tap (Widget On) in Viewer position).

## Removing Widgets from Standby

- 1 Use to select widget
- 2 Operation



- 3 Remove
- 4 Yes

## Advanced

- Logging in to Yahoo!JAPAN
- Moving widgets
- Viewing widget-related information (Japanese)
- Slowing pointer speed
- Removing widgets at once by sheet (And more on P.10-16 - 10-17)



## Using Sheets

Paste widgets and Standby Shortcuts on each sheet; toggle sheets to use them.

### Saving Widgets on Other Sheets

#### 1 In Widget list, select widget

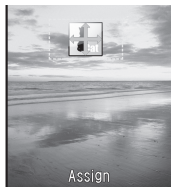


#### 2 Set as StbyShortcut



10

#### 3 Select sheet

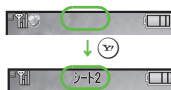


#### 4 Specify target location

## Advanced

- Editing sheet names
- Locking sheets
- Adding news items
- Showing unread news only
- Showing news images
- Assigning members
- Managing members (And more on P.10-17 - 10-18)

## Toggling Sheets



- To toggle further, press or .
- Sheet name appears at the top, then disappears.
- Save widgets as needed; corresponding icons appear on the current sheet.

### Using Touch Panel

#### Drag finger left or right

- If no widget appears, press (tap (Widget On) in Viewer position).

#### Using Locked Sheets

- → Select → → Enter Handset Code →
- Alternatively, tap then enter Handset Code and tap **OK**.

## Using S! Quick News & S! Friend's Status Widget

933SH is preloaded with **S!速報ニュース!**と**も** **だち状況** (S! Quick News & S! Friend's Status widget) that shows S! Quick News and S! Friend's Status information in Standby.



### View Settings

#### Setting View Pattern

#### 1 → Use to select S! Quick News/S! Friend's Status widget

#### 2 Settings → → Pattern Setting →

#### 3 Select item → (✓) →

#### Switching View

#### 1 → Use to select S! Quick News/S! Friend's Status widget

#### 2 Operation → → Switch Pattern →

- Repeat the above steps to switch the view.



## Receiving Content Updates (Japanese)

View content updates or breaking news.  
Transmission fees apply.

### Registering S! Quick News Items

- 1 ● ➔ **Entertainment** ➔ ●  
➔ **S! Quick News** ➔ ●



S! Quick News Menu

- 2 **S! Quick News List** ➔ ●



S! Quick News List

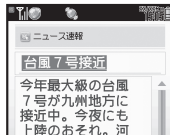
- 3 **登録はこちら** ➔ ● ➔ **Yes**  
➔ ●

- Handset connects to the Internet.

- 4 **Select item** ➔ ●  
• Follow onscreen instructions.

### Opening Information

- 1 **In S! Quick News List, select item** ➔ ●  
• Title list appears.
- 2 **Select title** ➔ ●



- Press (⏪) to return to title list, or (⏩) to open next title.

### Updating Items Manually

- [S! Quick News List] **Select item** ➔  
⏪ ➔ **更新** ➔ ● ➔ **一件** or **全件** ➔ ●

### Indicators

	Unread Special news		Unread General news
	Read Special news		Read General news
	Unread News Flash		Auto update disabled
	Read News Flash		

### Advanced

- Updating S! Quick News list automatically
- Checking update schedule
- Deleting S! Quick News items
- Resetting S! Quick News List
- Changing background image
- Accessing source sites
- Disabling image download (P.10-18 - 10-19)



## S! Information Channel & Weather Indicator (Japanese)

Subscribe to Japanese mobile periodicals that download to handset automatically; use Weather Indicator as needed. Transmission fees apply.

### Service Registration & Content Subscription

- 1 → **Entertainment** → → **S! Information Channel/Weather** →



S! Information Channel Menu

- 2 **Registration/Cancel** →
- Handset connects to the Internet. Follow onscreen instructions.

### New Received Information

Information window opens for new S! Information Channel info delivery.

- 1 **While Information window appears, S! Info. Channel** →
- S! Information Channel page opens. Follow onscreen instructions.
  - S! Information Channel page handling is similar to that of Yahoo! Keitai.

- 2 → **Page closes**

### Opening Unread Latest Issue

[S! Information Channel Menu]

**What's New** →

### Opening Back Issues

[S! Information Channel Menu] **Back**

**Issue** → → **Select date** →

### Using Weather Indicator

After S! Information Channel registration, local area weather indicator appears in Standby.

	Clear skies (day)		Snow
	Clear skies (night)		Thunder showers
	Cloudy		Then
	Rain		Partly/chance of

Example: ☁/☔ → Partly cloudy with a chance of rain  
Indicators other than the above also appear for more information.

### Manual Update

[S! Information Channel Menu]

**Weather Indicator** → → **Manual Update** → → **Yes** →

### Advanced

- Hiding Information window for new received info ● Changing Display Size ● Changing scroll unit ● Copying text ● Hiding Weather Indicator in Standby ● Canceling Weather Indicator automatic updates ● Hiding Information window for weather updates (And more on P.10-19 - 10-20)



## Reading e-Books (Japanese)

### Downloading e-Books

1 (Y) ➔ メニューリスト ➔ (C)

2 書籍・コミック・写真集 ➔ (C)

- Follow onscreen instructions.
- Downloaded e-Books are saved to Data Folder (Books).

#### Note

- Alternatively, go to SH-web Mobile Internet site (サーバメーカーサイトSH-web in Bookmarks; see P.5-8) for e-Books.

### e-Book Viewer

Read XPDF books and dictionary files. Some files may not be supported.

1 (C) ➔ Entertainment ➔ (C)



Entertainment Menu

2 e-Book Viewer ➔ (C)

- e-Book Viewer starts. Refer to the e-Book Viewer help menu for operational instructions.

### BookSurfing®

Download Contents Keys and read CCF files. Some files may not be supported.

1 In Entertainment menu, BookSurfing ➔ (C)

- BookSurfing® S! Application starts. Refer to the BookSurfing® help menu for operational instructions.

#### Moving CCF Files via Memory Card

- When purchasing a new handset, move CCF files and retrieve Contents Keys to open the files. Some files may need to be re-downloaded.

### Advanced

- Copying text 
 Opening non-933SH e-Books (Library) 
 Using Library (P.10-20)





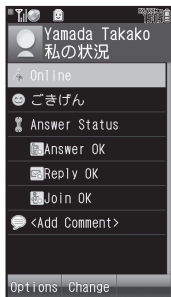
## Using S! Friend's Status

Exchange current usage status, mood, etc. with compatible handsets.

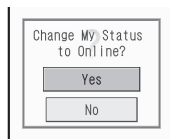
- Save and organize members in Groups.
- S! Friend's Status requires a separate contract and basic monthly fee.
- Set Connection status to **Online** first.

### First S! Friend's Status Use

Follow these steps to register a number saved in Phone Book; Status, Availability and Comment are sent to the members.



#### 1 (Long)



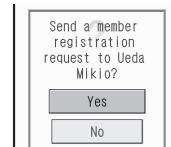
#### 2 Yes



#### 3 Yes

#### 4 Phone Book

#### 5 Select entry Select phone number



- Omit number selection step if only one number is saved.

#### 6 Yes

- Registration request is sent to the number.

### When Request is Accepted

- An acceptance notice arrives; My Status is sent and member's status appears on handset.

### Direct Entry

In , **Add New Entry** Enter phone number

### Advanced

- Adding members
- Deleting members
- Moving members
- Renaming Groups
- Rejecting requests
- Updating manually
- Opening notices
- Sending My Details image (And more on P.10-21)





## Opening Member Status

- 1 (Long) Select Group



My Status  
Member Status

- 2 Select member



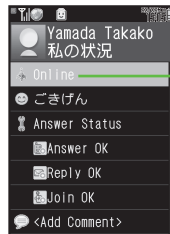
## When Cancellation Notice Arrives

- Member is deleted from S! Friend's Status member list.

## Changing My Status

Follow these steps to change Status, Availability and Comment; new status is sent to the members.

- 1 (Long) 私の状況



Connection Status

My Status Window

- 2 Select Status, e.g., **ごきげん**



Status Template Window

- 3 Select new Status

- 4 Select Availability, e.g., **Answer OK** Select new Availability

- 5 <Add Comment> Enter text

- 6 Update starts

## Changing Connection Status

[My Status Window] **Online (or Offline)** Select status

## Changing Status Icon/Label

[Status Template Window] Select Status Status Icon or Status Label Select Pictogram or enter text

## Changing Availability Settings at Once

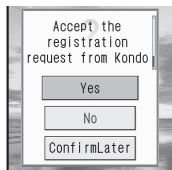
In 4, **Answer Status** Select new Answer Status From

## Editing My Status Name

[My Status Window] Edit Name Edit

## Receiving Request from Unsaved Numbers

When a registration request arrives, a confirmation appears.



### 1 Yes → ●

- Acceptance notice is sent; the number is registered.

## Rejecting

In 1, No → ● → Yes → ●

- Rejection notice is sent; the number cannot be registered for 24 hours.
- For **ConfirmLater**, Information window opens.

## Creating Status Templates

Save custom combinations of Status Icon and Status Label to each template.



### 1 In Status Template window, New Entry → ●

### 2 Enter name → ●

### 3 <未定> → ●



### 4 Status Icon → ● → Select Pictogram → ●

### 5 Status Label → ● → Enter text → ● → Y7

### 6 Repeat 3 - 5 → Y7 → Saved

## Saving to Data Folder

[Status Template Window] ◀ Select template → ☰ → Save to DF → ● → Save here → ●

## Loading Templates via Data Folder

[Status Template Window] ☰ → Add Template → ● → Select template → ●

## Renaming Templates

[Status Template Window] ◀ Select template → ☰ → Edit Temp. Name → ● → Enter name → ●

## Advanced

- Resetting templates (P.10-21)



## Using S! Circle Talk

Use handset like a walkie-talkie to speak to multiple parties simultaneously.

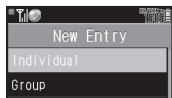
- A subscription to S! Friend's Status is required.
- Transmission fees apply during S! Circle Talk.

### Registering Members

Follow these steps to register a number saved in Phone Book:

- 1 → **Communication** → → **S! Circle Talk** →
  - When registering a member for the first time, a confirmation appears. Choose **Yes** and press , then skip ahead to 3.

- 2 **<Add New Entry>** →



- 3 **Group** → → **Group**  
**Name:** → → **Enter name**  
 →



- 4 **Select number, e.g., No.1:**  
 →

- 5 **Phone Book** →

- 6 **Select entry** → → **Select phone number** →



- Omit number selection step if only one number is saved.
- Repeat 4 - 6 to add members.

- 7 → **Saved**

### Saving as Individuals

In , **Individual** → → -   
**Saving from S! Friend's Status Member List**

- In , **Members List** → → **Select member** → →
- Omit when **Individual** is selected in .

### Advanced

- Editing individual members ● Editing Groups (P.10-22)



## Initiating S! Circle Talk

Follow these steps to send S! Circle Talk requests to members:

(First, set Connection status to *Online* (P.10-9).)

- 1 ➔ **Communication** ➔ ➔ **S! Circle Talk** ➔



- 2 **Select member or Group** ➔

- 3 ➔ **Transmission starts**

- S! Circle Talk starts when request is accepted by a receiver.
- Loudspeaker activates automatically.

### Direct Entry

Enter phone number ➔ ➔ **Call**  
**S! Circle Talk** ➔ ➔

## S! Circle Talk Operations

### Speaking

- 1 **Press and hold** **when**  
**Press and Hold** **appears**  
 ➔ **You have the floor**



- **:My Turn** appears when you have the floor.

- 2 **Keep holding** **to speak**  
 ➔ **Release** ➔ **Floor is released**

- Warning tone sounds before time limit.

### Incoming Calls during S! Circle Talk

- Incoming calls are rejected. Set handset to exit S! Circle Talk to answer incoming calls as needed.

### Canceling Loudspeaker

**During S! Circle Talk,**

- To reactivate, follow these steps:

➔ **While message appears,**

## Exiting S! Circle Talk

- 1 ➔ **Connection ends**
  - S! Circle Talk ends automatically when there is only one participant left, including yourself.

### Rejoining S! Circle Talk

- ➔ **Select most recent S! Circle Talk record** ➔ ➔ **Rejoin Circle Talk** ➔
- Not available when S! Circle Talk has ended or maximum number of participants are already engaged.

## Accepting S! Circle Talk Request

- 1 **While handset is ringing/vibrating,** ➔ **S! Circle Talk starts**

- Alternatively, press .
- S! Circle Talk Operations: left

## Advanced

- Disabling Loudspeaker ● Exiting S! Circle Talk for incoming calls (P.10-22)



## Using Near Chat (Japanese)

Exchange real-time text messages wirelessly with compatible Bluetooth® devices within ten meters. (Available even when handset is out-of-range.) Because this application employs Bluetooth® wireless technology transmission/connection fees do not apply.

### Access Restriction



- In the event that this handset may be used by a minor, access to this application may be password restricted by a supervising adult. In this case, Handset Code access must also be managed to prevent the execution of Memory All Clear that may be used to reset the application password.

### Sending Near Chat Request

- 1  ➔ **Communication** ➔   
➔ **Near chat** ➔ 



- 2 **Yes** ➔ 

- Near Chat S! Application starts.
- A confirmation appears. Read the message and press  (はい) or  (いいえ).
- For more, see Near Chat S! Application instructions.



### Receiving Near Chat Request

When a Near Chat request arrives, a tone sounds and S! Appli Notification appears.





After a period of inactivity, Information window opens, tone sounds and notification appears.

- 1 **Yes** ➔ 

- Near Chat S! Application starts.
- A confirmation appears. Read the message and press  (はい) or  (いいえ).
- For more, see Near Chat S! Application instructions.

### Rejecting Request

In , **No** ➔ 



## Blogging

Save blog details to view or update blogs easily on handset.

### Saving Blog Details

#### Setup for Posting via Mail

Follow these steps to save blog name and address for posting:

- 1 **Communication** → **Blog Tool**



Blog Tool Window

- 2 **Add New Entry**



Blog Setting Menu

- 3 **Blog Title** → **Enter name**

- 4 **Blog by send Mail**



Blog Setting Menu (Mail)

- 5 **Blog's Email Address** → **Enter mail address**

- 6 **CLEAR** → **Y**

#### Saving Title/Text for Posts

After **ESC**, **Blog's Title** or **Blog's Text**

→ **Enter title or text**

- Saved title/text is entered automatically when posting.

#### Setting Image Size for Posting

After **ESC**, **Picture Size**

→ **Select size**

#### Setup for Posting via the Internet

Save URL for Yahoo! Keitai or PC Site Browser, or both.

- 1 In **Blog Setting** menu, **Refer/Send by Yahoo! Keitai** or **Refer/Send by PC Site Browser**



- 2 **Blog's URL** → **Enter URL**

- 3 **Refer Blog's URL** → **Enter URL**

- 4 **CLEAR** → **Y**

### Advanced

- Editing entries
- Deleting entries (P.10-22)

## Posting to Blogs

Complete setup for posting via mail/  
Internet beforehand.

### Posting via Mail

- 1 In Blog Tool window, select entry ➔ ●
- 2 **Blog by send Mail** ➔ ●
  - S! Mail Composition window opens with address entered.
  - Omit 2 if no URL is saved for posting.
- 3 Complete message ➔ ●

### Posting via the Internet

- 1 In Blog Tool window, select entry ➔ ●
- 2 **Blog by send Browser** ➔ ●
  - Page of URL saved in *Blog's URL* opens.
  - Omit 2 if no address is saved for posting.
  - If PC Site Browser message appears, follow onscreen prompts.

When URL is Saved for Yahoo! Keitai &  
PC Site Browser

After 2, select browser ➔ ●

### Opening Blog Page

- 1 In Blog Tool window, select entry ➔ ●
  - Page of URL saved in *Refer Blog's URL* opens.
  - If PC Site Browser message appears, follow onscreen prompts.

When URL is Saved for Yahoo! Keitai &  
PC Site Browser

After 1, select browser ➔ ●





Mobile Widget	
<b>■ Managing</b>	
Opening properties	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Entertainment → ● → Mobile Widget → ● → Widget Contents → ● → Select widget → ● → Details → ●</li> <li>● Select widget other than <i>S!速報ニュース!</i>ともだち状況.</li> </ul>
<b>■ Widget History</b>	
Opening widget notification history	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Start Here ● → Entertainment → ● → Mobile Widget → ● → Widget History → ● → See below</li> </ul>
	<p><b>Showing All Text</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select record → ● → View full text → ●</li> </ul>
	<p><b>Deleting a Record</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select record → ● → Delete → ● → Yes → ●</li> </ul>
	<p><b>Deleting All Records</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select record → ● → Delete All → ● → Enter Handset Code → ● → Yes → ●</li> </ul>
<b>■ Settings</b>	
Canceling automatic updates	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Entertainment → ● → Mobile Widget → ● → Settings → ● → Auto Refresh → ● → Off → ●</li> </ul>
Receiving updates automatically while abroad	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Entertainment → ● → Mobile Widget → ● → Settings → ● → AutoConnect Abroad → ● → On → ●</li> </ul>
Hiding confirmation abroad	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Entertainment → ● → Mobile Widget → ● → Settings → ● → Set Use Abroad → ● → Off → ●</li> </ul>

Disabling widget notifications	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Entertainment → ● → Mobile Widget → ● → Settings → ● → Notification Setting → ● → Off → ●</li> </ul>
Disabling cookies	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Entertainment → ● → Mobile Widget → ● → Settings → ● → Cookies → ● → Disabled → ●</li> </ul>
Deleting cookies	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Entertainment → ● → Mobile Widget → ● → Settings → ● → Delete Cookies → ● → Yes → ●</li> </ul>

■ Operations in Standby	
Logging in to Yahoo!JAPAN	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → ● → Yahoo!JAPAN log in → ●</li> <li>● Follow onscreen instructions.</li> <li>● To log out, select <i>Yahoo!JAPAN log out</i> in the above steps.</li> </ul>
Moving widgets	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Use ● to select widget → ● → Operation → ● → Change Layout → ● → Specify target location → ●</li> </ul>
Moving widgets to front/back	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Use ● to select widget → ● → Operation → ● → To Front or To Back → ●</li> </ul>
Updating view	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Use ● to select widget → ● → Operation → ● → Update View → ●</li> </ul>



Removing widgets at once by sheet	<p><b>Start Here</b> (Start Here) → (Menu) → <i>Operate from List</i> → (Done) → <i>Remove</i> → (Done) → See below</p> <p><b>All Widgets</b>  <i>Remove All</i> → (Done) → Select sheet → (Yes) → Yes → (Done)</p> <p><b>Selected Widgets</b>  <i>Select also Remove</i> → (Done) → Select widget → (Done) → (Select) → Complete selection → (Yes) → Yes → (Done)</p>
	<p>(Start Here) → (Menu) → <i>Information</i> → (Done)</p>
	<p>(Start Here) → (Menu) → <i>Settings</i> → (Done) → <i>Cursor Speed</i> → (Done) → <i>Slow</i> → (Done)</p>

## Sheets

Editing sheet names	<p><b>Start Here</b> (Start Here) → (Menu) → <i>Settings</i> → (Done) → <i>Sheet Settings</i> → (Done) → <i>Change Sheet Name</i> → (Done) → See below</p> <p><b>Renaming</b>  Select sheet → (Done) → Enter name → (Done)</p> <p><b>Resetting All Sheet Names</b>  (Menu) → Yes → (Done)</p>
	<p><b>Start Here</b> (Start Here) → (Menu) → <i>Settings</i> → (Done) → <i>Sheet Settings</i> → (Done) → <i>Set Sheet Lock</i> → (Done) → Enter Handset Code → (Done) → See below</p> <p><b>Activating Lock</b>  Select sheet → (Done) → On → (Done)</p> <p><b>Changing Method for Temporary Access</b>  <i>Unlock Method</i> → (Done) → <i>No Password</i> → (Done)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press (Start Here), then select (Lock) and press (Done) to unlock sheet temporarily.</li> </ul>

## ■ S! Quick News & S! Friend's Status Widget (S! Quick News)

Adding news items	<p>(Start Here) → Select S! Quick News/S! Friend's Status widget → (Menu) → <i>Operation</i> → (Done) → <i>Contents Menu</i> → (Done) → <i>Add News</i> → (Done) → <i>S! Quick News List</i> → (Done) → <i>登録はこちら</i> → (Done) → Yes → (Done) → Select genre → (Done) → Select item → (Done)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Follow onscreen instructions.</li> </ul>
Changing news scroll speed	<p>(Start Here) → Select S! Quick News/S! Friend's Status widget → (Menu) → <i>Operation</i> → (Done) → <i>Contents Menu</i> → (Done) → <i>News Display</i> → (Done) → <i>News Speed</i> → (Done) → Select speed → (Done)</p>
Showing unread news only	<p>(Start Here) → Select S! Quick News/S! Friend's Status widget → (Menu) → <i>Operation</i> → (Done) → <i>Contents Menu</i> → (Done) → <i>News Display</i> → (Done) → <i>Target News</i> → (Done) → <i>Unread Only</i> → (Done)</p>
Showing news images	<p>(Start Here) → Select S! Quick News/S! Friend's Status widget → (Menu) → <i>Operation</i> → (Done) → <i>Contents Menu</i> → (Done) → <i>News Display</i> → (Done) → <i>Display Image</i> → (Done) → On → (Done)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Available when only S! Quick News area is set to appear on the Panel.</li> </ul>



## ■ S! Quick News & S! Friend's Status Widget (S! Friend's Status)

Assigning members	<p><b>When Pattern Setting is Not <i>Friend's Status(List)</i></b>   → Select S! Quick News/S! Friend's Status widget →  → Use  to select member field →  → <b>Operation</b> →  → <b>Contents Menu</b> →  → <b>Assign Member</b> →  → Select category →  → Select entry/member → </p>
	<p><b>When Pattern Setting is <i>Friend's Status(List)</i></b>   → Select S! Quick News/S! Friend's Status widget →  → <b>Operation</b> →  → <b>Contents Menu</b> →  → <b>Assign Member</b> →  → Select category →  → Select entry/member →  → <b>(Empty)</b> → </p>
Managing members	<p><b>Start Here</b>  → Select S! Quick News/S! Friend's Status widget →  → Use  to select member field →  → <b>Operation</b> →  → <b>Contents Menu</b> →  → See below</p>
	<p><b>Deleting Members</b>  <b>Delete</b> →  → <b>Yes</b> → </p>
	<p><b>Changing Member Order</b>  <b>Move</b> →  →  (Up) or  (Down) → </p>
	<p><b>Changing Member Icons</b>  <b>Change Icon</b> →  → Select Pictogram → </p>

## S! Quick News

### ■ Opening/Updating Items

Updating S! Quick News list automatically	<p> → <b>Entertainment</b> →  → <b>S! Quick News</b> →  → <b>Settings</b> →  → <b>Automatic Update</b> →  → <b>Select item</b> →  →  →  → Select interval or choose <b>On</b> → </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If a confirmation appears, press .</li> <li>• When Special is set to <b>On</b>, items are updated every four hours.</li> <li>• When General is set to <b>On</b>, items are updated once a day.</li> <li>• To cancel automatic update, choose <b>Off</b> and press .</li> <li>• Updating items may incur high charges.</li> <li>• Only available in Japan.</li> </ul>
Checking update schedule	<p> → <b>Entertainment</b> →  → <b>S! Quick News</b> →  → <b>Settings</b> →  → <b>Check Schedule</b> → </p>
Deleting S! Quick News items	<p><b>Start Here</b>  → <b>Entertainment</b> →  → <b>S! Quick News</b> →  → <b>S! Quick News List</b> →  → <b>Select item</b> →  → See below</p> <p><b>One Entry</b>  <b>一件</b> →  → <b>Yes</b> → </p> <p><b>All Entries</b>  <b>全件</b> →  → Enter Handset Code →  → <b>Yes</b> → </p>
Resetting S! Quick News List	<p> → <b>Entertainment</b> →  → <b>S! Quick News</b> →  → <b>Settings</b> →  → <b>Delete S! Quick News Lists</b> →  → Enter Handset Code →  → <b>Yes</b> → </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Not available during automatic updates.</li> </ul>



## Other

Changing background image	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Entertainment → ● → S! Quick News →</li> <li>● → Settings → ● → Change Skin → ● →</li> <li>Select pattern → ●</li> </ul>
Accessing source sites	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Entertainment → ● → S! Quick News →</li> <li>● → S! Quick News List → ● → Select item</li> <li>→ ● → Select title → ● → Select title → ●</li> <li>→ Yes → ●</li> </ul>
Disabling image download	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Entertainment → ● → S! Quick News →</li> <li>● → Settings → ● → Show Image → ● →</li> <li>Off → ●</li> </ul>

## S! Information Channel

### Receiving Information

Hiding Information window for new received info	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Entertainment → ● → S! Information Channel/Weather → ● → Notification → ● →</li> <li>Off → ●</li> </ul>
Requesting re-delivery	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Entertainment → ● → S! Information Channel/Weather → ● → Get Latest Contents</li> <li>→ ● → Yes → ●</li> </ul>

### Information Pages

Changing Display Size	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>On a page, ☰ → Settings → ● → Display Size</li> <li>→ ● → Select size → ●</li> </ul>
Changing scroll unit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>On a page, ☰ → Settings → ● → Scroll Unit</li> <li>→ ● → Select unit → ●</li> </ul>
Copying text	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>On a page, ☰ → Copy Text → ● → Select first character → ● → Highlight text range → ●</li> </ul>
Saving files to Data Folder	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>On a page, ☰ → Save Items → ● → Select file</li> <li>→ ● → Save → ● → Enter name → ● →</li> <li>Save here → ●</li> <li>• Some files are saved automatically.</li> </ul>
Opening page properties	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>On a page, ☰ → Details → ●</li> </ul>



## Weather Indicators

Checking weather forecast	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Entertainment → ● → S! Information Channel/Weather → ● → Weather Indicator → ● → Weather → ●</li> </ul>
Changing weather forecast page font size	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>On a page, ⊞ → Settings → ● → Font Size → ● → Select size → ●</li> </ul>
Hiding Weather Indicator in Standby	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Entertainment → ● → S! Information Channel/Weather → ● → Weather Indicator → ● → Settings → ● → Standby Setting → ● → Off → ●</li> </ul>
Canceling Weather Indicator automatic updates	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Entertainment → ● → S! Information Channel/Weather → ● → Weather Indicator → ● → Settings → ● → Icon Update → ● → Off → ●</li> </ul>
Hiding Information window for weather updates	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Entertainment → ● → S! Information Channel/Weather → ● → Weather Indicator → ● → Settings → ● → Weather Notif. → ● → Off → ●</li> </ul>

## e-Books

Copying text	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In open page, ▾ → 文字列を北' - → ● → Select first character → ● → Highlight text range → ●</li> </ul>
Opening non-933SH e-Books (Library)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Entertainment → ● → e-Book Viewer → ● → Select file → ●</li> <li>• Some files may not open.</li> </ul>
Using Library	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>[Start Here] ● → Entertainment → ● → e-Book Viewer → ⊞ → See below</li> </ul>
	<b>Adding Folders</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>⊞ → New Folder → ● → Enter name → ●</li> </ul>
	<b>Switching Folders</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>⊞ → Switch Folders → ● → Select folder → ●</li> </ul>
	<b>Renaming Folders/Files</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select folder/file → ⊞ → Rename → ● → Enter name → ●</li> </ul>
	<b>Moving Files</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select file → ⊞ → Move → ● → Select folder → ● → Move here → ●</li> </ul>
	<b>Deleting Folders/Files</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select folder/file → ⊞ → Delete → ● → Yes → ●</li> </ul>
<b>Opening File Properties</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select file → ⊞ → Details → ●</li> </ul>	



## S! Friend's Status

## ■ Members/Groups

Adding members	<p>* (Long) → Select Group → Add Member → Select method → Select entry or enter phone number → Yes</p>
Deleting members	<p>* (Long) → Select Group → Select member → Registration Release → Yes → Yes</p> <p>• Cancellation notice is sent; deleted members cannot be re-registered for 24 hours.</p>
Moving members	<p>* (Long) → Select Group → Select member → Change Group → Select target Group</p>
Renaming Groups	<p>* (Long) → Select Group → Edit Group Name → Enter name</p>
Rejecting requests	<p>Start Here * (Long) → Settings → Request Reply → See below</p> <p><b>Rejecting Requests from Unsaved Numbers Confirm if Registered</b></p> <p>• Rejection notice is sent to rejected numbers automatically.</p>
	<p><b>Rejecting All Requests Always Ignore</b></p> <p>• Rejection notice is sent to all requesters automatically.</p>

## ■ Status/Availability

Saving custom Availability combinations	<p>* (Long) → Settings → Answer Status → User Setting → Select type → Select Availability</p>
Changing Status Icon Pictogram or Status Label description	<p>* (Long) → Settings → Status Setting → Select template → Select Status → Status Icon → Select Pictogram → Status Label → Enter text</p>

## ■ Status Templates

Resetting templates	<p>Start Here * (Long) → 私の状況 → Select Status → See below</p> <p><b>One Template</b></p> <p>Select template → Reset → Yes</p>
	<p><b>All Templates</b></p> <p>Reset All → Yes</p>

## ■ Member Status &amp; Notices

Updating manually	<p>* (Long) → Settings → Status Update</p>
Opening notices	<p>* (Long) → Status Notif. List → Select notice</p>

## ■ My Details

Sending My Details image	<p>* (Long) → Select Group → Select member → Send Image → Yes</p>
--------------------------	---



## S! Circle Talk

## ■ Member List

Editing individual members	<p>[Start Here] → <b>Communication</b> → <b>S! Circle Talk</b> → <b>Select member</b> → <b>See below</b></p> <p><b>Replacing Members</b>  <b>Edit</b> → <b>Select method</b> → <b>Select entry</b></p> <p><b>Deleting Members</b>  <b>Delete</b> → <b>Yes</b></p>
	<p>[Start Here] → <b>Communication</b> → <b>S! Circle Talk</b> → <b>Select Group</b> → <b>See below</b></p> <p><b>Editing Group Name/Members</b>  <b>Edit</b> → <b>Select target</b> → <b>Edit/enter</b></p> <p><b>Deleting Group Members</b>  <b>Edit</b> → <b>Select member</b> → <b>Delete</b> → <b>Yes</b></p> <p><b>Deleting Groups</b>  <b>Delete</b> → <b>Yes</b></p>

## ■ Settings

Disabling Loudspeaker	<b>Communication</b> → <b>S! Circle Talk</b> → <b>Loudspeaker</b> → <b>Off</b>
Exiting S! Circle Talk for incoming calls	<b>Communication</b> → <b>S! Circle Talk</b> → <b>Incoming Calls</b> → <b>Voice Calls or Video Calls</b> → <b>Accept Calls</b>

## Blog Tool

Editing entries	<b>Communication</b> → <b>Blog Tool</b> → <b>Select entry</b> → <b>Edit</b> → <b>Select item</b> → <b>Edit</b> → <b>For Blog Title</b> , omit step of pressing <b>BASE</b> after editing.
Deleting entries	<b>Communication</b> → <b>Blog Tool</b> → <b>Select entry</b> → <b>Delete</b> → <b>Yes</b>



## S! Friend's Status

### ? Cannot use S! Friend's Status

- Set IP Service Setting to *On*.

### ? Handset rejected a registration request automatically

- Rejection notice is sent automatically when 30 members are already registered or handset fails to respond within two hours.

### ? Registration request arrived from a deleted member

- Registration request arrives when a member fails to receive cancellation notice within 24 hours.

### ? Registration request was sent to a member automatically

- Registration request is sent automatically when handset fails to receive rejection/cancellation notice within 24 hours.

### ? Cannot create Status Templates

- Three templates may already be added; reset one and retry.

## S! Circle Talk

### ? Cannot use S! Circle Talk

- Set IP Service Setting to *On*.

### ? S! Circle Talk starts automatically

- Check My Status; handset accepts S! Circle Talk requests automatically if S! Circle Talk Availability is set to *Auto Join*.

### ? Cannot accept S! Circle Talk requests

- Check My Status; handset rejects S! Circle Talk requests automatically if S! Circle Talk Availability is set to *Join NG*.

## Near Chat

### ? Cannot receive Near Chat requests

- S! Appli Request may be set to *Off*.

## S! Quick News

### ? Cannot receive content updates

- Update may fail out-of-range or in poor signal conditions.
- Automatic Update does not affect S! Quick News List News Flash update items overnight.
- USIM Card replacement cancels Automatic Update.





<b>Handset Security</b> .....	<b>11-2</b>
Operations Security .....	11-2
Information Security.....	11-3
<b>Face Recognition</b> .....	<b>11-4</b>
Using Face Recognition.....	11-4

<b>Function Control</b> .....	<b>11-6</b>
Using Function Control.....	11-6
<b>Additional Functions</b> .....	<b>11-7</b>

# 11

## Handset Security



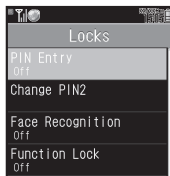
## Operations Security

### Function Lock

Restrict access to handset functions.

<b>Auto</b>	Lock when Display turns off or handset is closed (clamshell closed)
<b>Once</b>	Lock immediately; setting is canceled once handset is unlocked
<b>At Power On</b>	Lock when handset is turned on; Handset Code entry window opens

- 1 **Settings** **In Phone menu, Locks** **In**



Locks Menu

- 2 **Function Lock**
- 3 **Select option** **Enter Handset Code**

#### Unlocking Temporarily

While handset is locked, enter Handset Code

#### When Function Lock is Active

- Press corresponding key to turn handset on/off, answer calls, place callers on hold, end calls, etc.

### PIN Entry

Activate PIN Entry to require PIN entry each time handset is turned on.

- 1 **In Locks menu, PIN Entry** **Switch On/Off**
- 2 **On** **Enter PIN**

### Secure Remote Lock

Lock a lost handset remotely via PC or another handset. Secure Remote Lock disables all operations except turning handset on, and activates IC Card Lock. For more about Secure Remote Lock, see SoftBank Mobile Website (P.15-23) or contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P.15-42).



### Advanced

- Changing PIN
- Setting Secure Remote Lock activation message to appear (P.11-7)

# Information Security

## Application Lock

Restrict access to these functions:

Phone Book

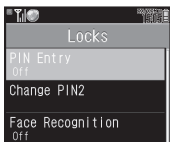
Calendar/Tasks

Yahoo! Keitai

Mail

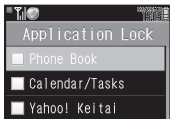
Notepad

- 1 **Settings** **In Phone menu, Locks**



Locks Menu

- 2 **Application Lock**



- 3 **Select item** (✓)

For Phone Book, select **No Refer** or **Refer** and press .

- 4 **Enter Handset Code**

### Temporary Access to Functions

- When accessing functions, enter Handset Code and press .

## History Lock

Restrict access to Call Log and sent/received mail records.

- 1 **In Locks menu, History Lock**



- 2 **Select item** (✓)

- 3 **Enter Handset Code**

### Temporary Access to Records

- When accessing records, enter Handset Code and press .

## Show Secret Data

Activate Show Secret Data to access Secret entries.

- 1 **In Locks menu, Show Secret Data**
- 2 **On** **Enter Handset Code**

### When Show Secret Data is Active

- Predictive is not available for text entry.

## Activating Temporarily with Motion Control

- 1 **Enter Handset Code**   
**Shake handset left or right**
- Show Secret Data is canceled when handset is closed (clamshell closed) or Display goes dark in Standby.



## Using Face Recognition

Capture portraits with mobile camera then match live image to saved ones to unlock handset or access functions/files. If Face Recognition fails, Function Lock activates.

### Precautions

- Identification accuracy is not guaranteed. SoftBank cannot be held liable for misuse or any damages associated with the use of Face Recognition.
- Handset Code is required to cancel Face Recognition. Changing the code helps enhance security.
- Osaifu-Keita<sup>®</sup> is available even when Face Recognition is active.
- When capturing/scanning face, remember these points:
  - Make sure your face is clearly visible.
  - Face should be lit evenly and brightly.

### Precautions for Portrait Capture

- Look straight into lens and frame whole face with no expression.
- Do not wear a mask when capturing portraits, even for use with **Low(Mask)**.

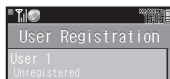
### Saving User Information

- 1 **Settings** → **In Phone menu, Locks**
- 2 **Face Recognition**



Face Recognition Menu

- 3 **User Registration** → **Enter Handset Code**



- 4 **Select from User 1 to User 5**



- 5 **User Name:** → **Enter name**
- 6 **Register Riddle:** → **Enter question**
- 7 **Register Answer:** → **Enter answer**
- 8 **Face Image:**



- 9 **Select from Image 1 to Image 5** → **Mobile camera activates.**
- 10 **Frame your face on Display** → **Yes**
- 11 **Yes** → **To save more, repeat 9 - 10.**
- 12 **Clear/Back** → **Yr** → **Saved**



### Advanced

- Editing/deleting user information
- Changing/deleting portraits
- Changing accuracy level (P.11-7)

## Scanning Face

Face Recognition window opens when handset is turned on or opened, or whenever Display is refreshed after Display Saving time.

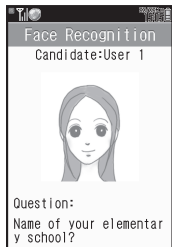
### 1 Face the Display → Recognition starts



### 2 If face matches a saved portrait, handset unlocks

#### When Matching Portrait is Found

Saved question appears.



### 1 → Enter answer →

## Advanced

👉 Changing recognition guide option    🟢 Opening contact information when recognition fails (P.11-7)

### If You Cannot Remember the Answer

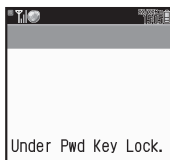
In 1, [📞] → Enter Handset Code →

### When No Question or Answer is Saved

In 1, [📞] → Enter Handset Code →

### When Recognition Fails

Function Lock activates.



### Retrying Face Recognition

#### 1 [📞]

### Unlocking with Handset Code

#### 1 Enter Handset Code →

## Activating & Canceling

### 1 In Face Recognition menu, Switch On/Off →

### 2 On or Off → Enter Handset Code →



## Using Function Control

Restrict access to the following functions remotely. (Available for administrators.)

Camera	Infrared
Bluetooth	Memory Card
USB	Digital TV
Messaging	S! Mail
PC Mail	Attach File
Voice Call (placing)	Video Call (placing)
USIM (writing)	Flash®
Yahoo! Keitai	PC Site Browser
Streaming	IP Service
S! Appli	Osaifu-Keitai
Mobile Widget	

- A message appears while Function Control is in progress.
- May be unavailable depending on subscription. For details, contact the nearest SoftBank Shop or SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P.15-42).

### ■ When Accessing Restricted Functions

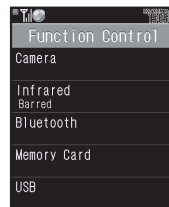
A message (example shown below) appears; the function is inaccessible.



Message may not appear for some functions.

### Checking Restriction Status

- 1 → **Settings** → → **In Phone menu, Locks** →
- 2 → **Function Control** →



- Restriction status appears for each function.



## PIN Entry

### Changing PIN

- → **Settings** → ● → In Phone menu, **Locks** → ● → **PIN Entry** → ● → **Change PIN** → ● → Enter current PIN → ● → Enter new PIN → ● → Re-enter new PIN → ●
- Activate PIN Entry first.

## Secure Remote Lock

### Setting Secure Remote Lock activation message to appear

- Start Here** ● → **Settings** → ● → In Phone menu, **Locks** → ● → **Set Lock Message** → ● → See below
- Saving Message**  
**Message** → ● → Enter Handset Code → ● → Enter message → ● → Yes → ●
- Checking Message**  
**Check Message** → ●

## Face Recognition

### Editing/deleting user information

- Start Here** ● → **Settings** → ● → In Phone menu, **Locks** → ● → **Face Recognition** → ● → **User Registration** → ● → Enter Handset Code → ● → Select from **User 1 to User 5** → See below

#### Editing

- → Select item → ● → Enter information → ● → **Y**
- Edit items in the same way as saving entries.

#### Deleting

- ☒ → Yes → ●

### Changing/deleting portraits

- Start Here** ● → **Settings** → ● → In Phone menu, **Locks** → ● → **Face Recognition** → ● → **User Registration** → ● → Enter Handset Code → ● → Select from **User 1 to User 5** → ● → **Face Image:** → ● → Select from **Image 1 to Image 5** → See below

#### Changing

- → ☒ → Yes → ● → ● → ● → ☒ → **1:00m** → **Y**

#### Deleting

- Y** → Yes → ● → **1:00m** → **Y**

### Changing accuracy level

- → **Settings** → ● → In Phone menu, **Locks** → ● → **Face Recognition** → ● → **Security Level** → ● → Select level → ●
- When set to **Low(Mask)**, handset recognizes faces with masks.

### Changing recognition guide option

- → **Settings** → ● → In Phone menu, **Locks** → ● → **Face Recognition** → ● → **Conductor Setting** → ● → Select option → ●

### Opening contact information when recognition fails

- → **Settings** → ● → In Phone menu, **Locks** → ● → **Face Recognition** → ● → **Report** → ● → Enter Handset Code → ● → Enter contact information → ●



<b>Data Folder .....</b>	<b>12-2</b>
Opening Files .....	12-3
Managing Files & Folders .....	12-4

<b>Memory Card .....</b>	<b>12-5</b>
Using Memory Card .....	12-5
<b>Additional Functions .....</b>	<b>12-7</b>
<b>Troubleshooting .....</b>	<b>12-9</b>

# 12

## Data Folder & Memory Card





## Data Folder

Handset files are organized in folders by file format.

### ■ Preset Folders

	Contents
Pictures*	Still images
DCIM	Large still images on Memory Card (images captured with save location set to <b>DCIM</b> )
Ring Songs-Tones*	Downloaded melodies and other sound files
S! Appli*	S! Applications
Widget*	Widgets
Music*	Downloaded Chaku-Uta Full® files
Videos*	Video images
Lifestyle-Appli*	Lifestyle-Appli required to use Osaifu-Keitai®
Books*	Downloaded e-Books, etc.
Customized Screen*	Downloaded Customized Screen files
Status Templates	Combinations of Status Icon and Status Label for S! Friend's Status
Decoration Call*	Decoration Call files created on handset or obtained via mail
Flash®	Downloaded Flash® (animation) files
Other Documents	Other files (Dictionary files, etc.)

\*Contains corresponding Yahoo! Keitai menu shortcut.

### Checking Memory Status

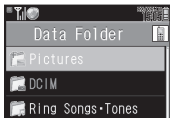
☉ ➔ Data Folder ➔ ☉ ➔ Memory Status ➔ ☉ ➔ Phone Memory or Memory Card ➔ ☉

- The category **Others**: includes Data Folder management files, Saved Pages, etc.
- Delete messages/files when memory is low. Handset performance may be affected when memory is full.



## Opening Files

### 1 Data Folder



- Unselectable files/folders appear in gray.
- To show/hide sub folders, select a folder and press  $\odot$ .

### 2 Select folder

To open a sub folder, select it and press  $\odot$ .



File List

### 3 Select file



- The content plays or appears.
- To return to file list, press  $\square$ .

#### Handling Open Images

- Press  $\odot$  to enlarge, or press  $\#$  or  $\ast$  to open next/previous ones. Press  $\odot$  to rotate 90 degrees clockwise.

#### Attaching to Mail

After  $\odot$ , select file  $\rightarrow$   $\square$   $\rightarrow$  *Send/ Blog*  $\rightarrow$   $\odot$   $\rightarrow$  *As Message*  $\rightarrow$   $\odot$

- If a confirmation appears, follow onscreen instructions.

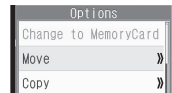
#### Copy Protected Files ( $\square$ or $\ast$ )

- Some functions may be unavailable.

### Slide Show

Available for Pictures or DCIM folder.

### 1 In file list, select file $\rightarrow$ $\square$



### 2 Slide Show $\rightarrow$ $\odot$

- Slide Show starts.

### 3 $\odot$ $\rightarrow$ Slide Show stops

#### Changing Interval

After  $\odot$ ,  $\square$   $\rightarrow$  *Speed*  $\rightarrow$   $\odot$   $\rightarrow$  *Select speed*  $\rightarrow$   $\odot$

- When Speed is set to **Manual**, press  $\odot$ / $\#$  or  $\ast$  to advance or reverse frame.

#### Note

- Backlight stays on during Slide Show; exit to save battery power.

## Advanced

- $\square$  Switching file list view
- $\odot$  Changing image quality
- $\odot$  Changing Slide Show settings
- $\odot$  Showing Softkeys in image view
- $\odot$  Using files as Wallpaper
- $\odot$  Using files as ringtones
- $\odot$  Using files as ringvideos (And more on P.12-7 - 12-8)





## Using Memory Card

Use microSD™/microSDHC™ Memory Card (hereafter "Memory Card") to save and organize files for use on 933SH. Use recommended Memory Cards only. For details, see **P.15-23** "microSD™ Memory Card Compatibility."

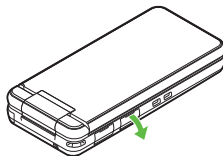
### Important Memory Card Usage Notes

- Do not force Memory Card into or out of handset.
- Keep Memory Cards out of infant's reach; may cause suffocation if swallowed.
- Do not touch terminals or expose them to metal objects.
- SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of information. Keep a copy of Phone Book entries, etc. in a separate place.
- Never remove Memory Card or battery while files are being accessed.
- Be careful not to erase or overwrite files accidentally.

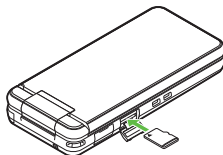
### Inserting & Removing

Turn handset power off first.

#### 1 Open cover

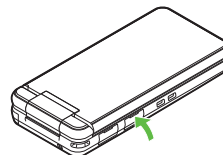


#### 2 Insert card



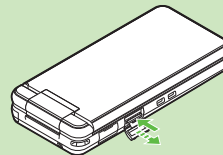
- With terminal side down, insert card until it clicks.
- Do not insert other objects into Memory Card Slot.

#### 3 Close cover



#### If Appears after Power On

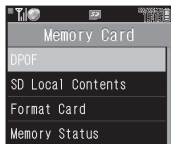
- Memory Card may not be inserted properly; reinsert the card.
- #### Removing Memory Card
- Gently push in card and release it; card pops out. Pull card straight out gently.



## Format Card

When using a new Memory Card for the first time, format it on the handset before trying to save files, etc. Format Card deletes all Memory Card files, even those created on other devices.

- 1 **Settings** **Connectivity** **Memory Card**



- 2 **Format Card** **Yes**

- Offline Mode is set. Handset transmissions are suspended until format is complete.

- 3 **Enter Handset Code**



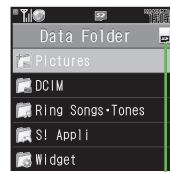
- 4 **Yes**
- To cancel, choose **No** and press .

## Precaution

- Never remove Memory Card or battery while formatting; may cause damage.

## Opening Memory Card Files

- 1 **Data Folder**
- 2 **Change to MemoryCard**



appears

- Memory Card Data Folder opens.

- 3 **Select folder**
- To open a sub folder, select it and press .
- 4 **Select file**

## Advanced

- Using HTML files on Memory Card (P.12-8)



File/Folder View Settings	
Switching file list view	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <b>Data Folder</b> → ● → Select folder → ⊞</li> <li>→ <b>Manage Items</b> → ● → <b>Change List View</b> →</li> <li>● → Select option → ●</li> </ul>
Changing image quality	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <b>Data Folder</b> → ● → Select folder → ●</li> <li>→ Select file → ● → ⊞ → <b>Switch Display</b></li> <li>(<b>Picture Quality</b> for Flash® files) → ● → Select quality → ●</li> </ul>
Changing transition effect for sequential image viewing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <b>Data Folder</b> → ● → Select folder → ●</li> <li>→ Select file → ● → ⊞ → <b>Switch Effect</b> → ●</li> <li>→ Select effect → ●</li> </ul>
Changing Slide Show settings	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Start Here</b> ● → <b>Data Folder</b> → ● → Select folder</li> <li>→ ● → Select file → ⊞ → <b>Slide Show</b> → ●</li> <li>→ ⊞ → See below</li> </ul>
	<p><b>Playing Once</b></p> <p><b>Repeat</b> → ● → <b>Off</b> → ●</p>
	<p><b>Playing Music</b></p> <p><b>BGM Settings</b> → ● → <b>Switch On/Off</b> → ● → <b>On</b> → ●</p>
	<p><b>Changing Music</b></p> <p><b>BGM Settings</b> → ● → <b>Play Ring Tones</b> → ●</p> <p>→ Select folder → ● → Select file → ●</p>
	<p><b>Changing Key Illumination Pattern</b></p> <p><b>Illumination</b> → ● → <b>Key Pattern</b> → ● →</p> <p>Select pattern → ● → ⊞</p>
	<p><b>Disabling Key Illumination</b></p> <p><b>Illumination</b> → ● → <b>Switch On/Off</b> → ● → <b>Off</b> → ● → ⊞</p>

Changing Slide Show settings	<p><b>Showing Softkeys</b></p> <p><b>SW Guide Display</b> → ● → <b>On</b> → ●</p>
	<p><b>Setting Backlight to Turn Off after a Period of Time</b></p> <p><b>Always Backlight</b> → ● → <b>Off</b> → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Choosing <b>Off</b> applies Display Backlight setting. (Display remains on during Slide Show regardless of Display Saving settings.)</li> </ul>
	<p><b>Changing Image Transition Effect</b></p> <p><b>Switch Effect</b> → ● → Select effect → ●</p>
Showing Softkeys in image view	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <b>Data Folder</b> → ● → Select folder → ●</li> <li>→ Select file → ● → ⊞ → <b>SW Guide Display</b></li> <li>→ ● → <b>On</b> → ●</li> </ul>

Using Files/Folders	
Using files as Wallpaper	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <b>Data Folder</b> → ● → Select folder → ●</li> <li>→ Select file → ⊞ → <b>Set as Wallpaper</b> → ● →</li> <li><b>Vertical or Horizontal</b> → ● → ●</li> <li>● For images smaller or larger than Display, select an option and press ●.</li> </ul>
Using files as ringtones	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <b>Data Folder</b> → ● → Select folder → ●</li> <li>→ Select file → ⊞ → <b>Set as Ringtone</b> → ● →</li> <li>Select item → ●</li> <li>● If prompted, enter ring time and press ●.</li> <li>● If a confirmation appears, follow onscreen instructions.</li> </ul>
Using files as ringvideos	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <b>Data Folder</b> → ● → <b>Videos</b> → ● →</li> <li>Select file → ⊞ → <b>Set as Ring Video</b> → ● →</li> <li>Select item → ●</li> <li>● If prompted, enter ring time and press ●.</li> </ul>



Saving Phone Book entries	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <b>Data Folder</b> → ● → Select folder → ●</li> <li>→ Select file → ☹ → <b>Save to Phone Book</b> →</li> <li>● → <b>As New Entry</b> → ● → Complete other fields → ☹</li> <li>● To add to an existing entry, select <b>As New Detail</b>.</li> </ul>
Activating mobile camera, etc. in corresponding folders	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <b>Data Folder</b> → ● → Select folder → ●</li> <li>→ ☹ → <b>Take Picture, Record Video or Record Voice</b> → ●</li> </ul>

### Managing Files/Folders

Renaming folders	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <b>Data Folder</b> → ● → Select folder → ●</li> <li>→ Select folder → ☹ → <b>Manage Items</b> → ● →</li> <li><b>Rename</b> → ● → Enter name → ●</li> <li>● Assign different names to folders within a layer.</li> </ul>
Opening file properties	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <b>Data Folder</b> → ● → Select folder → ●</li> <li>→ Select file → ☹ → <b>Details</b> → ●</li> </ul>
Renaming files	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <b>Data Folder</b> → ● → Select folder → ●</li> <li>→ Select file → ☹ → <b>Manage Items</b> → ● →</li> <li><b>Rename</b> → ● → Enter name → ●</li> </ul>
Sorting files	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <b>Data Folder</b> → ● → Select folder → ●</li> <li>→ ☹ → <b>Manage Items</b> → ● → <b>Sort</b> → ● →</li> <li>Select method → ●</li> </ul>
Deleting files & created folders	<p><b>[Start Here]</b> ● → <b>Data Folder</b> → ● → Select folder → ● → See below</p> <p><b>Single Files</b> Select file → ☹ → <b>Delete</b> → ● → <b>Yes</b> → ●</p> <p><b>Folder &amp; Files Within</b> Select folder → ☹ → <b>Delete</b> → ● → Enter Handset Code → ● → <b>Yes</b> → ●</p>

Handling SVG files	<b>Line Scroll</b> ⊞
	<b>Page Scroll</b> ⊞ (Up), ⊞ (Down), ⊞ (Right), ⊞ (Left)
	<b>Zoom</b> ⊞ (Zoom out), ⊞ (Zoom in)
	<b>Rotate</b> ⊞ (Counterclockwise), ⊞ (Clockwise)
	<b>Key Action Mode</b> ⊞
<b>Default View</b> ⊞	

### Memory Card

Using HTML files on Memory Card	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <b>Settings</b> → ● → ☹ <b>Connectivity</b> →</li> <li><b>Memory Card</b> → ● → <b>SD Local Contents</b> →</li> <li>● → Select title → ●</li> </ul>
---------------------------------	--



## Managing Files/Folders



### Cannot copy files

- Files may be copy/forward protected. (If a copy/forward protected file is included in selected files, only the remaining files are copied.)



### Copied/moved files cannot be used on PCs, etc.

- Some files may not be usable on other SoftBank handsets or PCs, etc.



### Cannot sort files properly

- Check the number of files/folders in the folder. Files/folders in folders containing 241 or more files/folders are sorted per 240 files/folders in the order they were saved. The order may change when a file/folder is deleted, etc.



### Cannot use some characters in file/folder names

- Single-byte Symbols  $\backslash$ , /, :, ;, ,, <, >, /, ?, \* and " are not supported.





<b>Infrared</b> .....	<b>13-2</b>
Transferring Files via Infrared .....	13-3
<b>IC Transmission</b> .....	<b>13-5</b>
Transferring Files via IC Transmission	
.....	13-6
<b>Bluetooth®</b> .....	<b>13-7</b>
Transferring Files via Bluetooth®....	13-8
<b>External Device Connection</b> .....	<b>13-11</b>
Connecting PC or Blu-ray Disc	
Recorder.....	13-11

<b>Backup</b> .....	<b>13-12</b>
Basics.....	13-12
Backup & Restore .....	13-13
<b>S! Addressbook Back-up (SAB)</b> ....	<b>13-14</b>
About SAB.....	13-14
Backup & Restore .....	13-16
<b>Additional Functions</b> .....	<b>13-17</b>
<b>Troubleshooting</b> .....	<b>13-20</b>

# 13

## Connectivity & File Backup



## Infrared

Wirelessly transfer files between 933SH and compatible devices.

### Transferable Files

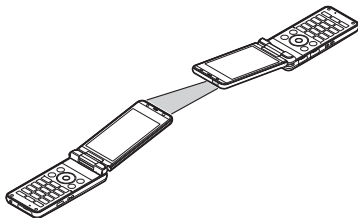
Phone Book	Received Msg.
Calendar	Sent Messages
Tasks	Drafts
Notepad	Templates (Messaging)
Bookmarks	Data Folder

- Copy/forward protected files are not transferable.
- Some files may not be transferable; some settings may be lost, or files may not be saved properly. For details, see "Troubleshooting" at the end of this chapter.

### Getting Started

#### Infrared Precautions

Align Infrared Ports of both devices.



- Do not place objects between devices.
- Keep Infrared Ports aligned during transfer.
- Do not look into Infrared Port during infrared transmissions. Eyesight may be affected.

### Transfer Options

<b>One File Transfer</b>	Transfer single files
<b>All File Transfer</b>	Transfer all files by function
<b>IrSS Transfer</b>	Exchange single image files with compatible devices at high speed

- Some transfer options may be unavailable depending on file type.
- Transfer Memory Card files one by one.

#### Authorization Code

- Four-digit code required for Infrared transfers. All File Transfers possible when codes match. (Authorization Code is changeable for each transfer.)




# Transferring Files via Infrared

## Receiving Files

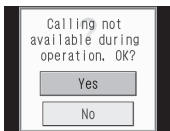
### 1 (Long)



 appears

- Infrared is activated. (Alternatively, activate it via Main Menu.)
- Handset receives files if sent within three minutes.
- Handset must be in Standby to accept connection requests.
- To cancel Infrared, Long Press .

### 2 Connection request arrives



Request Window


### 3 Perform subsequent operations

- To cancel transfer, press .

## Subsequent Operations

### ■ One File Transfer

Yes ➔  ➔ Yes ➔ 

- If storage media confirmation appears, select media and press .

### ■ All File Transfer (Adding Files)

Yes ➔  ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔

 ➔ Enter Authorization Code ➔

 ➔ As New Items ➔ 

### ■ All File Transfer (Overwriting Existing Files)

Yes ➔  ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔

 ➔ Enter Authorization Code ➔

 ➔ Delete All & Save ➔  ➔ Yes ➔ 



- For Phone Book, My Details except handset phone number is overwritten as well.

### ■ IrSS Transfer

Yes ➔ 

- Files are saved to Data Folder (Pictures).

## Advanced

-   Activating Infrared via Main Menu (P.13-17)

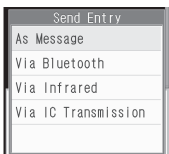


## Sending Files

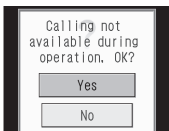
## One File Transfer

Example: Phone Book entry

- 1 → **Select entry** → → **Send Entry** →



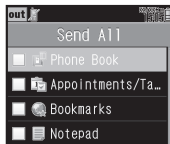
- 2 **Via Infrared** →



- 3 **Yes** → → **Transfer starts**
  - When complete, entry search window returns.

## All File Transfer

- 1 → **Settings** → → → **Connectivity** → **Infrared** →
- 2 **Send All** →
- 3 **Yes** → → **Enter Handset Code** →



- 4 **Select item** → (  /  ) → **Complete selection** →
- 5 **Enter Authorization Code** → → **Transfer starts** →

## Sending Phone Book

- In , Picture transfer confirmation appears; follow these steps:  
**Yes or No** →

## Sending JPEG Images at High Speed

- 1 → **Data Folder** →
- 2 **Pictures or DCIM** →   
For *DCIM*, select a folder and press .
- 3 **Select image** → (Long)



- 4 **Yes or No** → → **Transfer starts**
  - Images may be reduced automatically before transfer depending on the size.
  - When complete, file list returns.
  - Transfers are one-way; end even if files are not received.

## Advanced

- Sending My Details
- Sending non-Phone Book files
- Sending images via IrSS Transfer without reducing size (P.13-17)

## IC Transmission

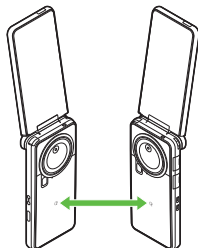
Wirelessly transfer files between 933SH and compatible devices.

- For transferable files, see **P.13-2**.
- Cancel IC Card Lock beforehand.
- Disconnect Headphones, USB Cable and AC Charger beforehand.

### Getting Started

#### IC Transmission Precautions

Align  logos of both devices.



Align  logos

Keep  logos aligned during transfer.

### Transfer Options

<b>One File Transfer</b>	Transfer single files
<b>All File Transfer</b>	Transfer all files by function

- Some transfer options may be unavailable depending on file type.
- Transfer Memory Card files one by one.

#### Authorization Code

- Four-digit code required for IC transfers. All File Transfers possible when codes match. (Authorization Code is changeable for each transfer.)

### Advanced

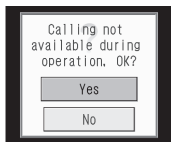
-   Disabling one file reception (**P.13-17**)



# Transferring Files via IC Transmission

## Receiving Files

### 1 Connection request arrives



Request Window

- Handset must be in Standby to accept connection requests.


### 2 Perform subsequent operations

- To cancel transfer, press .

## Subsequent Operations

### One File Transfer

Yes  $\rightarrow$    $\rightarrow$  Yes  $\rightarrow$  

- If storage media confirmation appears, select media and press .

### All File Transfer (Adding Files)

Yes  $\rightarrow$    $\rightarrow$  Enter Handset Code  $\rightarrow$

  $\rightarrow$  Enter Authorization Code  $\rightarrow$

  $\rightarrow$  As New Items  $\rightarrow$  

### All File Transfer (Overwriting Existing Files)

Yes  $\rightarrow$    $\rightarrow$  Enter Handset Code  $\rightarrow$  

$\rightarrow$  Enter Authorization Code  $\rightarrow$    $\rightarrow$

Delete All & Save  $\rightarrow$    $\rightarrow$  Yes  $\rightarrow$  

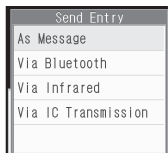
- For Phone Book, My Details except handset phone number is overwritten as well.

## Sending Files

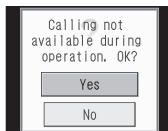
### One File Transfer

Example: Phone Book entry

### 1 $\rightarrow$ Select entry $\rightarrow$ $\rightarrow$ Send Entry $\rightarrow$



### 2 Via IC Transmission $\rightarrow$



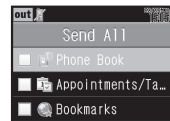
### 3 Yes $\rightarrow$ $\rightarrow$ Transfer starts

### All File Transfer

### 1 $\rightarrow$ Settings $\rightarrow$ $\rightarrow$ Connectivity $\rightarrow$ IC Transmission $\rightarrow$

### 2 Send All $\rightarrow$



### 3 Yes $\rightarrow$ $\rightarrow$ Enter Handset Code $\rightarrow$




### 4 Select item $\rightarrow$ ( ) $\rightarrow$ Complete selection $\rightarrow$

### 5 Enter Authorization Code $\rightarrow$ $\rightarrow$ Transfer starts $\rightarrow$

### Sending Phone Book

- In , Picture transfer confirmation appears; follow these steps:  
Yes or No  $\rightarrow$  

## Advanced

-  Sending My Details
-  Sending non-Phone Book files (P.13-17)

## Bluetooth®

Wirelessly transfer files/data between 933SH and compatible devices (watches, handsfree devices, etc.).

- For transferable files, see **P.13-2**.
- 933SH supports simultaneous connection with two devices. (May be unavailable depending on the device type.)
- Bluetooth® connection may not be possible with some Bluetooth® devices.
  - Handset shall be connected to certified Bluetooth® devices that meet the specification standards developed by Bluetooth SIG.
  - Data transfers may fail depending on characteristics or specifications of the certified Bluetooth® devices.
  - Noise may interfere with wireless or handsfree conversations.
- TV audio is supported only on SCMS-T DRM scheme compliant Bluetooth® devices.

### Getting Started

#### Bluetooth® Precautions

Check transmission range of your Bluetooth® device to use with handset properly. Maximum transmission range for transfers between 933SH handsets is ten meters. (Bluetooth® connection/transfer rate may vary depending on conditions.)

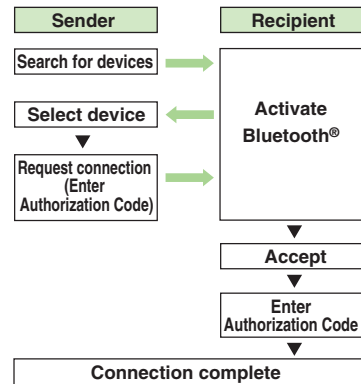
#### Handsfree Device Precaution

- Handle call operations on the device in use.

#### Bluetooth® Watches

- Compatible Bluetooth® watches support these functions:
  - Time Correction
  - Alarm Notice
  - News Notice
  - Mail Notice
  - Remote Shutter
  - Mode Settings
  - Quick Silent
  - Caller ID Notice
  - Hold Calls
  - Operator Notice
- For details about functions/operations, see the Bluetooth® watch guide.

### Bluetooth® Connection



#### Authorization Code

- 4 to 16-digit code required for Bluetooth® connections. Pairing possible when codes match.
- For handsfree devices, enter specified Authorization Code.

### Advanced

- Cloaking handset to avoid connection requests
- Setting idle time after which Bluetooth® is canceled
- Switching audio output to wireless device
- Changing Bluetooth® name for handset
- Talking on handsfree device
- Avoiding connection requests from Bluetooth®-compatible S! Applications in Standby, etc.
- Opening Bluetooth®-related handset properties (**P.13-17**)
- Synchronizing Bluetooth® watch with handset
- Enabling/disabling Bluetooth® watch responses (**P.13-18**)




# Transferring Files via Bluetooth®

## Activating Bluetooth®

### 1 (Long)



Bluetooth icon appears

- Bluetooth® is activated.
- Handset must be in Standby to accept connection requests from unpaired handsfree devices, etc.
- To cancel Bluetooth®, Long Press .

## Connecting Bluetooth® Devices

### Device Search & Pairing

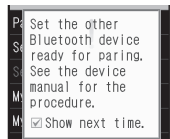
Activate Bluetooth® on devices to be paired with.



### 1 → Settings → → Connectivity → Bluetooth →




Bluetooth Menu

### 2 Add Device →




- To disable confirmation, press  before .

### 3

- Found devices are listed after search.
- Press  to cancel.







### 4 Select device →

If a confirmation appears, choose **Yes** and press .

### 5 Enter the same Authorization Code for handset and the other device → → Pairing complete

- On the other device, complete code entry within 30 seconds.
- Authorization Codes are not necessary for paired devices.

## Advanced

-   Activating Bluetooth® via Main Menu
-  Editing Paired Device list
-  Disconnecting devices
-  Connecting devices supporting handsfree telephony and audio output by service
-  Specifying a preferred device for wireless connection (P.13-17 - 13-18)





## Connecting Paired Devices

### 1 In Bluetooth menu, *Paired Devices* ➔ ●



Paired Device List

### 2 Select device ➔ ●

If handset is already connected to another device, disconnection confirmation may appear; choose **Yes** and press ●.

- The device is connected and  (preferred) appears.

## Accepting Connection Requests

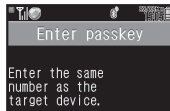
Follow these steps to accept connection requests from unpaired devices:

### 1 Connection request arrives



Request Window

### 2 Yes ➔ ●



### 3 Enter the same Authorization Code as sender's ➔ ●

- Complete code entry within 30 seconds.



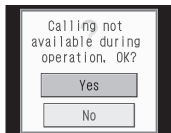
## Transferring Files

Follow the steps below to exchange files with paired devices.

- For transferable files, see P.13-2.
- When requested, enter Authorization Code.

### Receiving Files

#### 1 Connection request arrives




#### 2 Perform subsequent operations

- To cancel transfer, press .




### Subsequent Operations

#### One File Transfer


Yes →  → Yes → 

- If storage media confirmation appears, select media and press .

#### All File Transfer (Adding Files)

Yes →  → Enter Handset Code →  → As New Items → 

#### All File Transfer (Overwriting Existing Files)

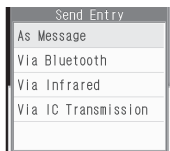
Yes →  → Enter Handset Code →  → Delete All & Save →  → Yes → 

### Sending Files

#### One File Transfer

Example: Phone Book entry

1  → Select entry →  → Send Entry → 




2 Via Bluetooth → 

3 Select device → 

4 Yes →  → Transfer starts

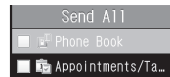
- When complete, entry search window returns.

### All File Transfer

1 In Bluetooth menu, *Send All* → 


2 Select device →  → Yes → 

3 Enter Handset Code → 




4 Select item →  (  /  ) → Complete selection →  → Transfer starts → 

#### Sending Phone Book

- In 4, Picture transfer confirmation appears; follow these steps:  
Yes or No → 

## Advanced

-  Sending My Details
-  Sending non-Phone Book files (P.13-18)



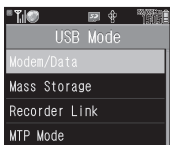
## Connecting PC or Blu-ray Disc Recorder

### Connecting PC

#### Accessing Memory Card

Connect handset to a PC via USB Cable to access Memory Card from the PC without removing card from handset. USB Cable may be purchased separately.

### 1 Connect handset to a PC via USB Cable



### 2 Mass Storage →

- Use PC to access Memory Card.

### 3 Yes →

#### Connection ends

- Disconnect USB Cable.

#### If Menu in 1 Does Not Appear

- Follow these steps:
  - Settings → Connectivity → USB Mode →
  - From
  - Operations on the PC may be required; if prompted, follow onscreen instructions.

#### Utility Software (Japanese)

For more PC-related operations, download Utility Software (including USB Cable driver) from the following URL.

#### • Utility Software

<http://k-tai.sharp.co.jp/download/tools/utility/>

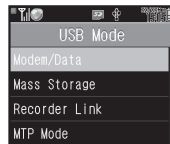
#### Mobile Data Communication Fees

- Using the Internet by connecting handset to PC/PDA via USB Cable or Bluetooth® may incur high charges as large-volume packet transmissions tend to occur in a short period of time.

### Connecting Blu-ray Disc Recorder

- Connect handset to a Blu-ray Disc recorder via USB Cable to transfer recorded programs to Memory Card without removing card from handset.
- Compatible only with SHARP Blu-ray Disc recorders. For details, see P.15-23 "Compatible Blu-ray Disc Recorders."
  - USB Cable may be purchased separately.

### 1 Connect handset to a Blu-ray Disc recorder via USB Cable



### 2 Recorder Link →

- Transfer files from Blu-ray Disc recorder to Memory Card.

### 3 Yes →

#### Connection ends

- Open transferred files via Recorder Contents in TV menu or Media Player menu (Videos).

#### If Menu in 1 Does Not Appear

- Follow these steps:
  - Settings → Connectivity → USB Mode →
  - From
  - Operations on the PC may be required; if prompted, follow onscreen instructions.



## Basics

Back up information to Memory Card, and restore to handset as needed.

### Supported Items

Select items to back up, or transfer all at once. Items with \* are selectable at once via **Check Selection** in Options menu.

Phone Book*	Drafts*
Calendar*	Templates (Messaging)
Tasks*	Contents Keys
Bookmarks*	Data Folder
Notepad*	Received Msg.*
Mail Groups*	Sent Messages*
User Dictionary	

### Precautions

- Not available if battery is low.
- Some items may not be transferable; some settings may be lost, or files may not transfer properly. For details, see "Troubleshooting" at the end of this chapter.

### Transferring All Items

- Use blank Memory Card for **Backup All Items**. Do not use the card to save other files after **Backup All Items**; backed up content may not be restored properly.

### Contents Keys

- Moving Keys to Memory Card creates a special file. Performing Backup again on the same Memory Card overwrites that file. Perform Restore beforehand.

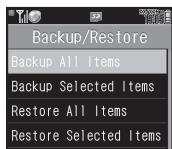


# Backup & Restore

## Handset to Memory Card

Follow these steps to back up selected items at once:

- 1 → **Settings** → → → **Connectivity** → **Backup/Restore** →



Backup/Restore Menu

- 2 **Backup Selected Items** → → **Enter Handset Code** →
- 3 **Yes** →
- 4 **Select item** → (□/✓) → **Complete selection**
  - For *Phone Book*, confirmation appears. Choose **Yes** or **No** and press .

- 5 → **Yes** →
  - To cancel, press .

- 6 **Backup complete** → →

### Selecting Multiple Items at Once

In 4, → **Select option** → →

From 5

### Selecting/Canceling All Items

In 4, → **Check All or Uncheck All**

→

## Memory Card to Handset

Follow these steps to restore selected items:

(Restoring backed up content to handset overwrites current--with the exception of Contents Keys--handset content.)

- 1 In **Backup/Restore menu**, **Restore Selected Items** → → **Enter Handset Code** →
- 2 **Yes** →
- 3 **Select item** → (□/✓) → **Complete selection**

- 4
  - If no file list appears, skip ahead to 7.

- 5 **Select file** →
  - Repeat 5 to complete selection.

- 6

- 7 **Yes** →
  - To cancel, press .

- 8 **Restore complete** → →

### Selecting Multiple Items at Once

In 3, → **Select option** → →

From 4

### Selecting/Canceling All Items

In 3, → **Check All or Uncheck All**

→

### Changing Restoration Method

After 3, select item → → **Change to Add Mode or Chg. to Overwrite Mode** → → From 4

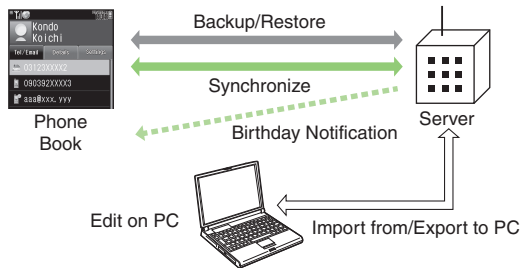
## Advanced

- Backing up all items ● Encoding data for backup ● Restoring all items ● Deleting backup files (P.13-19)



## About SAB

Back up Phone Book content in SAB; add Phone Book changes to SAB anytime. Edit SAB online via PC; add SAB changes to Phone Book anytime. Restore lost or altered Phone Book content from SAB.



- SAB requires a separate contract and basic monthly fee.
- Use SAB to add Phone Book content to a new compatible SoftBank handset; some conditions apply (P.13-15).
- Use a PC to edit SAB online.
- For more about SAB, see SoftBank Mobile Website (P.15-23).
- Sync commands (Backup, Restore and Synchronize) all incur transmission fees.

### Auto Synchronization

- When subscribed to SAB, Network Information retrieval activates auto synchronization (Set Auto Sync: **On**, Set Frequency: **After Editing Ph.Book(10 min.)**, Set Sync Mode: **Synchronize**); Phone Book changes are added to SAB automatically.
- Cancel auto synchronization as needed. However, it reactivates after Network Information retrieval.

## SAB Sync Commands & Features

Backup/ Restore	Backup	Export Phone Book content to SAB <sup>1</sup>
	Restore	Import SAB content to Phone Book <sup>2</sup>
Synchronize	Synchronize	Synchronize Phone Book and SAB <sup>3</sup>
	Sync from Client	Add Phone Book changes to SAB <sup>4</sup>
	Sync from Server	Add SAB changes to Phone Book <sup>5</sup>
Edit on PC	Import from PC	Upload PC address book info to SAB
	Export to PC	Export SAB content to PC address book
Send Notice <sup>6</sup>	Birthday Notification	SAB sends reminders via SMS to handset
	Email Address Notification <sup>7</sup>	Send new handset mail address to specified addresses
	"Disaster Message Board" Message Notification <sup>8</sup>	Send emergency message board update to specified addresses
Spam Filter	Tomodachi Email Filter <sup>9</sup>	Always accept messages from mail addresses saved in SAB

<sup>1</sup> Any existing SAB content is deleted.

<sup>2</sup> Any existing Phone Book content is deleted.

<sup>3</sup> If the same entry item is edited in Phone Book and SAB, SAB content is referenced.

<sup>4</sup> Unrelated SAB changes remain.

<sup>5</sup> Unrelated Phone Book changes remain.

<sup>6</sup> Access this function via handset or a PC.

<sup>7</sup> Backup resets notification setting; handset address is sent to all addresses.

<sup>8</sup> Backup resets notification setting; updates are not sent to any address.

<sup>9</sup> Export Phone Book content to SAB beforehand.



## Service Usage Outline

### Complete Contract

Visit a SoftBank Shop, dial 157 from a SoftBank handset for SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information or access My SoftBank (Japanese) via Yahoo! Keitai.



### Receive User ID & Password

After subscription, user ID and password arrive via SMS.

- User ID and password are required to use SAB via a PC.



### Use SAB

Export Phone Book content to SAB.

## Precautions

### ■ Unsynchronizable Items

SAB restoration cancels these Phone Book settings:

- Picture, Tone/Video, Light, Vibration

### ■ Unintentional Phone Book or SAB Content Deletion

- When no Phone Book content exists, selecting **Synchronize**, **Sync from Client** or **Backup** deletes all SAB content.
- When no SAB content exists, selecting **Synchronize**, **Sync from Server** or **Restore** deletes all Phone Book content.

### ■ Phone Book ⇄ SAB Content Capacity Disparities

When the number of savable items varies between Phone Book and SAB entries, Synchronization reflects lower limit.

### ■ Contract Termination

SAB content is deleted upon contract termination.

### ■ SAB Transfers to New Handsets

- **SAB-Compatible 3G Handsets**  
SAB remains as last saved and is fully accessible.
- **Other 3G Handsets**  
SAB remains as last saved and is accessible via PC.
- **V3/V4/V5/V6/V8 Series**  
Service contract is terminated and SAB content is deleted.

### ■ When Double Number is Active

Regardless of usage mode setting, all Phone Book content is backed up.

## Advanced

- ☞ Cancelling auto synchronization (P.13-19)

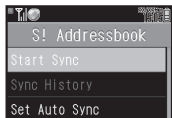


## Backup & Restore

### Backup (Phone Book → SAB)

Any existing SAB content is deleted.

- 1 → **Phone** → → **S! Addressbook Backup** →



S! Addressbook Menu

- 2 **Start Sync** → → **Backup** →

- 3 **Yes** → → **Enter Handset Code** →

- Backup starts; when complete, details appear.

- 4 → **Backup complete**

#### Canceling Backup

- **Yes** →

### Restore (SAB → Phone Book)

Any existing Phone Book content is deleted.

- 1 In S! Addressbook menu, **Start Sync** → → **Restore** →

- 2 **Yes** → → **Enter Handset Code** →

- Restore starts; when complete, details appear.

- 3 → **Restore complete**

#### Canceling Restore

- **Yes** →

### Synchronizing Phone Book

Synchronize Options:

<b>Synchronize</b>	Synchronize Phone Book and SAB
<b>Sync from Client</b>	Add Phone Book changes to SAB
<b>Sync from Server</b>	Add SAB changes to Phone Book

If this is your first use of SAB (new handset), Synchronization is performed via Synchronize regardless of selection.

- 1 In S! Addressbook menu, **Start Sync** → → **Select option** →

- 2 **Yes** → → **Enter Handset Code** →

- Synchronization starts; when complete, details appear.

- 3 → **Synchronization complete**

#### Canceling Synchronization

- **Yes** →

### Advanced

- Changing auto synchronization settings Confirming user ID & password Opening log (P.13-19)





Infrared	
Activating Infrared via Main Menu	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Settings → ● → Connectivity → Infrared → ● → Switch On/Off → ● → On(3 min.) → ●</li> </ul>
Sending My Details	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → [□*] → ☺ → Send My Card → ● → Via Infrared → ● → Yes → ● → Transfer starts</li> </ul>
Sending non-Phone Book files	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In file list, select file → ☺ → Send (or Send/Blog) → ● → Via Infrared → ● → Yes → ● → Transfer starts</li> </ul>
Sending images via IrSS Transfer without reducing size	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Settings → ● → Connectivity → Infrared → ● → IrSS Key Setting → ● → Send via IrSS → ●</li> </ul>

IC Transmission	
Disabling one file reception	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Settings → ● → Connectivity → IC Transmission → ● → 1 File Reception → ● → Off(Disabled) → ●</li> </ul>
Sending My Details	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → [□*] → ☺ → Send My Card → ● → Via IC Transmission → ● → Yes → ● → Transfer starts</li> </ul>
Sending non-Phone Book files	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In file list, select file → ☺ → Send (or Send/Blog) → ● → Via IC Transmission → ● → Yes → ● → Transfer starts</li> </ul>

Bluetooth®	
<b>General</b>	
Cloaking handset to avoid connection requests	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Settings → ● → Connectivity → Bluetooth → ● → My Device Settings → ● → Visibility → ● → Hide My Phone → ●</li> </ul>
Setting idle time after which Bluetooth® is canceled	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Settings → ● → Connectivity → Bluetooth → ● → My Device Settings → ● → Bluetooth Timeout → ● → Select time → ●</li> </ul>
Switching audio output to wireless device	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Settings → ● → Connectivity → Bluetooth → ● → My Device Settings → ● → Sound Output → ● → Bluetooth Device → ●</li> <li>• Bluetooth Device is set automatically when connection is made from wireless Headphones.</li> </ul>
Changing Bluetooth® name for handset	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Settings → ● → Connectivity → Bluetooth → ● → My Device Settings → ● → Device Name → ● → Enter name → ●</li> </ul>
Talking on handsfree device	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Settings → ● → Connectivity → Bluetooth → ● → My Device Settings → ● → Handsfree Setting → ● → Handsfree Mode → ●</li> </ul>
Avoiding connection requests from Bluetooth®-compatible S! Applications in Standby, etc.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Settings → ● → Connectivity → Bluetooth → ● → My Device Settings → ● → S! Appli Request → ● → Off → ●</li> </ul>
Opening Bluetooth®-related handset properties	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Settings → ● → Connectivity → Bluetooth → ● → My Device Details → ●</li> <li>• Press (v) to view service details.</li> </ul>
Activating Bluetooth® via Main Menu	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Settings → ● → Connectivity → Bluetooth → ● → Switch On/Off → ● → On → ●</li> </ul>



## Bluetooth® Watches

Synchronizing Bluetooth® watch with handset	<p>  → <b>Settings</b> →  → <b>Connectivity</b> → <b>Bluetooth</b> →  → <b>Setting Watch</b> →  → <b>Set BT-Watch Time</b> →  → <b>Yes</b> →  </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Connect handset to a Bluetooth® watch beforehand.</li> </ul>
Enabling/disabling Bluetooth® watch responses	<p>  → <b>Settings</b> →  → <b>Connectivity</b> → <b>Bluetooth</b> →  → <b>Setting Watch</b> →  → <b>Notification</b> →  → <b>Select item</b> →  → <b>Permit or Prohibit</b> →  </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Register a Bluetooth® watch beforehand.</li> </ul>

## Paired Devices

Editing Paired Device list	<p>  → <b>Settings</b> →  → <b>Connectivity</b> → <b>Bluetooth</b> →  → <b>Paired Devices</b> →  → <b>Select device</b> →  → <b>See below</b> </p> <p><b>Renaming Paired Devices</b></p> <p><b>Change Name</b> →  → <b>Enter name</b> → </p> <p><b>Deleting Paired Devices</b></p> <p><b>Delete</b> →  → <b>Yes</b> → </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To delete a device connected to handset, choose <b>Yes</b> and press .</li> </ul>
	<p>  → <b>Settings</b> →  → <b>Connectivity</b> → <b>Bluetooth</b> →  → <b>Paired Devices</b> →  → <b>Select connected device</b> →  </p>
	<p>  → <b>Settings</b> →  → <b>Connectivity</b> → <b>Bluetooth</b> →  → <b>Paired Devices</b> →  → <b>Select device</b> →  → <b>Select Service</b> →  → <b>Handsfree function or Audio function</b> →  </p>
Disconnecting devices	<p>  → <b>Settings</b> →  → <b>Connectivity</b> → <b>Bluetooth</b> →  → <b>Paired Devices</b> →  → <b>Select connected device</b> →  </p>
Connecting devices supporting handsfree telephony and audio output by service	<p>  → <b>Settings</b> →  → <b>Connectivity</b> → <b>Bluetooth</b> →  → <b>Paired Devices</b> →  → <b>Select device</b> →  → <b>Select Service</b> →  → <b>Handsfree function or Audio function</b> →  </p>

Specifying a preferred device for wireless connection	<p>  → <b>Settings</b> →  → <b>Connectivity</b> → <b>Bluetooth</b> →  → <b>Paired Devices</b> →  → <b>Select device</b> →  → <b>Set to Prior Connect</b> →  → <b>See below</b> </p> <p><b>For Handsfree Telephony</b></p> <p><b>Handsfree On</b> → </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• For <b>Handsfree On</b>, specified device reconnects to handset when placing/receiving calls.</li> </ul> <p><b>For Audio Output</b></p> <p><b>Audio On</b> → </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• For <b>Audio On</b>, Media Player/TV audio output is redirected to specified device automatically when  Sound Output is set to <b>Bluetooth Device</b>.</li> </ul>

## Sending Files

Sending My Details	<p>  →  → <b>Send My Card</b> →  → <b>Via Bluetooth</b> →  → <b>Select device</b> →  → <b>Yes</b> →  → <b>Transfer starts</b> </p>
Sending non-Phone Book files	<p>In file list, select file →  → <b>Send (or Send/Blog)</b> →  → <b>Via Bluetooth</b> →  → <b>Select device</b> →  → <b>Yes</b> →  → <b>Transfer starts</b></p>



## Backup

## Backup &amp; Restore

Backing up all items	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Settings → ● → ☺ Connectivity → Backup/Restore → ● → Backup All Items → ● → Enter Handset Code → ● → Yes → ● → Yes → ● → Backup complete → ● → ●</li> </ul>
Encoding data for backup	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Settings → ● → ☺ Connectivity → Backup/Restore → ● → Settings/Manage → ● → Encode Settings → ● → Select item → ● → On → ●</li> <li>• Available for Phone Book, Messaging folders, Calendar and Tasks.</li> </ul>
Restoring all items	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Settings → ● → ☺ Connectivity → Backup/Restore → ● → Restore All Items → ● → Enter Handset Code → ● → Yes → ● → Yes → ● → Restore complete → ● → ●</li> </ul>
<b>Backup Files</b>	
Deleting backup files	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Settings → ● → ☺ Connectivity → Backup/Restore → ● → Settings/Manage → ● → File Management → ● → Select item → ● → Select file → ● (☐/☑) → Complete selection → ▾ → Yes → ●</li> </ul>

## S! Addressbook Back-up

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Phone → ● → S! Addressbook Backup → ● → Set Auto Sync → ● → Enter Handset Code → ● → Set On/Off → ● → Off → ●</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Phone → ● → S! Addressbook Backup → ● → Set Auto Sync → ● → Enter Handset Code → ● → See below</li> <li>• Set Set On/Off to On beforehand.</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Start Here → ● → Phone → ● → S! Addressbook Backup → ● → Set Auto Sync → ● → Enter Handset Code → ● → See below</li> <li>• Set Set On/Off to On beforehand.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Changing Auto Sync Frequency</b></li> <li>Set Frequency → ● → Select frequency → ● → Enter/select date/time/day of the week → ●</li> <li>• For <i>After Editing Ph.Book(10 min.)</i>, omit steps for date, time, etc.</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▽ → メニューリスト → ● → My SoftBank → ● → English → ● → Password confirmation for S! Address Book → ● → Follow onscreen instructions</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Changing Auto Sync Command</b></li> <li>Set Sync Mode → ● → Select command → ●</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Phone → ● → S! Addressbook Backup → ● → Sync History → ● → Select record → ●</li> </ul>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Phone → ● → S! Addressbook Backup → ● → Sync History → ● → Select record → ●</li> </ul>	



## File Transfer

### ? Some files are not received

- If storage limit is reached during transfers, remaining files will not be received.

### ? Cannot receive/accept connection requests even when Infrared/Bluetooth® is On

- Handset may not be in Standby.
- Keypad Lock/Function Lock may be active.
- Software Update may be in progress.

### ? Phone Book settings are lost

- One file transfer resets these settings:
  - Category, Tone/Video, Light, Vibration, Secret
- Picture setting may be lost depending on image; send the image separately and reassign it.

### ? Calendar/Tasks settings are lost

- One file transfer resets these settings:
  - Alarm Tone/Video, Secret, S! Friend's Status

### ? Bookmarks are not saved properly

- Large Bookmarks may not be received correctly.
- Streaming Bookmarks are saved as Yahoo! Keitai Bookmarks.

### ? Messages are not saved properly on handset

- Messages may not be received depending on the size.
- Messages received via One File Transfer are saved to Other Documents folder and cannot be used as messages.
- Sky Mail may be received as S! Mail when transferred from other SoftBank handsets via All File Transfer.
- In All File Transfers, overwriting messaging folders deletes sort keys.

### ? Messages are not saved properly on recipient devices

- Mail Notices are saved as messages, invalidating complete message retrieval.
- When sending messages to other handset models via All File Transfer, Spam Folder messages may be saved to the incoming message folder.
- When sending messages in Drafts to other handset models via All File Transfer, only the first entered recipient may remain or SMS addressed to multiple recipients may not be saved.

### ? Cannot find files in DCIM folder

- Received files in DCIM folder are saved to Pictures folder.

## Infrared

### ? Infrared transfer fails

- Infrared Port may be obstructed by dust, etc.; clean with a soft cloth.
- Transfers may fail in direct sunlight, under fluorescent lighting or near infrared equipment.



## Backup & Restore

### ? Backup fails

- Check handset/Memory Card memory; backup may fail if the memory is low.

### ? Some files are not restored

- If storage limit is reached during Restore, remaining files will not be restored.

### ? Cannot use backup files on other SoftBank handsets or PCs

- Some backup files may not be usable on other SoftBank handsets or PCs.

### ? Cannot open backup files

- Some backup files may open only after being restored to handset.

### ? Phone Book settings are lost

- Picture setting may be lost depending on image; send the image separately and reassign it.

### ? Messages are not saved properly

- Transfer may delete sort keys.
- Mail Notices are restored as messages, invalidating complete message retrieval.

### ? Bookmarks are not saved properly

- Yahoo! Keitai, Streaming and PC Site Browser Bookmarks are all backed up as a single file.
- Streaming Bookmarks are saved as Yahoo! Keitai Bookmarks.

## ■ Exporting Backed Up Data to Other SoftBank Handsets

### ? Messages are not saved properly

- If spam filter is available on recipient handset, Spam Folder messages are saved in spam folder regardless of the setting. (If unavailable, they are saved as normal received messages.)
- When restoring draft messages, only the first entered recipient may remain or SMS addressed to multiple recipients may not be saved.

## ■ Importing Data Backed Up on Other SoftBank Handsets

### ? Messages are not saved properly

- Messages may not be restored depending on the size.
- Sky Mail may be restored as S! Mail.



<b>Date &amp; Time .....</b>	<b>14-2</b>
Date & Time .....	14-2
<b>Display &amp; Illumination .....</b>	<b>14-3</b>
Language.....	14-3
Image & Text.....	14-3
Display & Backlight .....	14-3
External Display.....	14-4
Standby Display .....	14-4
Key Backlight .....	14-4
<b>Incoming Transmissions.....</b>	<b>14-5</b>
Handset Response .....	14-5

<b>Sounds .....</b>	<b>14-6</b>
System Sounds .....	14-6
Additional Sound Settings .....	14-6
<b>Connectivity .....</b>	<b>14-7</b>
Network .....	14-7
IP Service .....	14-7
<b>Reset.....</b>	<b>14-8</b>
Restoring Default Settings.....	14-8

# 14

## Handset Customization



# 🔧 Date & Time Settings

## Date & Time

[Start Here](#) → Settings → In Phone menu, *Date & Time*

Setting the date and time	<i>Set Date/Time</i> → Enter the year → Enter the month → Enter the day → Enter the time
Correcting Clock manually	<i>Time Correction</i> → <i>Manual</i> → <i>Yes</i> → <i>Yes</i>
Disabling auto Clock correction	<i>Time Correction</i> → <i>Auto Corr. Setting</i> → <i>Off</i>
Setting auto Clock correction timing	<i>Time Correction</i> → <i>Auto Corr. Setting</i> → <i>On</i> → Select item → (☐/☑) → yr → <input type="text"/>
Activating Daylight Saving	<i>Daylight Saving</i> → <i>On</i>
Changing Time Zone	<i>Set Time Zone</i> → Select area
Adding custom time zone	<i>Set Time Zone</i> → Enter city name → + or - → Enter time difference
Changing time format to 12 hour	<i>Time Format</i> → <i>12 Hour</i>
Changing date format	<i>Date Format</i> → Select option
Starting the Calendar week on Monday	<i>Calendar Format</i> → <i>Monday-Sunday</i>



# Y Display & Illumination Settings 1

## Language

[Start Here](#) ● ➔ **Settings** ➔ ● ➔ Phone menu

Switching interface between Japanese and English

**Language** or 言語選択 ● ➔ ● ➔ **English** or 日本語 ● ➔ ●

## Image & Text

[Start Here](#) ● ➔ **Settings** ➔ ● ➔ In Phone menu, **Display** ➔ ●

Showing preloaded images for incoming calls, etc.

**System Graphics** ➔ ● ➔ **Select item** ➔ ● ➔ **Preset Animation (or Pattern 1 to Pattern 3)** ➔ ●

Showing Data Folder images for incoming calls, etc.

**System Graphics** ➔ ● ➔ **Select item** ➔ ● ➔ **Select folder** ➔ ● ➔ **Select image** ➔ ● ➔ **Specify image area** ➔ ●  
 ● Some images may be usable without specifying image area.

Showing Customized Screen for incoming calls, etc.

**System Graphics** ➔ ● ➔ **Select item** ➔ ● ➔ **Customized Screen** ➔ ● ➔ ●  
 ● Not available for **Power On** or **Power Off**.

Selecting image enhancement option for Standby and video playback

**Vivid Mode** ➔ ● ➔ **Select option** ➔ ●

Changing font of numbers entered in Standby

**Dial Number** ➔ ● ➔ **Select pattern** ➔ ●

Showing a message each time handset is turned on

**Greeting Message** ➔ ● ➔ **Edit Message** ➔ ● ➔ **Enter message** ➔ ● ➔ **Switch On/Off** ➔ ● ➔ **On** ➔ ●

Hiding caller info in Viewer position

**Caller Display** ➔ ● ➔ **Off** ➔ ●

## Display & Backlight

[Start Here](#) ● ➔ **Settings** ➔ ● ➔ In Phone menu, **Display** ➔ ●

Disabling display transition effects

**Display Effects** ➔ ● ➔ **Off** ➔ ●

Changing Display/key Backlight illumination time

**Backlight** ➔ ● ➔ **Time Out** ➔ ● ➔ **Select time** ➔ ●

Changing Display Brightness

**Backlight** ➔ ● ➔ **Brightness** ➔ ● ➔ **Adjust level** ➔ ●

Canceling/activating Light Sensor

**Backlight** ➔ ● ➔ **Brightness** ➔ ● ➔ ☺ (☐/☑) ➔ ●

Changing inactivity time after which Display turns off

**Display Saving** ➔ ● ➔ **Select period** ➔ ●






## Display & Illumination Settings 2

### External Display

[Start Here](#) → Settings → In Phone menu, *Display* → External Display →

Changing inactivity time after which External Display turns off	<i>Duration</i> → Select time →
Hiding new received messages	<i>Messages</i> → Not Display →
Hiding caller info	<i>Caller Display</i> → Off →
Showing Pedometer	<i>Display Pedometer</i> → Select item → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Activate External Display Backlight and press .</li> <li>• Some items do not appear if body information entry is incomplete.</li> </ul>
Changing Clock view	<i>Display Date&amp;Time</i> → Select type →
Changing Clock font	<i>Clock Type</i> → Select pattern →

### Standby Display

[Start Here](#) → Settings → In Phone menu, *Display* → Standby Display →

Changing Clock/Calendar	<i>Clock/Calendar</i> → Select type →
Showing Network service provider name in Standby	<i>Show Operator Name</i> → On →
Hiding Pedometer in Standby	<i>Pedometer</i> → Off →

### Key Backlight

[Start Here](#) → Settings → Phone menu































































Disabling key Backlight illumination	<i>Set Key Light</i> → Off →
Changing Key Illumination pattern by event	<i>Sounds &amp; Alerts</i> → Set Key Illumi → Select item → Key Pattern → Select pattern →
Disabling Key Illumination by event	<i>Sounds &amp; Alerts</i> → Set Key Illumi → Select item → Switch On/Off → Off →



## Incoming Transmission Settings

### Handset Response

[Start Here](#)   **Settings**   In Phone menu, **Sounds & Alerts**  

Changing ringtone volume	<b>Volume</b>   Select item   Adjust level  
Selecting illumination option	<b>Event Light</b>   Select item   Switch On/Off   On, <b>Link to Sound or Off</b>   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• For <b>Link to Sound</b>, press  again.</li> </ul>
Setting illumination color	<b>Event Light</b>   Select item   <b>Light Color</b>   Select color  
Changing Key Illumination patterns	<b>Event Light</b>   Select item   <b>Key Pattern</b>   Select pattern  
Enabling/disabling illumination for missed transmissions	<b>Status Light</b>   Select item   Switch On/Off   On or Off  
Setting illumination color for missed transmissions	<b>Status Light</b>   Select item   <b>Light Color</b>   Select color  
Answering calls with other keys	<b>Any Key Answer</b>   On   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use  *#,  *,  #,  *,  *,  *,  *,  *,  * or  * in addition to .</li> </ul>



# Sound Settings

## System Sounds

**Start Here** → Settings → In Phone menu, *Sounds & Alerts*

Enabling Keypad Tones	<i>System Sounds</i> → Keypad Tones → Select tone
Changing S! Circle Talk tone	<i>System Sounds</i> → S! Circle Talk → Select tone
Changing other System Sounds	<i>System Sounds</i> → Select item → Tone or Sound → Select folder → Select tone/file • For files with limited usage period, choose <b>Yes</b> and press .
Disabling System Sounds	<i>System Sounds</i> → Select item → Tone or Sound → Off • Not available for <i>S! Circle Talk</i> .
Changing System Sound duration	<i>System Sounds</i> → Select item → Duration → Select/enter time • Not available for <i>Keypad Tones</i> or <i>S! Circle Talk</i> .
Changing System Sound volume	<i>Volume</i> → General Volume → Adjust level

## Additional Sound Settings

**Start Here** → Settings → Phone menu

Disabling Speaker when using Headphones	<i>Ringer Output</i> → Earphone
Activating Speaker surround	<i>Sounds &amp; Alerts</i> → Surround → On



# Connectivity Settings

<b>Network</b>	
	<b>Start Here</b> → Settings → Network
Selecting a Network manually	Select Network → Manual → Select Network
Adding preferred Networks	Select Network → Set Preferred → Select target location → Select Network
Adding preferred Networks to the end	Select Network → Set Preferred → Add to End → Select Network
Deleting preferred Networks	Select Network → Set Preferred → Select Network → Delete
Adding Networks	Select Network → Add New Network → Add → Enter country code → Enter Network code → Enter name → Select NW Type → Select type <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>After selecting <b>Add New Network</b> and pressing <b>Add</b>, Network list appears if Network has already been added. To add more, press <b>Add</b> again and proceed.</li> </ul>
Editing Networks	Select Network → Add New Network → Select Network → Change → Edit in the same manner as adding Networks
Deleting Networks	Select Network → Add New Network → Select Network → Delete
Switching Network services manually	Select Service → Manual → Select service
Retrieving Network Information	Retrieve NW Info → Yes
Checking Network status	Network Info
Editing access point names for external devices	External Device → Select name → Edit
Clearing access point names for external devices	External Device → Reset → Enter Handset Code → Yes

















<b>IP Service</b>	
	<b>Start Here</b> → Settings → In Phone menu, Locks
Disabling IP Service	IP Service Setting → Off → Enter Handset Code <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When <b>Off</b>, S! Friend's Status, S! Circle Talk, Decoration Call, S! Appli Notification Setting and Mobile Widget Notification Setting are disabled.</li> </ul>



## Reset Settings

### Restoring Default Settings

[Start Here](#)   **Settings**   **In Phone menu, Master Reset**  

Restoring default handset settings	<p><b>Reset Settings</b>   <b>Enter Handset Code</b>   <b>Yes</b>   <b>Yes</b>  </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Some default settings may not be restored.</li> </ul>
Clearing all Phone Book entries, Data Folder files, etc.	<p><b>Reset All</b>   <b>Enter Handset Code</b>   <b>Yes</b>   <b>Yes</b>  </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Delete IC Card data beforehand. (Procedures to delete IC Card data vary by Lifestyle-Appli; contact Osaifu-Keitai® service providers for details.)</li> <li>• Files and records deleted by Reset All cannot be restored. Reset All deletes all downloaded S! Applications and Lifestyle-Applications.</li> <li>• Handset Code returns to the default setting.</li> </ul>

- A confirmation may appear before entering Handset Code; end the current function to proceed.
- When Double Number is active, regardless of usage mode setting, Reset Settings restores all default settings (Double Number is canceled), and Reset All clears all user files.



<b>USIM Card</b> .....	<b>15-2</b>
About USIM Card .....	15-2
USIM Card Installation.....	15-3
<b>Battery</b> .....	<b>15-4</b>
Battery Installation.....	15-4
<b>Software Update</b> .....	<b>15-5</b>
<b>Troubleshooting</b> .....	<b>15-6</b>
<b>Key Assignments</b> .....	<b>15-8</b>
<b>Pager Codes</b> .....	<b>15-10</b>
Pager Code List .....	15-10
<b>Character Codes</b> .....	<b>15-11</b>
Character Code List.....	15-11

<b>Weather Indicators</b> .....	<b>15-17</b>
Weather Indicator List .....	15-17
<b>Specifications</b> .....	<b>15-18</b>
Memory Card Structure & Contents	
.....	15-24
<b>Menu List</b> .....	<b>15-25</b>
<b>Index</b> .....	<b>15-33</b>
<b>Warranty &amp; Service</b> .....	<b>15-41</b>
<b>Customer Service</b> .....	<b>15-42</b>

# 15

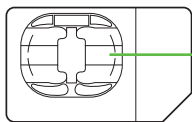
## Appendix



## About USIM Card

USIM Card is an IC card containing customer and authentication information, including the handset number. USIM Card must be inserted to use this handset. Save Phone Book entries on USIM Card Phone Book to use them on other SoftBank handsets. Depending on the USIM Card in use, some entry items may not be supported, and some limits (character entry, etc.) may be lower.

### Precautions



IC Chip

- Do not insert USIM Card into any other IC card device. SoftBank is not liable for resulting damages.
- Keep the USIM Card IC chip clean; malfunction may result. Use a dry, soft cloth to clean the USIM Card.
- Do not attach labels to USIM Card. Malfunction may result.

### Important

- USIM Card is the property of SoftBank.
- USIM Card will be reissued for a fee if lost or damaged.
- Return USIM Card to SoftBank upon subscription termination.
- Returned USIM Cards are recycled.
- USIM Card specifications may change without prior notice.
- Back up USIM Card files. SoftBank is not liable for lost files.
- If your USIM Card or handset (with USIM Card inserted) is lost or stolen, suspend your service immediately. For details, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P.15-42).

### USIM PIN

4-digit code (**9999** by default); activate PIN Entry to restrict usage.

#### PUK Lock

- Entering incorrect PIN three consecutive times activates PIN Lock, limiting handset use.

#### Canceling PIN Lock

- Contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P.15-42) for your Personal Unblocking Key (PUK Code) and follow these steps:

**Enter PUK Code** ➔ ● ➔ **Enter new PIN** ➔ ● ➔ **Re-enter new PIN** ➔ ●

- Write down PUK code.

#### PUK Lock

- Entering incorrect PUK Code ten consecutive times activates PUK Lock, disabling handset. Contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P.15-42) for recovery.

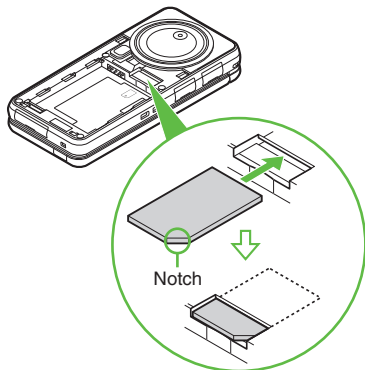


## USIM Card Installation

- Do not apply excessive force to insert/remove USIM Card.
- USIM Card must be inserted to use this handset.

### Inserting

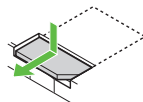
- 1 Remove battery (P.15-4)
- 2 Slide in USIM Card with IC chip facing down



- Reinstall battery (P.15-4).

### Removing

- 1 Remove battery
- 2 Gently slide out USIM Card as shown



- Reinstall battery.
- Take care not to lose removed USIM Card.

### After Repairs, USIM Card Replacement or Handset Upgrade/Replacement

- Some downloaded files may be inaccessible. In addition, S! Applications, BookSurfing® and Near Chat may be disabled after USIM Card replacement.





# Battery Installation

## About Battery

- Charge battery at least once every six months; an uncharged battery may become unusable or affect files/settings.
- Depending on usage, bulges may appear near end of battery life; this does not affect safety.
- Replace battery if operating time shortens noticeably.
- Clean device charging terminals with a dry cotton swab.

## Lithium-ion Battery

- This product requires a lithium-ion battery. Lithium-ion batteries are a recyclable resource.

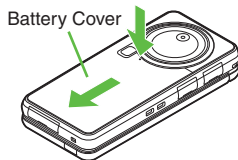


Li-ion00

- To recycle a used lithium-ion battery, take it to any shop displaying the symbol shown above.
- To avoid fire or electric shock, do not short-circuit or disassemble battery.

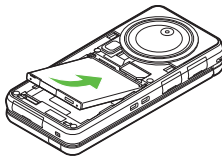
## Inserting & Removing

### 1 Remove cover



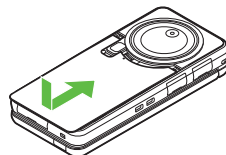
- Press and slide as shown.

### 2 Insert battery



- With logo side up, fit tabs into battery cavity slots.

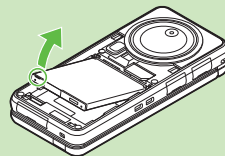
### 3 Close cover



- Position and slide the cover gently as shown until it stops.

## Removing

- Turn handset power off and lift battery as shown.



## Software Update



Check for firmware updates and download as required.

### Precautions

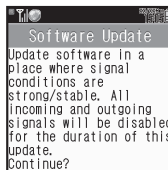
- Handset is disabled until update is complete. Update may take up to approximately 30 minutes.
- Update failure may disable handset. To reduce failure risk, make sure signal is strong and stable, and charge battery beforehand.
- Update will not start if other functions are in use. Before updating software (or before scheduled update time), end all active functions/applications.
- Disconnect USB Cable beforehand to reduce failure risk.
- Always back up important information. SoftBank cannot be held liable for damages from lost information, etc.

### Updating Software

- Packet transmission fees do not apply to updates (including checking, downloading and rewriting).
- Touch Panel operations may be unavailable during updates; use handset keys.

1  ➔ **Settings** ➔  ➔ In **Phone menu, Software Update** ➔ 

2 **Software Update** ➔ 



- Follow onscreen instructions.

### Setting Update Period (Japanese)


In  **Update Period** ➔ 

- Follow onscreen instructions.

### Update Result

In  **Update Result** ➔ 

### Scheduled Update


Confirmation appears at scheduled update time. Press  or wait a while for update to start.

### When Updated

Update success notification appears and handset reboots.

After reboot, completion message appears and Information window opens.

### Update Result

While Information window appears, **Update Result** ➔ 





### Reboot Failure

- If handset does not return to Standby after update, turn power off, reinsert battery, then restart it. If it still does not restart, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, Customer Assistance (P.15-42).



# Troubleshooting

## ■ General

Problem	Possible Cause	Solution
Handset won't turn on	Was  pressed long enough?	Press  longer.
	Battery may need to be charged or replaced.	Charge battery or install a charged battery.
	Battery may not be properly installed.	Install battery properly (P.15-4).
Handset won't respond	Is <b>Switch On/Off</b> in PIN Entry <b>On</b> ?	If <b>On</b> , PIN is required. Enter PIN according to onscreen prompt.
Insert USIM Card appears	USIM Card may not be properly inserted.	Turn power off and check that USIM Card is properly inserted, then restart handset. If the message still appears, USIM may be damaged.
	The correct USIM Card may not be inserted.	Make sure the correct USIM Card is inserted. The inserted USIM Card may not be valid.
	There may be debris on IC chip/terminals.	Clean relevant parts with a dry cloth and re-insert.
<b>REFRESH</b> appears and handset returns to Standby	Handset may have been dropped or subjected to shocks.	Handset failed to recognize USIM Card temporarily. This is not a malfunction.
Keypad won't respond	Keypad Lock may be active (  appears).	Cancel Keypad Lock (P.1-24).
	Function Lock may be active (  appears).	Cancel Function Lock (P.11-2).

Problem	Possible Cause	Solution
<b>Battery strength indicator flashes when not charging</b>	Ambient temperature may be outside 5°C to 35°C.	Use within an ambient temperature of 5°C - 35°C.
<b>Saved entry/folder does not appear on handset</b>	Entry/folder may be set to Secret.	Activate Show Secret Data (P.11-3).
<b>Cannot use Predictive</b>	Show Secret Data may be active.	Cancel Show Secret Data.
<b>Handset/AC Charger feels warm</b>	Handset/AC Charger may warm while charging.	Unless handset/AC Charger is too hot to touch, warmth is considered normal. Always avoid prolonged skin contact to prevent burn injuries.
	Handset may warm during extended periods of use.	
	Handset may warm during Video Calls.	
<b>Cannot access Memory Card files</b>	Memory Card may not be properly formatted.	Use 933SH-formatted Memory Cards.
<b>Clock settings are lost</b>	Did you leave handset without battery?	Clock settings remain even when removing battery for replacement, etc. However, if handset is left with no battery or an exhausted one for an extended period of time (approximately one hour), Clock will need to be reset.



**■ Charger/Battery**

Problem	Possible Cause	Solution
<b>Battery charges quickly</b>	Remaining charge shortens charging time.	This is normal.
	Battery may be terminally exhausted or defective. (Small Light flashes red.)	Replace battery with a new one.
<b>Battery charges slowly</b>	Charging slows during Video Calls.	End the call to charge faster.
	Battery may be charging via USB.	Use AC Charger.
<b>Battery won't charge</b>	AC Charger may not be properly connected to handset.	Make sure connector is securely inserted and retry.
	AC Charger may not be firmly plugged in to AC outlet.	Remove plug from outlet, re-insert and retry.
	Battery may not be properly installed.	Install battery properly (P.15-4).
	Battery, AC Charger, or Charging Terminals, or Device Port may be obstructed by dust, etc.	Clean terminals, connector and Port with a dry cotton swab and retry.
	Charger, etc. may not be supported.	Use specified AC Charger, etc. only; others may damage battery.

Problem	Possible Cause	Solution
<b>Battery Time seems shorter than usual</b>	High power consuming operations are in use.	Keep handset closed in Standby; reduce TV, SI Application, Media Player and Camera use, and limit transmissions/external connections.
	Using handset in poor conditions may shorten Battery Time.	Avoid prolonged use of handset out-of-range or in poor signal conditions.
	Power hungry settings may be active.	Lower Brightness, select shorter Display Saving/ Backlight time, etc.



## Key Assignments

Key	Kanji (Hiragana) [Double-byte]	Katakana [Double & Single-byte]	Alphanumerics [Double & Single-byte]	Numbers [Single-byte]	Character Codes
1	あいうえお あいうえお	アイウエオ アイウエオ	@./_-1 □ (space)	1	1
2	かきくけこ	カキクケコ	ABCabc2	2	2
3	さしすせそ	サシスセソ	DEFdef3	3	3
4	たちつとっ	タチツテトツ	GHIghi4	4	4
5	なにぬねの	ナニヌネノ	JKLjkl5	5	5
6	はひふへほ	ハヒフヘホ	MNOmno6	6	6
7	まみむめも	マミムメモ	PQRSpars7	7	7
8	やゆよやゆよ	ヤユヨヤユヨ	TUVtuv8	8	8
9	らりるれろ	ラリルレロ	WXYZwxyz9	9	9
0	わをんー ・	ワヲンー ・	0	0	0
* ☎	Log, Pictogram List (double-byte), Symbol List <sup>3</sup>				☎ + P (pause) ? - <sup>2</sup>
# ☎	、。 # (line break) ? ! □ (space)		、。 # (line break) ?! □ (space)	#	

<sup>1</sup> - is available only in single-byte katakana entry.

<sup>2</sup> Available for phone number entry; some characters may not be enterable in some windows.

<sup>3</sup> May not be enterable in some windows.



Key	Kanji (Hiragana) [Double-byte]	Katakana [Double & Single-byte]	Alphanumerics [Double & Single-byte]	Numbers [Single-byte]	Character Codes
	Conversion (up) <sup>4</sup>	Cursor up			
	Conversion (down) <sup>5</sup>	Cursor down ↓ (line break)			
	Cursor left				
	Cursor right				
	Switch entry mode (except during conversion)				
	Toggle Personal Mode <sup>6</sup>	_____	Toggle Personal Mode <sup>6,7</sup>	_____	
	Toggle case (for some characters)			_____	
	_____	Toggle mode (upper/ lower and lower case)		_____	
	Delete one character				
	Cancel conversion	_____	Cancel conversion <sup>7</sup>	_____	Delete code
 (Long)	Delete before or after cursor				
	Recover characters deleted with				
	Re-convert <sup>8</sup>	_____	Re-convert <sup>7,8</sup>	_____	
	OK				
	Phonetic Conversion	_____			
	Hiragana to Katakana/ Alphanumeric Conversion	_____			

<sup>4</sup>Cursor moves up except during conversion.

<sup>5</sup>Cursor moves down except during conversion.

<sup>6</sup>Available during conversion.

<sup>7</sup>Available only in single-byte alphanumeric entry.



<sup>8</sup>Press immediately after inserting characters to re-convert them.





## Pager Code List

Gray background indicates upper and lower case available. Press  to switch immediately after character entry.

### Double-byte Upper Case

		Second Digit (Press Next)									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
First Digit (Press First)	1	あ	い	う	え	お	A	B	C	D	E
	2	か	き	く	け	こ	F	G	H	I	J
	3	さ	し	す	せ	そ	K	L	M	N	O
	4	た	ち	つ	て	と	P	Q	R	S	T
	5	な	に	ぬ	ね	の	U	V	W	X	Y
	6	は	ひ	ふ	へ	ほ	Z	?	!	-	/
	7	ま	み	む	め	も	¥	&			*1
	8	や	(	ゆ	)	よ	*	#	Space		*2
	9	ら	り	る	れ	ろ	1	2	3	4	5
	0	わ	を	ん		°	6	7	8	9	0

### Single-byte Upper Case

		Second Digit (Press Next)									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
First Digit (Press First)	1	ア	イ	ウ	エ	オ	A	B	C	D	E
	2	カ	キ	ク	ケ	コ	F	G	H	I	J
	3	サ	シ	ス	セ	ソ	K	L	M	N	O
	4	タ	チ	ツ	テ	ト	P	Q	R	S	T
	5	ナ	ニ	ヌ	ネ	ノ	U	V	W	X	Y
	6	ハ	ヒ	フ	ヘ	ホ	Z	?	!	-	/
	7	マ	ミ	ム	メ	モ	¥	&			*1
	8	ヤ	(	ユ	)	ヨ	*	#	Space		*2
	9	ラ	リ	ル	レ	ロ	1	2	3	4	5
	0	ワ	ヲ	ン		°	6	7	8	9	0



### Double-byte Lower Case

		Second Digit (Press Next)									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
First Digit (Press First)	1	あ	い	う	え	お	a	b	c	d	e
	2						f	g	h	i	j
	3						k	l	m	n	o
	4			つ			p	q	r	s	t
	5						u	v	w	x	y
	6						z				
	7										*1
	8	や		ゆ		よ					*2
	9										
	0										

### Single-byte Lower Case

		Second Digit (Press Next)									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
First Digit (Press First)	1	ア	イ	ウ	エ	オ	a	b	c	d	e
	2						f	g	h	i	j
	3						k	l	m	n	o
	4			ツ			p	q	r	s	t
	5						u	v	w	x	y
	6						z				
	7										*1
	8	ヤ		ユ		ヨ					*2
	9										
	0										

\*1 Press   to insert  (line break) in mail message text, Notepad, etc.

\*2 Press   to toggle upper and lower case modes.



# Character Code List

First Three Digits	Last Digit									First Three Digits	Last Digit									First Three Digits	Last Digit									First Three Digits	Last Digit								
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8		9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7		8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6		7	8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5
010										047	ゆ	よ	ら	り	れ	ろ	わ	わ	161	葵	茜	穉	愚	握	旭	葦	芦	188	介	会	解	塊	壊	廻	快	怪	悔		
011	!	Space	。	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	048	あ	え	ん						162	梓	乾	乾	乾	乾	乾	乾	乾	189	恢	解	塊	壊	廻	快	怪	悔			
012	！	。	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ										163	麻	乾	乾	乾	乾	乾	乾	乾	190	快	怪	悔								
013	！	。	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	050	オ	ア	イ	ウ	エ	オ	ソ	デ	164	靴	靴	靴	靴	靴	靴	靴	靴	191	蟹	蟹	蟹	蟹	蟹	蟹	蟹	蟹	蟹		
014	！	。	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	051	オ	ア	イ	ウ	エ	オ	ソ	デ	165									192	蟹	蟹	蟹	蟹	蟹	蟹	蟹	蟹	蟹		
015	！	。	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	052	オ	ア	イ	ウ	エ	オ	ソ	デ	164									193	蟹	蟹	蟹	蟹	蟹	蟹	蟹	蟹	蟹		
016	！	。	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	053	オ	ア	イ	ウ	エ	オ	ソ	デ	165									194	蟹	蟹	蟹	蟹	蟹	蟹	蟹	蟹	蟹		
017	！	。	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	054	オ	ア	イ	ウ	エ	オ	ソ	デ	166									195	蟹	蟹	蟹	蟹	蟹	蟹	蟹	蟹	蟹		
018	！	。	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	055	オ	ア	イ	ウ	エ	オ	ソ	デ	166									195	蟹	蟹	蟹	蟹	蟹	蟹	蟹	蟹	蟹		
019	！	。	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	056	オ	ア	イ	ウ	エ	オ	ソ	デ	168									197	蟹	蟹	蟹	蟹	蟹	蟹	蟹	蟹	蟹		
020	！	。	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	057	オ	ア	イ	ウ	エ	オ	ソ	デ	169									198	蟹	蟹	蟹	蟹	蟹	蟹	蟹	蟹	蟹		
021	！	。	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	058	オ	ア	イ	ウ	エ	オ	ソ	デ	170									199	蟹	蟹	蟹	蟹	蟹	蟹	蟹	蟹	蟹		
022	！	。	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ																			200	蟹	蟹	蟹	蟹	蟹	蟹	蟹	蟹	蟹		
023	！	。	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	060	カ	ハ	ニ	ホ	ヘ	ト	チ	リ	170									201	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘		
024	！	。	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	061	カ	ハ	ニ	ホ	ヘ	ト	チ	リ	171									202	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘		
	！	。	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	062	カ	ハ	ニ	ホ	ヘ	ト	チ	リ	172									203	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘		
026	！	。	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	063	カ	ハ	ニ	ホ	ヘ	ト	チ	リ	173									204	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘		
027	！	。	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	064	カ	ハ	ニ	ホ	ヘ	ト	チ	リ										205	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘		
028	！	。	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	065	カ	ハ	ニ	ホ	ヘ	ト	チ	リ	173									206	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘		
029	！	。	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ										174									207	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘		
031										070	ア	ハ	ニ	ホ	ヘ	ト	チ	リ	175									207	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘		
032	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3	イ	ハ	ニ	ホ	ヘ	ト	チ	リ	176									208	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘		
033										072	イ	ハ	ニ	ホ	ヘ	ト	チ	リ	177									209	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘		
034	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O	P	073	イ	ハ	ニ	ホ	ヘ	ト	チ	リ	178									210	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘		
035	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	074	イ	ハ	ニ	ホ	ヘ	ト	チ	リ										211	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘		
036										075	イ	ハ	ニ	ホ	ヘ	ト	チ	リ	178									212	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘		
037	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	076	イ	ハ	ニ	ホ	ヘ	ト	チ	リ										213	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘		
038	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	077	イ	ハ	ニ	ホ	ヘ	ト	チ	リ										214	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘		
039	z									078	イ	ハ	ニ	ホ	ヘ	ト	チ	リ										215	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘		
040		あ	か	さ	た	な	に	ぬ	ふ	080	！	！	！	！	！	！	！	！	178									216	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘		
041	お	か	さ	た	な	に	ぬ	ふ	め	081	！	！	！	！	！	！	！	！	182									217	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘		
042										082	！	！	！	！	！	！	！	！	183									218	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘		
043										083	！	！	！	！	！	！	！	！	184									219	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘		
044																			185									220	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘		
045																			186									221	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘		
046										160									187									222	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘	勘		





Character Codes

First Three Digits		Last Digit										First Three Digits		Last Digit										First Three Digits		Last Digit															
0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9		
223	喬	鄉	鏡	響	驚	仰	堯	堯	曉	257	号	合	壕	拷	濠	轟	趨	克	刻	293	從	戎	柔	汁	波	獸	縱	重	銃	叔	329	煽	旋	穿	箭	線	綫	綫	綫	綫	綫
224	業	局	曲	極	桐	殺	殺	殺	均	258	告	國	拷	濠	轟	趨	克	刻	294	夙	宿	淑	祝	波	獸	縱	重	銃	叔	330	織	織	織	織	織	織	織	織	織	織	
225	巾	錦	欣	欣	琴	禽	禽	禽	緊	259	忽	骨	骨	骨	骨	骨	骨	骨	骨	295	述	宿	淑	祝	波	獸	縱	重	銃	叔	331	選	選	選	選	選	選	選	選	選	選
226	芹	茵	欽	欽	欽	欽	欽	欽	銀	260	昏	此	此	此	此	此	此	此	此	296	旬	宿	淑	祝	波	獸	縱	重	銃	叔	332	全	全	全	全	全	全	全	全	全	全
226									九	261										297																					
227	俱	句	區	區	區	區	區	區	厄	262										298																					
228	駒	句	區	區	區	區	區	區	厄	263										299																					
230	串	句	區	區	區	區	區	區	厄	264										300																					
231	栗	句	區	區	區	區	區	區	厄	265										301																					
232	郡	句	區	區	區	區	區	區	厄	266										302																					
232									九	267										303																					
232									九	268										304																					
232									九	269										305																					
232									九	270										306																					
232									九	271										307																					
232									九	272										308																					
232									九	273										309																					
232									九	274										310																					
232									九	275										311																					
232									九	276										312																					
232									九	277										313																					
232									九	278										314																					
232									九	279										315																					
232									九	280										316																					
232									九	281										317																					
232									九	282										318																					
232									九	283										319																					
232									九	284										320																					
232									九	285										321																					
232									九	286										322																					
232									九	287										323																					
232									九	288										324																					
232									九	289										325																					
232									九	290										326																					
232									九	291										327																					
232									九	292										328																					



First Three Digits	Last Digit									First Three Digits	Last Digit									First Three Digits	Last Digit									First Three Digits	Last Digit								
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8		9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7		8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6		7	8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5
363	つ									392	粘	乃	迺	之	艾	囊	濃	納	能	424	僻	壁	癖	碧	別	營	蔑	箇	偏	委	ゆ								
364	榧	追	鎚	通	塚	柶	墜	樞	椎	393	腦	膿	農	規	蚤			425	片	篇	編	辺	返	遍	使	勉	婉	弁	愉	愈	癒	癒	優	勇	友	幽			
365	漬	柘	鉗	通	柶	樞	墜	樞	壘									426	鞭									悠	憂	癒	佑	湧	友	猷	幽				
366	孺	紬	爪	釣	鉤	鶴																					祐	裕	誘	邇	邇	邇	融	夕					
366	て									394	波	派	破	婆	芭	播	霸	杷	426	稗	保	鋪	鋪	捕	步	甫	輔	輔	よ										
367	剃	貞	呈	定	帝	底	停	偵	弟	395	排	派	破	芭	播	霸	杷	427	稗	保	鋪	鋪	捕	步	甫	輔	輔	余	譽	興	預	備	幼	妖	予				
368	梯	抵	挺	堤	帝	底	停	偵	弟	396	培	派	破	芭	播	霸	杷	428	抱	保	鋪	鋪	捕	步	甫	輔	輔	揚	擁	預	備	洋	容	溶	庸				
369	艇	抵	挺	堤	帝	底	停	偵	弟	397	陪	派	破	芭	播	霸	杷	429	抱	保	鋪	鋪	捕	步	甫	輔	輔	揚	擁	預	備	洋	容	溶	庸				
370	的	笛	鄧	鼎	泥	擲	擲	擲	擲	398	燂	派	破	芭	播	霸	杷	430	蜂	保	鋪	鋪	捕	步	甫	輔	輔	余	譽	興	預	備	洋	容	溶	庸			
371	鐵	典	填	鼎	泥	擲	擲	擲	擲	399	燂	派	破	芭	播	霸	杷	431	望	保	鋪	鋪	捕	步	甫	輔	輔	揚	擁	預	備	洋	容	溶	庸				
372	軛	典	填	鼎	泥	擲	擲	擲	擲	400	燂	派	破	芭	播	霸	杷	432	望	保	鋪	鋪	捕	步	甫	輔	輔	揚	擁	預	備	洋	容	溶	庸				
373	軛	典	填	鼎	泥	擲	擲	擲	擲	401	燂	派	破	芭	播	霸	杷	433	望	保	鋪	鋪	捕	步	甫	輔	輔	揚	擁	預	備	洋	容	溶	庸				
373	と									402	燂	派	破	芭	播	霸	杷	434	望	保	鋪	鋪	捕	步	甫	輔	輔	揚	擁	預	備	洋	容	溶	庸				
374	堵	塗	妬	屠	斗	杜	渡	吐	兔	403	拔	派	破	芭	播	霸	杷	435	亂	味	摩	魔	麻	埋	妹	458	履	李	梨	理	離	陸	律	立					
375	賭	塗	妬	屠	斗	杜	渡	吐	兔	404	半	派	破	芭	播	霸	杷	436	亂	味	摩	魔	麻	埋	妹	459	履	李	梨	理	離	陸	律	立					
376	怒	倒	党	徒	砥	砥	砥	砥	砥	405	犯	派	破	芭	播	霸	杷	437	亂	味	摩	魔	麻	埋	妹	460	李	梨	理	離	陸	律	立						
377	岩	島	鳩	徒	砥	砥	砥	砥	砥	406	犯	派	破	芭	播	霸	杷	438	亂	味	摩	魔	麻	埋	妹	461	李	梨	理	離	陸	律	立						
378	密	海	鳩	徒	砥	砥	砥	砥	砥	407	犯	派	破	芭	播	霸	杷	439	亂	味	摩	魔	麻	埋	妹	462	李	梨	理	離	陸	律	立						
379	盜	島	鳩	徒	砥	砥	砥	砥	砥	408	犯	派	破	芭	播	霸	杷	440	亂	味	摩	魔	麻	埋	妹	463	李	梨	理	離	陸	律	立						
380	答	筒	鳩	徒	砥	砥	砥	砥	砥	409	犯	派	破	芭	播	霸	杷	441	亂	味	摩	魔	麻	埋	妹	464	李	梨	理	離	陸	律	立						
381	鐙	陶	鳩	徒	砥	砥	砥	砥	砥	410	犯	派	破	芭	播	霸	杷	442	亂	味	摩	魔	麻	埋	妹	465	李	梨	理	離	陸	律	立						
382	撞	陶	鳩	徒	砥	砥	砥	砥	砥	411	犯	派	破	芭	播	霸	杷	443	亂	味	摩	魔	麻	埋	妹	466	李	梨	理	離	陸	律	立						
383	撞	陶	鳩	徒	砥	砥	砥	砥	砥	412	犯	派	破	芭	播	霸	杷	444	亂	味	摩	魔	麻	埋	妹	467	李	梨	理	離	陸	律	立						
384	撞	陶	鳩	徒	砥	砥	砥	砥	砥	413	犯	派	破	芭	播	霸	杷	445	亂	味	摩	魔	麻	埋	妹	468	李	梨	理	離	陸	律	立						
385	撞	陶	鳩	徒	砥	砥	砥	砥	砥	414	犯	派	破	芭	播	霸	杷	446	亂	味	摩	魔	麻	埋	妹	469	李	梨	理	離	陸	律	立						
386	撞	陶	鳩	徒	砥	砥	砥	砥	砥	415	犯	派	破	芭	播	霸	杷	447	亂	味	摩	魔	麻	埋	妹	470	李	梨	理	離	陸	律	立						
386	な									415	府	不	付	埠	夫	富	富	布	442	名	命	明	盟	銘	鳴	姪	牝	冥	ろ										
387	謎	灘	捺	鍋	那	那	内	乍	乍	416	膚	不	付	埠	夫	富	富	布	443	免	棉	綿	緬	銘	鳴	姪	牝	冥	露	勞	魯	魯	櫓	路					
388	歌	難	汝	鍋	那	那	内	乍	乍	417	武	不	付	埠	夫	富	富	布	444	孟	毛	猛	盲	網	模	模	茂	妄	露	勞	魯	魯	櫓	路					
388	に									418	伏	不	付	埠	夫	富	富	布	445	孟	毛	猛	盲	網	模	模	茂	妄	露	勞	魯	魯	櫓	路					
388	に									419	伏	不	付	埠	夫	富	富	布	446	孟	毛	猛	盲	網	模	模	茂	妄	露	勞	魯	魯	櫓	路					
388	に									420	伏	不	付	埠	夫	富	富	布	447	孟	毛	猛	盲	網	模	模	茂	妄	露	勞	魯	魯	櫓	路					
389	虹	廿	二	尼	式	迹	句	甸	肉	421	粉	不	付	埠	夫	富	富	布	448	矢	目	孟	猛	盲	網	模	模	茂	妄	露	勞	魯	魯	櫓	路				
390	如	尿	乳	尼	式	迹	句	甸	肉	422	粉	不	付	埠	夫	富	富	布	449	矢	目	孟	猛	盲	網	模	模	茂	妄	露	勞	魯	魯	櫓	路				
390	ぬ〜の									422	粉	不	付	埠	夫	富	富	布	449	矢	目	孟	猛	盲	網	模	模	茂	妄	露	勞	魯	魯	櫓	路				
390	ぬ〜の									422	粉	不	付	埠	夫	富	富	布	449	矢	目	孟	猛	盲	網	模	模	茂	妄	露	勞	魯	魯	櫓	路				
391	祢	寧	葱	貓	熟	年	念	濡	襦	422	幣	平	弊	柄	並	蔽	丙	併	兵	堀	448	矢	目	孟	猛	盲	網	模	模	茂	妄	露	勞	魯	魯	櫓	路		
391	祢	寧	葱	貓	熟	年	念	濡	襦	423	幣	平	弊	柄	並	蔽	丙	併	兵	堀	449	矢	目	孟	猛	盲	網	模	模	茂	妄	露	勞	魯	魯	櫓	路		
































## Weather Indicator List





### Basic Status

	Clear skies (day)
	Clear skies (night)
	Cloudy
	Rain
	Snow
	Thunder showers
	Chance of rain: 0%
	Chance of rain: 10%
	Chance of rain: 20%
	Chance of rain: 30%
	Chance of rain: 40%
	Chance of rain: 50%
	Chance of rain: 60%
	Chance of rain: 70%
	Chance of rain: 80%
	Chance of rain: 90%
	Chance of rain: 100%
	Then
	Partly/chance of





### Pollen Count

	Low
	Moderate
	High
	Extreme





### Cherry Blossom

	Flowering
	Almost full bloom
	Full bloom
	Beginning of petal fall




### Fall Foliage

	No color change
	Colors appearing
	Peak
	Defoliating



### Ultraviolet

	Low
	Moderate
	High
	Extreme


### Typhoon

	Forming
	Approaching
	Caution necessary

### Disaster

	Heavy rain
	Gale

### Information

	Notification
---	--------------



# Specifications

## SoftBank 933SH

<b>Weight</b>	Approximately 127 g
<b>Continuous Talk Time</b>	Approximately 230 minutes (3G) Approximately 220 minutes (GSM)
<b>Continuous Standby Time</b>	Approximately 310 hours (3G) Approximately 280 hours (GSM) (clamshell closed)
<b>Charging Time (power off)</b>	AC Charger: Approximately 135 minutes In-Car Charger: Approximately 140 minutes
<b>Dimensions (W x H x D)</b>	Approximately 51 x 110.6 x 16.7 mm (clamshell closed, without protruding parts)
<b>Maximum Output</b>	0.25 W (3G) 2.0 W (GSM)

- Above values calculated with battery installed.
- Continuous Talk Time is an average measured with a new, fully charged battery, with stable signals without moving handset.
- Continuous Standby Time is an average measured with a new, fully charged battery, with clamshell closed without calls or operations, with stable signals without moving handset. In Japan (3G service area), the value is calculated with IP Service Setting, Decoration Call, S! Appli Notification Setting and Mobile Widget Notification Setting set to **Off**.
- Talk Time/Standby Time may vary by environment, status, settings, etc.
- Display employs precision technology, however, some pixels may appear brighter/darker.

## Handset Materials

Parts	Materials & Finishing
Housing (Display side)	Magnesium/Chemical conversion treatment, baking finish
Housing (side belt), camera ring, Side Keys (Volume Up Key, Volume Down Key, Keypad Lock & Camera Key)	ABS resin/Discontinuous deposition, acrylic UV painting
Housing (Keypad side)	Nylon resin/Acrylic UV curing painting (sealer: acrylic painting)
Housing (battery side), Battery Cover	ABS resin/Acrylic UV curing painting (sealer: acrylic painting)
Display window, lens cover, External Display panel, Mobile Light cover, Earpiece cover	Acrylic resin
Multi Selector (Cursor Keys), Center Key, Mail Key, Shortcuts & A/a Key, Clear/Back Key, Start Key, Keypad, Dictionary Key, Multi Job & Manner Key, Yahoo! Keitai Key, TV & Text Key, Power On/Off Key, Camera Key	UV curing resin

Parts	Materials & Finishing
Key ornament sheets (Keypad side), screw cover (Keypad side)	PET/UV curing resin
Infrared Port	ABS resin (infrared grade)
Memory Card Slot Cover, Headphone Port Cover, External Device Port Cover	PC resin/Acrylic UV painting/Elastomeric resin
Battery	PC resin
Charging Terminals	SUS/Gold plating (sealer: nickel)
Screws	SWCH16A/Ni plating
USIM pin	Copper alloy/Gold plating (sealer: nickel)

## Accessory

### Battery

<b>Voltage</b>	3.7V
<b>Battery Type</b>	Lithium-ion
<b>Capacity</b>	710 mAh
<b>Dimensions (W x H x D)</b>	Approximately 37.7 x 46.9 x 4.2 mm (without protruding parts)



## Getting Started

## ■ Standby Shortcut

Savable Items	30 per sheet
---------------	--------------

## Basic Operations

## ■ Text Entry

User Dictionary	250 entries (5 per reading) Word: 30 characters Reading: 8 hiragana
Acquire Dictionary	5 dictionaries
Paste List	10 text strings
Recoverable Deleted Characters	30,720 single-byte characters
Dictionary	Meikyo Japanese Dictionary: Approximately 47,100 words/phrases Genius English-Japanese Dictionary: Approximately 45,700 words/phrases Genius Japanese-English Dictionary: Approximately 55,800 words/phrases

## ■ Phone Book

Entry	1,000 entries
Name/Reading	Last/First: 32 characters each
Phone Number	5 numbers (32 digits each)
Mail Address	5 addresses (128 characters each)
Category	16 Categories
Address	Postal Code: 20 characters Country: 32 characters Others: 64 characters each
Office	Office Name/Division/Post: 32 characters each
Homepage	1,024 bytes
Note	256 characters
Mail Groups	20 Groups (20 members each) Group name: 16 characters

## Calling

Dialed Numbers	Dialed Numbers: 30 records Dialed Ranking: 10 records
Received Calls	30 records
Answer Phone/ Caller Voice	20 messages or 90 seconds
Auto Answer List	10 numbers
Decoration Call	100 KB including 20 characters
Speed Dial/Mail	100 numbers/addresses

## Messaging

Memory	Received Msg.	10 MB or 3,000 messages
	Drafts	
	Sent Messages	5 MB (or 1,000 messages for Sent Messages)
	Unsent Messages	
	Templates	80 MB (shared with Data Folder and S! Appli Library)

PC Mail/S! Mail Subject	512 single-byte characters	
PC Mail/S! Mail Message	Approximately 30,000 single-byte characters	
SMS Message	160 single-byte alphanumeric	
Auto Resend	2 times	
Attachment	20 files or 1 MB*	
Send Reservation	10 messages	
Signature	256 single-byte characters	
Recipient	20 numbers/addresses	
Folder	20 folders (20 sort keys each)	
Chat Folder	Memory	300 messages per folder
	Folder	10 folders (20 members each)

Graphic Mail	1 sound or Flash® file, or 40 images/ My Pictograms (with 1 sound or Flash® file)	
Auto Reply	20 numbers/addresses (20 digits or 256 single-byte characters each)	
Anti Spam Measures	Individual Permitted List	20 entries
		20 entries

\*Limit may be lower depending on message text, etc.

## ■ PC Mail Settings

PC Mail Account	Account	3 accounts
	Account Name	20 characters
Set Receiving	User Name	128 characters
	Password	40 characters
	ReceivingServer	128 characters
	Port Number	1 to 65535
Set Sending	Sender Name	20 characters
	Mail Address	128 characters
PC Mail DL	Individual Address	20 addresses

## Yahoo! Keitai &amp; PC Site Browser

Download	Yahoo! Keitai	300 KB per page 10 MB for progressive downloads
	PC Site Browser	1 MB per file
History	300 pages	
URL Entry Log	10 URLs	
Bookmarks & Saved Pages	100 pages	
Tab	3 tabs at one time	
Input Memory	20 entries	
Streaming History	20 URLs	
RSS Feeds	30 entries (60 KB per entry)	





### Digital TV

<b>Recorded File</b>	ISDB-T mobile Video profile (SD-Video standard)	
<b>Recording Time (example)</b>	Handset	Approximately 30 minutes
	Memory Card	Approximately 80 minutes on 256 MB Memory Card
<b>Marker</b>	99 Markers (10 per file)	
<b>Split File</b>	99 portions per file	
<b>Time Shift Recording</b>	30 minutes	
<b>Reservation List</b>	5 entries (4 hours each on 1 GB Memory Card)	

### Camera & Imaging

#### Mobile Camera

<b>Effective Pixels</b>	External Camera	10 Megapixels
	Internal Camera	430 Kilopixels
<b>Auto Shut-off Time</b>	Approximately 3 minutes	

#### Photo Camera

<b>Zoom</b>	1x - 22.8x	
<b>Picture Size (W x H dots)</b>	10M	2736 x 3648
	5M	1944 x 2592
	3M	1536 x 2048
	Full HD	1080 x 1920
	Wallpaper	480 x 854
	VGA	480 x 640
	QVGA	240 x 320
<b>Scanner Image Size (W x H dots)</b>	Free, 1200 x 640, 480 x 1488, 1280 x 960	
<b>File Format</b>	JPEG	
<b>Memory</b>	Approximately 24 files (at 10M, High Quality) on handset with no other files	
<b>File Name</b>	yymmdd_hhmmss	
<b>Shooting Distance</b>	Macro: 10 cm	

<b>Face Auto Focus</b>	VGA or larger
<b>Other</b>	Use 40 KB or smaller transparent PNG files as Frames

#### Video Camera

<b>Zoom</b>	1x - 5.7x	
<b>Record Size (W x H dots)</b>	Extended Video	864 x 480 (Wide)
		640 x 480 (VGA)
	For Message	320 x 240 (QVGA)
		176 x 144 (QCIF)
		128 x 96 (SubQCIF)

<b>File Format</b>	3GP	
<b>Recording Capacity per Shot</b>	Extended Video	Approximately 30 minutes* on Memory Card
	For Message	1 MB or 295 KB

<b>File Name</b>	yymmdd_hhmmss	
<b>Recording Distance</b>	1.5 m in good light	
<b>Still Image Capture</b>	3 images	
<b>Recording Pause Supported</b>	QVGA or larger	

\*Varies with handset usage, location or settings.

#### Editing Images

<b>Picture Editor</b>	Resize (W x H dots)	Wallpaper (480 x 854)
		Power On/Off (480 x 854)
		Alarm (480 x 208)
		Incoming Call (320 x 320)
		Pictogram (96 x 96)
		VGA (480 x 640)
		QVGA (240 x 320)
		Cut
	Retouch	52 x 52 dots or larger JPEG/PNG images
	Paste	16 characters
	Correction	52 x 52 dots or larger JPEG/PNG images
<b>Composite</b>	Merge	JPEG images between W 48 x H 64 dots and 240 x 320 dots
	Panorama	JPEG images between W 48 x H 64 dots and 240 x 320 dots

#### Media Player

<b>Supported Formats</b>	WMA (.wma), AAC (.mp4/3gp/.m4a), Secure AAC (SD-Audio standard)	
	(Some files may not play depending on sampling frequency and bit rate)	
<b>All Music List</b>	Music	Shows up to 350 files each
	Chaku-Uta®	
	WMA	
	SD AUDIO	Shows up to 999 files

#### S! Applications

<b>Memory</b>	100 items or 80 MB (shared with Messaging Templates folder and other folders in Data Folder)
<b>Remote Control</b>	Approximately 5 m



## Handy Extras

## ■ PIM/Life

<b>Calendar/ Tasks</b>	300 entries, Subject: 32 characters Description: 128 characters Location: 16 characters Set Holiday: 10 holidays	
<b>Alarms</b>	5 entries, Subject: 9 characters	
<b>Wakeup TV</b>	Auto Shut-off	Approximately 30 minutes
<b>Calculator</b>	999,999,999,999	
<b>Expenses Memo</b>	30 entries (999,999.99 yen each)	
<b>Osaifu-Keitai®</b>	Remote Lock password: 5 - 16 single-byte alphanumerics	

†Preset holidays are based on Japanese calendar as of March 2009.

## ■ Clock/Gauge

<b>Stopwatch</b>	23 hours 59 minutes 59.9 seconds in 0.1-second increments Lap time: 4 records	
<b>Countdown Timer</b>	99 minutes 59 seconds in 1-second increments	
<b>World Clock</b>	City name: 16 characters	
<b>Pedometer</b>	Today's Walking	Steps: 99,999
		Time: 23 hours 59 minutes 59 seconds
		Exercise: 71.9 Ex
		Calories: 9,999.9 kcal
		Distance: 179.9 km
		Fat burned: 999.9 g
	Log	2 years
		Daily view: 9,999 steps per hour
		Weekly view: 99,999 steps per day

<b>Pedometer</b>	Accumulated Data	All Days: 999 days
		Steps: 99,999,999
		Time: 99,999 hours 59 minutes 59 seconds
		Exercise: 99,999.9 Ex
		Calories: 9,999,999.9 kcal
	Average	Distance: 999,999.9 km
		Fat burned: 999,999.9 g
		Steps: 99,999
		Time: 23 hours 59 minutes 59 seconds
		Exercise: 71.9 Ex
S! GPS Navi	My Location	Calories: 9,999.9 kcal
		Distance: 179.9 km
		Fat burned: 999.9 g
		50 entries

## ■ Doc./Rec.

<b>Document Viewer</b>	Supported Formats	PDF (.pdf) Microsoft® Excel® (.xls) Microsoft® Word (.doc) Microsoft® PowerPoint® (.ppt)
	File Size	10 MB
<b>Notepad</b>	500 entries	(8,192 characters each)
<b>Voice Recorder</b>	For Message	Approximately 10 minutes (message size limit: 1 MB) or 3 minutes (message size limit: 300 KB) per file
	Extended Voice	99 hours 59 minutes 59 seconds
<b>Scan Barcode (Continuous Mode)</b>	UPC/JAN	50 codes
	QR Code	16 codes
<b>Create QR Code</b>	Equivalent of 513 digits, 311 alphanumerics or 131 kanji	
<b>Scan Text</b>	256 characters	



## Entertainment & Communication

### Mobile Widget

<b>Savable Items</b>	4 widgets (S! Quick News & S! Friend's Status: 1, others: 3) per sheet x 4 sheets
----------------------	---

### S! Quick News

<b>Savable Items</b>	Special: 1 item News Flash: 1 item General: 4 items
----------------------	---

### e-Books

<b>Text Copy</b>	20 characters
------------------	---------------

### S! Friend's Status

<b>Member</b>	30 members
<b>My Status</b>	Name: 7 characters Comment: 15 characters Status Label: 4 characters
<b>Status Templates</b>	Template name: 12 characters

### S! Circle Talk

<b>Participant</b>	11 members
<b>Speak Time</b>	30 seconds each
<b>Member List</b>	30 entries (10 members per Group)

## Blog Tool

<b>Blog Details</b>	5 entries	
<b>Blog Title</b>	16 characters	
<b>Blog Settings (Mail)</b>	<b>Email Address</b>	128 characters
	<b>Title</b>	32 characters
	<b>Text</b>	128 characters
	<b>Picture Size</b>	S (320 x 320) M (640 x 640) L (1024 x 1024) Send
<b>Blog Settings (Yahoo! Keitai &amp; PC Site Browser)</b>	<b>URL for Posting</b>	1,024 characters
	<b>URL for Viewing</b>	1,024 characters

## Data Folder

<b>Memory</b>	80 MB (shared with Messaging Templates folder and S! Appli Library)
---------------	---

## Memory Card

<b>Backup File Name</b>	yymmddXX` (XX: 2 digits/alphabets)
-------------------------	------------------------------------

yymmdd for Contents Keys.

## Connectivity & File Backup

### Infrared

<b>Infrared Transfer</b>	IrMC 1.1	
	<b>Range</b>	Within 20 cm
<b>IrSS Transfer (JPEG images)</b>	Receive 2,500 KB or less; send 4,000 KB or less (after resizing)	

### Bluetooth®

<b>Communication System</b>	Bluetooth® specification Ver. 2.0
<b>Supported Profiles</b>	Headset Profile Hands-Free Profile Dial-Up Networking Profile Object Push Profile File Transfer Profile Basic Imaging Profile Advanced Audio Distribution Profile Audio/Video Remote Control Profile
<b>Output</b>	Bluetooth® Power Class 2
<b>Range</b>	Within 10 m
<b>Device Search</b>	16 devices
<b>Pairing</b>	32 devices
<b>Device Name</b>	16 characters
<b>Printing</b>	JPEG/PNG images

### S! Addressbook Back-up

<b>Log</b>	10 Backup/Restore/ Synchronization records
------------	---

## Network

<b>Add Network</b>	5 Networks Country/Network code: 3 digits Name: 25 single-byte characters
--------------------	---



## Reference URLs

### ■ SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.

<http://mb.softbank.jp/en/>

### ■ S! Addressbook Back-up

[http://mb.softbank.jp/en/price\\_plans/basic\\_option.html](http://mb.softbank.jp/en/price_plans/basic_option.html)

### ■ Messaging Basics

[http://mb.softbank.jp/en/customer\\_support/mail.html](http://mb.softbank.jp/en/customer_support/mail.html)

### ■ Custom Handset Address

<https://www.email.softbank.ne.jp/help/e/address.html>

### ■ Yahoo! Keitai

[http://mb.softbank.jp/en/customer\\_support/web.html](http://mb.softbank.jp/en/customer_support/web.html)

### ■ Ichi Navi

[http://mb.softbank.jp/en/price\\_plans/basic\\_option.html](http://mb.softbank.jp/en/price_plans/basic_option.html)

### ■ Secure Remote Lock

[http://mb.softbank.jp/en/price\\_plans/basic\\_option.html](http://mb.softbank.jp/en/price_plans/basic_option.html)

### ■ microSD™ Memory Card Compatibility

From PC (Japanese)

[http://k-tai.sharp.co.jp/peripherals/sd\\_support.html](http://k-tai.sharp.co.jp/peripherals/sd_support.html)

From Handset (Japanese)

<http://shweb.sharp.co.jp/>

### ■ Compatible Blu-ray Disc Recorders

<http://www.sharp.co.jp/bd/spec/index.html>  
(Japanese)

### ■ SVG-T

From Handset (Japanese)

[http://shweb.sharp.co.jp/svgt/index\\_pdc.html](http://shweb.sharp.co.jp/svgt/index_pdc.html)

### ■ Association for Promotion of Digital Broadcasting

From PC

<http://www.dpa.or.jp/english/>

From Handset (Japanese)

<http://www.dpa.or.jp/1seg/k/>



## Memory Card Structure & Contents

Memory Card Structure			Contents (Location when Viewed on Handset)	
DCIM	XXXSHARP		Still images in DCIM	
PRIVATE	MYFOLDER	Local Contents	SD Local Contents	
		Mail	Messaging folder backups (Received Msg., Sent Messages and Drafts)	
		My Items	Book	e-Book files in Data Folder (Books)
			Bookmarks	Yahoo! Keitai Bookmarks
			Character	PNG files in Data Folder (Character)
			CSI	Decoration Call files in Data Folder (Decoration Call)
			Custom Screens	Customized Screen files in Data Folder (Customized Screen)
			Flash(R)	Flash® Wallpaper files in Data Folder (Flash®)
			Flash(R) Ringtones	Flash® ringtones in Data Folder (Flash® Ringtones)
			Games and More	SI Applications
			Hot Status Template	Template files in Data Folder (Status Templates)
			Mail Art	Files in Data Folder (Mail Art)
			Message Templates	Graphic Mail templates in Templates folder
			Music	Music files in Data Folder (Music)
			Other Documents	Other files in Data Folder (Other Documents)
			Pictograms	GIF files in Data Folder (My Pictograms)
			Pictures	Still images in Data Folder (Pictures)
			Sounds & Ringtones	Melodies and other sound files in Data Folder (Ring Songs-Tones)
			Videos	Video files in Data Folder (Videos)
	Widget	Widget files in Data Folder (Widget)		
WMAudio	WMA files for Media Player (WMA)			
	SH_Folder	Application management files		
	Utility	Backup files (Phone Book), etc.		
	SHARP	MOBILE	Backup files (User Dictionary), etc.	
SD_AUDIO			SD-Audio files for Media Player (SD AUDIO)	



# Menu List

## Messaging

Function	Refer to	
Received Msg.	P.4-12	
Create Message	P.4-4	
Retrieve New Msg.	P.4-23	
Drafts	P.4-29	
Templates	P.4-22	
Sent Messages	P.4-12	
Unsent Messages	P.4-29	
Chat Folder	P.4-15	
Server Mail Box	Mail List	P.4-23
	Retrieve All	P.4-23
	Delete All	P.4-27
	Mailbox Volume	P.4-30
Create New SMS	P.4-7	
Settings	Address Settings	P.4-3
	General Settings	P.4-30
	S! Mail Settings	P.4-32
	PC Mail Settings	P.4-18
	SMS Settings	P.4-34
	Speed Dial/Mail	P.4-20
Set Mail Group	P.4-16	
Memory Status	P.4-26	

## Settings: General Settings

	Function	Refer to
Send/ Compose	Delivery Report	P.4-31
	Reply to Settings	P.4-31
	Reply With Text	P.4-31
	Auto Reply	P.4-25
	Set Quick Reply	P.4-25
	Auto Resend	P.4-31
	Sending Status	P.4-31
	Restrictions Setting	P.4-8
	Message Notice	P.4-31
	Link to Feeling	P.4-32
Receive	Animation View	P.4-31
	Anti Spam Measures	P.4-14
	Report Spam	P.4-30
Scroll Unit	P.4-30	
Message List View	P.4-30	
Address View	P.4-30	
Received Msg. View	P.4-30	
Sent Msg. View	P.4-30	
Auto Delete	Received Msg.	P.4-30
	Sent Messages	P.4-30

## Settings: S! Mail Settings

Function	Refer to	
Message DL(Japan)	P.4-11	
Message DL(Abroad)	P.4-11	
Signature	P.4-20	
Picture Appearance	P.4-33	
Auto Play File	Pictures	P.4-33
	Sounds	P.4-33
Create Msg. Size	P.4-22	
DL Size Limit	P.4-33	
Send File Settings	P.4-33	

## Settings: PC Mail Settings

Function	Refer to
PC Mail Account	P.4-18
PC Mail DL	P.4-33
Check New Mail	P.4-33
Word wrap	P.4-33

## Settings: SMS Settings

Function	Refer to
Expiry Time	P.4-34
Message Center	P.4-34
Char-code	P.4-34



## Yahoo! Keitai

Function	Refer to
Yahoo! Keitai	P.5-3
Bookmarks	P.5-8
Saved Pages	P.5-8
Enter URL	P.5-3
History	P.5-3
PC Site Browser	P.5-4
Browser Settings	P.5-12

## PC Site Browser

Function	Refer to
Homepage	P.5-4
Bookmarks	P.5-8
Saved Pages	P.5-8
Enter URL	P.5-4
History	P.5-4
RSS Feed	P.5-9
Yahoo! Keitai	P.5-3

### PC Site Browser Settings

Font Size	P.5-12
Scroll Settings	P.5-12
Cursor Settings	P.5-12
Downloads	P.5-12
Memory Operation	P.5-10
Security Settings	P.5-16
Download to	P.5-12
Initialized Browser	P.5-16
Reset Settings	P.5-16
Warning Message	P.5-12
Zoom Factor	P.5-12
Softkey Area	P.5-4

## Browser Settings

Function	Refer to
Font Size	P.5-12
Scroll Unit	P.5-12
Cursor Settings	P.5-12
Downloads	P.5-12
Memory Operation	P.5-10
Security Settings	P.5-16
Download to	P.5-12
Initialized Browser	P.5-16
Reset Settings	P.5-16

## S! Appli

Function	Refer to
S! Appli Library	P.8-7
Osaifu-Keitai	P.9-14
Notification History	P.8-7
Settings	P.8-12
Information	P.8-12

## Settings

Function	Refer to	
Application Volume	P.8-11	
Backlight	P.8-12	
Vibration	P.8-12	
Synchronization	P.8-12	
Notification Setting	P.8-12	
Calls & Alarms	P.8-11	
Screensaver	Switch On/Off	P.8-11
	Activation Time	P.8-11
	Stop Auto Start	P.8-11
Surround	P.8-11	
Set to Default	P.8-12	
Memory All Clear	P.8-12	

## TV

Function	Refer to
Digital TV	P.6-2
TV Player	P.6-9
TV-Image Folder	P.6-6
TV Link	P.6-14
TV Listing	P.6-7
Familink Remote	P.1-3
Reservation List	P.6-10
Settings	P.6-13
Recorder Contents	P.6-16

## Settings

Function	Refer to	
TV Alarm	P.6-17	
Broadcast Data	Set Recording	P.6-15
	Image Location	P.6-15
	Notify Connection	P.6-14
	Location	P.6-14
	Manufacture Number	P.6-14
Delete StationData	P.6-14	
Screen Size(Portrait)	P.6-12	
Display Icon	P.6-13	
Sound Output	P.6-13	
🔊 Sound Output	P.6-13	
Set Call Time Shift	P.6-15	
Calls & Alarms	P.6-13	
TV Reserve Prior	P.6-17	
Save Recording to	P.6-15	
Auto Exit	Auto Exit Time	P.6-13
	Close Action	P.6-13
Smooth Mode	P.6-12	



Camera		
Function	Refer to	
Photo Camera	P.7-3	
Video Camera	P.7-9	
Hand Mirror	P.1-29	
Scan Barcode	P.9-33	
Scan Card	P.9-35	
Kanji Grabber	P.9-37	
Scan Text	P.9-36	
Review	P.7-12	
Photo Settings	Picture Size	P.7-23
	Focus Setting	P.7-23
	Save Setting	P.7-22
	Shutter Setting	P.7-22
Video Settings	Settings	P.7-22
	Record Time/Size	P.7-24
	Shake Reducing	P.7-24
	Microphone	P.7-24
Set Camera Key	P.7-22	

## Photo Camera

Function	Refer to	
Scene	P.7-8	
Picture Size	P.7-23	
Focus Setting	P.7-22	
Save Setting	Save Pictures to	P.7-22
	Auto Save	P.7-22
	Background Save	P.7-23
Shutter Setting	Egao level	P.7-23
	Shutter Mode	P.7-8
	Shutter Sound	P.7-22
	Set Remote Shutter	P.7-24
Self-timer	P.7-11	
Camera Mode	Video Camera	P.7-9
	Scan Barcode	P.9-33
	Scan Card	P.9-35
	Kanji Grabber	P.9-37
Data Folder	Scan Text	P.9-36
		P.7-22
Modes	Add Frame	P.7-14
	HQ Continuous	P.7-13
	Continuous Shoot	P.7-13
	Camera Effects	P.7-14
	Long Exposure	P.7-14
	Panorama/Scanner	P.7-15
Settings	Picture Quality	P.7-22
	ISO Sensitivity	P.7-23
	White Balance	P.7-23
	Exposure	P.7-22
	Shake Reducing	P.7-23
	Display Setting	P.7-22
	Set Send Key	P.7-22

Function	Refer to
Help	P.7-22
Mobile Light	P.7-22

## Video Camera

Function	Refer to	
Internal Camera	P.7-10	
Record Time/Size	P.7-24	
Focus Setting	P.7-22	
Save Setting	P.7-22	
Display Size	P.7-24	
Self-timer	P.7-11	
Shake Reducing	P.7-24	
Data Folder	P.7-22	
Settings	Video Quality	P.7-22
	Exposure	P.7-22
	Microphone	P.7-24
Help	P.7-22	
Mobile Light	P.7-22	

## Video Settings: Save Setting

Function	Refer to
Save Videos to	P.7-22
Auto Save	P.7-22
Video Encode	P.7-24
Audio Encode	P.7-24





## Entertainment

Function		Refer to
Mobile Widget	Widget Contents	P.10-2
	Widget History	P.10-16
	Settings	P.10-16
	Information	P.10-17
S! Quick News		P.10-5
S! Information Channel/ Weather	What's New	P.10-6
	Back Issue	P.10-6
	Registration/Cancel	P.10-6
	Get Latest Contents	P.10-19
	Notification	P.10-19
Weather Indicator		P.10-6
BookSurfing		P.10-7
e-Book Viewer		P.10-7

## S! Quick News

Function		Refer to
S! Quick News List		P.10-5
Settings	Automatic Update	P.10-18
	Show Image	P.10-19
	Check Schedule	P.10-18
	Change Skin	P.10-19
	Delete S! Quick News Lists	P.10-18

S! Information Channel/Weather:  
Weather Indicator

Function		Refer to
Weather		P.10-20
Manual Update		P.10-6
Settings	Standby Setting	P.10-20
	Weather Notif.	P.10-20
	Icon Update	P.10-20

## Tools

## PIM/Life

Function		Refer to
Calendar		P.9-2
Alarms		P.9-7
Wakeup TV		P.9-9
Relaxation Time		P.9-11
Tasks		P.9-5
Calculator		P.9-12
Expenses Memo		P.9-13
Osaifu-Keitai		P.9-14
Simulated Call	Receive Simulated Call	P.9-44
	Switch On/Off	P.9-18
	Set Caller	P.9-18
	Assign Tone	P.9-18
	Receive Timing	P.9-18
	For Silent Mode	P.9-44

## PIM/Life: Osaifu-Keitai

Function		Refer to
Lifestyle-Appli		P.9-14
IC Card Settings	IC Card Status	P.9-43
	IC Card Lock	P.9-15
	Remote Lock	P.9-16
	Interface Settings	P.9-43
	Balance Info	P.9-43
	Set to Default	P.9-43

## Clock/Gauge

Function	Refer to
Stopwatch	P.9-19
Countdown Timer	P.9-20
World Clock	P.9-21
Hour Minder	P.9-22
Pedometer	P.9-23
Compass	P.9-25
S! GPS Navi	P.9-26
Battery Meter	P.1-29

## Doc./Rec.

Function		Refer to
Dictionary		P.2-13
Search		P.2-15
Document Viewer		P.9-29
Notepad		P.9-30
Scratch Pad		P.2-16
ASCII Art		P.9-31
Voice Recorder	Record Time	P.9-46
	Ring Songs-Tones	P.9-32
	Save Recording to	P.9-46
Barcode/Scan	Scan Barcode	P.9-33
	Open Barcode	P.9-47
	Create QR Code	P.9-34
	Scan Card	P.9-35
	Kanji Grabber	P.9-37
	Scan Text	P.9-36
Scanned Results		P.9-47
Phone Help		P.1-29



## Data Folder

Function	Refer to
Pictures	P.7-16
DCIM	P.12-2
Ring Songs-Tones	P.9-32
S! Appli	P.8-7
Widget	P.10-2
Music	P.12-2
Videos	P.12-2
Lifestyle-Appli	P.9-14
Books	P.12-2
Customized Screen	P.2-4
Status Templates	P.12-2
Decoration Call	P.3-6
Flash@	P.12-2
Other Documents	P.12-2
Memory Status	P.12-2

## Media Player

Function	Refer to	
Music	P.8-4	
Videos	P.8-5	
Streaming	P.5-13	
MTP Mode	P.8-3	
Settings	Sound Output	P.8-8
	Delete All WMA	P.8-9

## Music

Function	Refer to	
Last Played Music	P.8-8	
My Music	P.8-6	
SD AUDIO	P.8-9	
WMA	P.8-4	
Download Music	P.8-3	
Music Search	P.8-3	
Settings	Sound Effects	P.8-8
	Playback Mode	P.8-8

## Videos

Function	Refer to	
Last Played Video	P.8-8	
My Videos	P.8-5	
Recorder Contents	P.8-5	
SD VIDEO	P.8-5	
Download Videos	P.8-3	
Settings	Playback Mode	P.8-8
	Backlight	P.8-8
	Display Size	P.8-8
	Sound Effects	P.8-8
	Web Link Setting	P.8-8

## Communication

Function	Refer to
S! Friend's Status	P.10-8
S! Circle Talk	P.10-11
Near chat	P.10-13
Blog Tool	P.10-14

## Phone

Function	Refer to	
Phone Book	P.2-17	
Add New Entry	P.2-17	
Information	P.1-33	
Call Log	P.3-8	
Play Messages	P.3-4	
Call Voicemail	P.3-13	
Set Category	P.2-18	
My Details	P.1-29	
Speed Dial/Mail	P.3-7	
Mail Groups	P.4-16	
S! Addressbook Backup	P.13-14	
Ph.Book Settings	Sort Entries	P.2-19
	Select Phone Book	P.2-25
	Save New Entry	P.2-25
	New Number Prompt	P.2-22
	Vertical Display	P.2-22
	Horizontal Display	P.2-22
Call Log Setting	P.3-18	
Manage Entries	Copy All	P.2-24
	Memory Status	P.2-24
	Change Mode(All)	P.2-25
	Delete All	P.2-24



## Settings

## ■ Phone

Function		Refer to
Mode Settings		P.1-35
Display		P.14-3
Customized Screen		P.2-4
Sounds & Alerts		P.2-5
Date & Time		P.14-2
Set Key Light		P.14-4
言語選択 (Language)		P.14-3
User Dictionary		P.2-12
Viewer Position	Move Settings	P.1-23
	Set Appli	P.1-34
	Set Bookmark	P.1-34
Touch Panel	Touch Reaction	P.1-33
	Keypad Lock	P.1-33
	Correct Touch Panel	P.1-17
Set Key Shortcut		P.1-18
Motion Control	Display Change	P.1-34
	Quick Shortcut	P.1-26
	Action Settings	P.1-26
	Action Test	P.1-34
	Adjust Sensor	P.1-35
Ringer Output		P.14-6
Earpiece Volume		P.3-15
Change Menu		P.1-22

Function		Refer to
Double Number	Switch On/Off	P.1-30
	Double Mode	P.1-32
	Password Entry	P.1-36
	Mode Name	P.1-36
	Reject By Line	P.1-36
	Show Missed	P.1-36
	Packet Warning	P.1-36
	Send Priority	P.1-36
Locks		P.11-2
Software Update		P.15-5
Master Reset	Reset Settings	P.14-8
	Reset All	P.14-8

## ■ Phone: Display

Function		Refer to
Wallpaper		P.2-3
System Graphics		P.14-3
VeilView	Pattern Setting	P.1-35
	Scale Setting	P.1-35
	Density Setting	P.1-35
Display Effects		P.14-3
Font Settings		P.2-2
Standby Display	Clock/Calendar	P.14-4
	Show Operator Name	P.14-4
	Pedometer	P.14-4
Vivid Mode		P.14-3
Mini Battery		P.1-35
Greeting Message		P.14-3

Function		Refer to
External Display	Duration	P.14-4
	Messages	P.14-4
	Display Pedometer	P.14-4
	Display Date&Time	P.14-4
	Clock Type	P.14-4
	Caller Display	P.14-4
Backlight		P.14-3
Display Saving		P.14-3
Caller Display		P.14-3
Dial Number		P.14-3

## ■ Phone: Sounds &amp; Alerts

Function		Refer to
Volume		P.14-5
Ringtone/videos		P.2-5
System Sounds		P.14-6
Vibration		P.2-5
Event Light		P.14-5
Set Key Illumi		P.14-4
Status Light		P.14-5
Any Key Answer		P.14-5
Surround		P.14-6



### Phone: Date & Time

Function	Refer to
Set Date/Time	P.14-2
Time Correction	P.14-2
Daylight Saving	P.14-2
Set Time Zone	P.14-2
Clock/Calendar	P.14-4
World Clock	P.9-21
Alarms	P.9-7
Set Holiday	P.9-38
Time Format	P.14-2
Date Format	P.14-2
Calendar Format	P.14-2

### Phone: Locks

Function	Refer to
PIN Entry	P.11-2
Face Recognition	P.11-4
Function Lock	P.11-2
IP Service Setting	P.14-7
Function Control	P.11-6
Application Lock	P.11-3
History Lock	P.11-3
Show Secret Data	P.11-3
Set Lock Message	P.11-7
Chg. Handset Code	P.1-28

### Connectivity

Function	Refer to	
Bluetooth	P.13-7	
Infrared	Switch On/Off	P.13-17
	Send All	P.13-4
	IrSS Key Setting	P.13-17
IC Transmission	1 File Reception	P.13-17
	Send All	P.13-6
USB Mode	Mass Storage	P.13-11
	Recorder Link	P.13-11
	MTP Mode	P.8-3
USB Charge	P.1-33	
Memory Card	P.12-6	
Backup/ Restore	Backup All Items	P.13-19
	Backup Selected Items	P.13-13
	Restore All Items	P.13-19
	Restore Selected Items	P.13-13
	Settings/Manage	P.13-19

### Connectivity: Bluetooth


Function	Refer to
Switch On/Off	P.13-17
Add Device	P.13-8
Paired Devices	P.13-9
Send All	P.13-10
Setting Watch	P.13-18
My Device Settings	P.13-17
My Device Details	P.13-17

### Connectivity: Memory Card

Function	Refer to	
DPOF	Number of Copies	P.7-21
	Settings	P.7-25
	Check Settings	P.7-21
	Reset Settings	P.7-25
SD Local Contents	P.12-8	
Format Card	P.12-6	
Memory Status	P.12-2	



## ■ Call

	Function	Refer to
Call Time/ Data Counter	Call Timers	P.3-9
	Data Counter	P.3-18
	Call Time Counter	P.3-18
	Minute Minder	P.3-18
Answer Phone	Switch On/Off	P.3-4
	Answer Time	P.3-14
	Outgoing Message	P.3-14
	Volume	P.3-14
Voicemail/ Divert	Voicemail	P.3-13
	Diverts	P.3-12
	Cancel All	P.3-13
	Status	P.3-20
Video Call	Camera Picture	P.3-21
	Incoming Picture	P.3-21
	Outgoing Picture	P.3-21
	Hold Guidance Pict	P.3-21
	Backlight	P.3-21
	Loudspeaker	P.3-21
	Mute Microphone	P.3-21
Remote Monitor	P.3-14	
Show My Number		P.3-21
 Missed Calls		P.3-13
Int'l Calling	Int'l Prefix	P.3-15
	Country Codes	P.3-15
	Auto Add Code	P.3-15
Call Barring	Bar Outgoing Calls	P.3-20
	Restrict Destinations	P.3-10
	Bar Incoming Calls	P.3-21
	Reject Numbers	P.3-19
	Change NW Password	P.3-20

	Function	Refer to
Decoration Call	Switch On/Off	P.3-17
	Play in Receiving	P.3-17
	Notice	P.3-17
Auto Answer		P.3-21
Call Waiting		P.3-20

## ■ Network

	Function	Refer to
Select Network		P.14-7
Select Service		P.14-7
Offline Mode		P.1-27
Retrieve NW Info		P.14-7
Network Info		P.14-7
External Device		P.14-7



## Index

## A

AC Charger.....	1-4
Accessing Functions .....	1-14
Accessory .....	v
After-Sales Services .....	15-41
Alarms .....	9-7
Canceling .....	9-8
Deleting .....	9-8
Editing entries .....	9-42
For Manner Mode.....	9-42
Link to World Clk.....	9-42
Animation View .....	4-9
Answer Phone.....	3-4, 3-14
Antenna (for TV reception) .....	6-3
Anti Spam Measures .....	4-14, 4-28
Any Key Answer .....	14-5
Application Lock.....	11-3
ASCII Art.....	9-31
Auto Focus .....	7-2
Auto Reply .....	4-10, 4-25
Auto Resend.....	4-2, 4-31
Auto Retry Function .....	4-2

## B

Backlight.....	14-3
Backup.....	13-12
Settings/Manage .....	13-19
Bar Incoming Calls .....	3-21
Bar Outgoing Calls .....	3-20
Battery .....	1-4, 15-4
Battery Cover .....	1-2
Battery Meter.....	1-29
Blog Tool .....	10-14, 10-22
Bluetooth® .....	13-7
My Device Settings .....	13-17
Printing images .....	7-21

Receiving files .....	13-10
Sending files.....	13-10, 13-18
Blu-ray Disc recorders .....	8-10, 13-11
Bookmarks .....	5-8
BookSurfing® .....	10-7

## C

Calculator .....	9-12, 9-42
Calendar .....	9-2
Calendar Settings.....	9-38
Editing schedules .....	9-39
Call Barring .....	3-12, 3-20
Call Forwarding.....	3-12
Call Log.....	3-8, 3-18
Call Time Counter .....	3-18
Call Time/Data Counter .....	3-18
Call Waiting .....	3-12, 3-20
Call Waiting (answering Line 2).....	3-20
Caller ID .....	3-12, 3-21
Camera.....	7-2
Auto Save .....	7-22
Capturing Still Images .....	7-3
Exposure .....	7-22
Locking focus .....	7-22
Macro .....	7-22
Manual Focus.....	7-22
Mobile Light.....	7-22
Picture Quality .....	7-22
Recording Video.....	7-9
Review .....	7-12
Save Pictures to .....	7-22
Save Videos to .....	7-22
Self-timer .....	7-11
Send/Blog.....	7-12
Video Quality.....	7-22
Center Access Code.....	1-28
Change NW Password.....	3-20
Change PIN.....	11-7

Character Code List.....	15-11
Charging .....	1-4
Charging Terminals .....	1-2
Chat Folder.....	4-15, 4-28
Clamshell Closed.....	1-2
Clamshell Open.....	1-2
Clock/Calendar.....	14-4
Compass.....	9-25
Composite .....	7-20
Countdown Timer .....	9-20
Create Msg. Size .....	4-22, 4-33
Create QR Code .....	9-34
Customer Service .....	15-42
Customized Screen (Japanese).....	2-4

## D

Data Broadcast (Japanese).....	6-6
Change View (Data) .....	6-14
Returning to initial window .....	6-14
Set Recording .....	6-15
Data Counter .....	3-18
Data Folder .....	12-2
Files (attaching).....	4-5, 12-3
Files (moving/copying) .....	12-4
Files (opening) .....	12-3
Files (renaming) .....	12-8
Folders (adding) .....	12-4
Selecting Multiple Files .....	12-4
Set Secret (folders) .....	12-4
Slide Show .....	12-3
Date & Time .....	14-2
Daylight Saving .....	9-21, 14-2
Decoration Call .....	3-6, 3-17
Delivery Report .....	4-9, 4-21, 4-31
Dialing from Call Log records.....	3-18
Dictionary .....	2-13
Digital TV (→ TV) .....	6-2
Adding Reception Areas .....	6-3



Area Setup .....	6-3
Auto Exit .....	6-13
AV Settings .....	6-13
Calls & Alarms .....	6-13
Change Area .....	6-12
Image .....	6-13
Program Info. Search .....	6-12
Save Recording to .....	6-15
Screen Size .....	6-12
Set Call Time Shift .....	6-15
Set Channels .....	6-12
Smooth Mode .....	6-12
☎ Sound Output .....	6-13
Sound Output .....	6-13
Subtitle/Sound .....	6-15
TV Alarm .....	6-17
<b>Display</b> .....	<b>1-2, 1-7</b>
<b>Display (settings)</b> .....	<b>14-3</b>
<b>Display Effects</b> .....	<b>14-3</b>
<b>Display Positions</b> .....	<b>1-2</b>
<b>Display Saving</b> .....	<b>14-3</b>
<b>Document Viewer</b> .....	<b>9-29</b>
<b>Double Number</b> .....	<b>1-30, 1-36</b>
<b>Download Dictionary</b> .....	<b>2-12</b>
<b>DPOF</b> .....	<b>7-21</b>
Add Date .....	7-25
Check Settings .....	7-21
For All Pictures .....	7-21
Index Print .....	7-25
<b>Dual Mode</b> .....	<b>1-31</b>
<b>E</b>	
Earpiece .....	1-2
Earpiece Volume .....	3-15
e-Book Library .....	10-20
e-Book Viewer .....	10-7
e-Books (Japanese) .....	10-7, 10-20
Emergency Calls .....	3-2
English .....	14-3
Event Light .....	14-5

<b>Expenses Memo</b> .....	<b>9-13</b>
<b>External Camera</b> .....	<b>1-2</b>
<b>External Device Connection</b> .....	<b>13-11</b>
<b>External Device Port</b> .....	<b>1-2</b>
<b>External Display</b> .....	<b>1-2, 1-11, 14-4</b>
<b>F</b>	
Face Arrange .....	7-19
Face Recognition .....	11-4
Feeling Mail (receiving) .....	4-9
Feeling Mail (sending) .....	4-5
Focus (locking) .....	7-22
Focus Setting .....	7-22
Font Size .....	2-2
Format Card .....	12-6
Function Control .....	11-6
Function Lock .....	11-2

## F

<b>G</b>	
General Notes .....	xii
Graphic Mail .....	4-6
Group Calling .....	3-12, 3-20
Group Calling (opening another line) .....	3-20
Guide Usage Notes .....	ii
<b>H</b>	
Hand Mirror .....	1-29
Handset Code .....	1-28
Handset Keys .....	1-3
Handset mail address .....	4-3
Handset Parts .....	1-2
Handset Power On/Off .....	1-6
Handset responses .....	2-5
Headphone Port .....	1-2
Headphones (answering calls) .....	3-14
History Lock .....	11-3
Hold .....	3-14
Hour Minder .....	9-22
Assign Tone/Video .....	9-44
For Manner Mode .....	9-44

## G

## H

Link to World Clk .....	9-44
Vibration .....	9-44

## I

<b>IC Card Lock</b> .....	<b>9-15</b>
<b>IC Card Settings</b> .....	<b>9-15</b>
<b>IC Transmission</b> .....	<b>13-5</b>
<b>Ichi Navi</b> .....	<b>9-28</b>
<b>Indicators</b> .....	<b>1-9</b>
Display .....	1-9
External Display .....	1-11
Messaging (message list) .....	4-10
Music Playback Window .....	8-4
S! Quick News .....	10-5
Video Playback Window .....	8-5
<b>Information window</b> .....	<b>1-7</b>
<b>Infrared</b> .....	<b>13-2</b>
Receiving files .....	13-3
Sending files .....	13-4, 13-17
<b>Infrared Port</b> .....	<b>1-2</b>
<b>Internal Antenna</b> .....	<b>1-2</b>
<b>Internal Camera</b> .....	<b>1-2</b>
<b>International calls</b> .....	<b>3-3, 3-15</b>
<b>Internet</b> .....	<b>5-2</b>
Accessing .....	5-3, 5-4
Basic Operations .....	5-5
Browser Settings .....	5-12
Enter URL .....	5-3, 5-4
History .....	5-3, 5-4
Saving Bookmarks/pages .....	5-8
<b>Int'l Call</b> .....	<b>3-4</b>
<b>IP Service Setting</b> .....	<b>14-7</b>
<b>IrSS Transfer</b> .....	<b>13-2</b>

## K

<b>Kanji Grabber</b> .....	<b>9-37</b>
<b>Key Assignments</b> .....	<b>15-8</b>
<b>Keypad Lock</b> .....	<b>1-24</b>



## L

Language.....	14-3
Large Font Menu.....	2-2
Light Sensor.....	1-2, 14-3
Link to Feeling.....	4-32
Link to World Clk.....	9-42, 9-44
Locks.....	1-28, 11-2
Loudspeaker.....	3-16, 3-21, 10-22

## M

Mail Groups.....	4-16
Changing members.....	4-29
Deleting.....	4-29
Edit Name.....	4-29
Main Menu.....	1-14
Manner mode.....	1-27
Mass Storage.....	13-11
Master Reset.....	14-8
Format Card.....	12-6
Reset All.....	14-8
Reset Settings.....	14-8
Media Player.....	8-2
Delete All WMA.....	8-9
Playlists.....	8-6, 8-9, 8-10
Sound Output.....	8-8
Memory All Clear (S! Applications).....	8-12
Memory Card.....	12-5
Format Card.....	12-6
Opening files.....	12-6
Memory Card Structure & Contents.....	15-24
Menu List.....	15-25
Camera.....	15-27
Communication.....	15-29
Data Folder.....	15-29
Entertainment.....	15-28
Media Player.....	15-29
Messaging.....	15-25
Phone.....	15-29
S! Appli.....	15-26

Settings.....	15-30
Tools.....	15-28
TV.....	15-26
Yahoo! Keitai.....	15-26
Message List View.....	4-30
Message Notice.....	4-31
Messages (creating/sending) ...	4-4, 4-7, 4-19
Attachments.....	4-22
DL Size Limit.....	4-33
Drafts.....	4-29
Edit.....	4-29
Edit & Send.....	4-29
Graphic Mail.....	4-22
Inserting signature manually.....	4-20
Messaging Settings.....	4-21
Preview Message.....	4-4
Recipient status.....	4-20
Recipients (editing).....	4-20
Resend.....	4-27
Save to Drafts.....	4-21
Send Reservation.....	4-21
Set Auto Play File.....	4-22
Set Sent Cancel.....	4-21
Signature.....	4-20
Speed Dial/Mail.....	4-20
Templates.....	4-22
Messages (deleting).....	4-19, 4-26
Auto Delete.....	4-30
Messages (forwarding).....	4-30
Messages (protecting).....	4-12
Messages (receiving/checking).....	4-9
Accessing new mail out of Standby.....	4-23
Mail List.....	4-23
Message List.....	4-10, 4-26
Message Window.....	4-10, 4-24
Retrieving complete S! Mail messages manually.....	4-11
Retrieving PC Mail.....	4-19, 4-33
Save to Data Folder.....	4-24
Messages (sorting).....	4-14

Anti Spam Measures.....	4-14, 4-28
Messaging (→ SMS, S! Mail, PC Mail).....	4-2
General Settings.....	4-30
PC Mail Settings.....	4-33
Receive (settings).....	4-31
S! Mail Settings.....	4-32
Send/Compose (settings).....	4-31
SMS Settings.....	4-34
Microphone.....	1-2
Minute Minder.....	3-18
Missed Call Notification.....	3-13
Mobile Light.....	1-2
Mobile Widget.....	10-2
Mode Settings.....	1-35
Motion Control.....	1-25
MTP Mode.....	8-3
Multi Job.....	1-19
Music (deleting).....	8-9
Music (downloading).....	8-3
Music (playing).....	8-4, 8-8
My Details.....	1-29
Sending via Bluetooth®.....	13-18
Sending via IC Transmission.....	13-17
Sending via Infrared.....	13-17

## N

Navi Appli.....	9-26
Near Chat (Japanese).....	10-13
Network Password.....	1-28
Notepad.....	9-30
Edit Text.....	9-46
Change Category.....	9-46

## O

Offline Mode.....	1-27
Optional Services.....	3-12
Optional Services (checking status).....	3-20
Osaiifu-Keitai® (Japanese).....	9-14
Balance Info.....	9-43
Checking e-money balance.....	9-43





IC Card Settings .....	9-15
Locking .....	9-15
Set to Default .....	9-43

## P

Pager Code List .....	15-10
PC (connecting handset) .....	13-11
PC Mail .....	4-2, 4-17
PC Mail (sending) .....	4-19
PC Site Browser .....	5-4
Pedometer .....	9-23
Pen Light .....	1-29
Personal Mode .....	2-8, 4-4
Phone Book (deleting) .....	2-24
Phone Book (editing) .....	2-23
Phone Book (saving) .....	2-17
Phone Book (using) .....	2-19
Phone Book search .....	2-19
Phone Help .....	1-29
Picture Editor .....	7-16
PIN .....	15-2
PIN Entry .....	11-2
PIN Lock .....	15-2
Playlists .....	8-6, 8-9, 8-10
Printing (→DPOF) .....	7-21
Printing (Bluetooth®) .....	7-21

## Q

Quick Operations .....	1-14
Quick Reply .....	4-25
Quick Silent .....	1-25

## R

Received Msg. View .....	4-30
Record Caller Voice .....	3-16
Recorder Contents .....	8-5, 8-10
Recorder Link .....	13-11
Reference URLs .....	15-23
Reject (calls) .....	3-14
Relaxation Time .....	9-11

Remote Lock (Osaifu-Keitai®) .....	9-16
Call Remote Lock .....	9-17
Count for Lock .....	9-43
Mail Remote Lock .....	9-16
Notice Settings .....	9-43
Remote Monitor .....	3-14
Reply .....	4-10, 4-19, 4-25
Auto Reply .....	4-25
Opening received message for reference .....	4-25
Set Quick Reply .....	4-25
Reply Assist Dictionary .....	2-12, 4-10
Reset (→ Master Reset) .....	14-8
Reset All .....	14-8
Reset Settings .....	14-8
Retrieve NW Info .....	14-7
Retrieving Network Information .....	1-6
Review .....	7-12
RSS Feeds .....	5-9

## S

S! Addressbook Back-up .....	13-14
Confirming user ID & password .....	13-19
Set Auto Sync .....	13-19
Sync History .....	13-19
S! Applications .....	8-7
S! Circle Talk .....	10-11, 10-22
Accepting requests .....	10-12
Initiating .....	10-12
IP Service Setting .....	14-7
Registering Members .....	10-11
S! FeliCa (→ Osaifu-Keitai®) .....	9-14
S! Friend's Status .....	10-8, 10-21
IP Service Setting .....	14-7
Opening Member Status .....	10-9
S! GPS Navi .....	9-26
S! Information Channel (Japanese) .....	10-6, 10-19
Weather Indicator .....	10-6
S! Mail .....	4-2
Attaching Files .....	4-5
Create Msg. Size .....	4-22, 4-33

Feeling Mail .....	4-5
Graphic Mail .....	4-6
S! Mail Settings .....	4-32
S! Mail (sending) .....	4-4
S! Quick News (Japanese) .....	10-5
Automatic Update .....	10-18
Deleting items .....	10-18
Safety Precautions .....	vi
SAR .....	xviii
Saved Pages .....	5-8, 5-14
Scan Barcode .....	9-33
Open Barcode .....	9-47
Scanning during text entry .....	9-47
Using scan results .....	9-47
Scan Card .....	9-35
Using scan results .....	9-49
Scan Text .....	9-36
Scanning and pasting during text entry .....	9-49
Using scan results .....	9-50
Schedules (→ Calendar) .....	9-2
Scratch Pad .....	2-16
Screenshots (capturing) .....	6-6
SD Local Contents .....	12-8
Search .....	2-15
Security Codes .....	1-28
Sent Msg. View .....	4-30
Set as Wallpaper .....	12-7
Set Date/Time .....	14-2
Set Key Illumi .....	9-11, 14-4
Set Key Light .....	14-4
Set Key Shortcut .....	1-18
Set Sent Cancel .....	4-21
Set Time Zone .....	9-21, 14-2
Set to Default (S! Applications) .....	8-12
Shortcuts .....	1-14
Show My Number .....	3-21
Show Secret Data .....	11-3
Side Keys .....	1-3
Signature .....	4-20
Simple Menu .....	1-22



<b>Simulated Call</b> .....	9-18	Dynamic Range Adjustment	7-24	Input/Conversion	2-21
<b>Slide W paper</b> .....	2-3	ISO Sensitivity	7-23	Inserting line breaks	2-20
<b>Small Light</b> .....	1-2	Long Exposure	7-14	Inserting Phone Book entry items	2-20
<b>SMS</b> .....	4-2	Panorama Picture	7-15	Inserting spaces	2-20
SMS Settings	4-34	Picture Size	7-23	Katakana	2-9
<b>SMS (sending)</b> .....	4-7	Portrait photography	7-7	Mail & Web Extensions	2-10
<b>Snooze</b> .....	9-7, 9-8	Scanner	7-15	One-Hiragana Conversion	2-9
<b>Softkeys</b> .....	1-8	Scene	7-8	Personal Mode	2-8
<b>Software Update</b> .....	15-5	Seeking guidance for better shots	7-24	Phonetic Conversion	2-8
<b>Sounds &amp; Alerts</b> .....	2-5, 14-5	Shake Reducing	7-23	Pictograms & Symbols	2-9
<b>Speaker</b> .....	1-2	Shutter Mode	7-8	Quick Conversion	2-10
<b>Specifications</b> .....	15-18	Shutter Sound	7-22	Reset Log	2-20
<b>Specifications (by function)</b> .....	15-19	White Balance	7-23	Switching Entry Modes	2-7
Basic Operations	15-19	<b>Still images (capturing &amp; sending)</b> .....	7-2	Undo conversion or recover deleted characters	2-20
Calling	15-19	<b>Still images (capturing while recording video)</b> .....	7-24	Using Character Codes	2-20
Camera & Imaging	15-20	<b>Still images (editing)</b> .....	7-16	Using Pager Code	2-20
Connectivity & File Backup	15-22	Additional editing options	7-25	When Target Word is Not Listed	2-8
Data Folder	15-22	Changing sizes	7-17	<b>Time Correction</b> .....	14-2
Digital TV	15-20	Face Arrange	7-19	<b>Time Shift</b> .....	6-11
Entertainment & Communication	15-22	Merge Panorama	7-20	<b>Touch Panel</b> .....	1-12, 1-17, 1-33
Getting Started	15-19	<b>Stopwatch</b> .....	9-19	<b>Troubleshooting</b> .....	15-6
Handy Extras	15-21	<b>Strap Eyelet</b> .....	1-2	<b>TV (watching)</b> .....	6-4
Media Player	15-20	<b>Streaming</b> .....	5-3	AV Mode	6-12, 6-13
Memory Card	15-22	<b>Swap Calls</b> .....	3-20	Channels (saving)	6-12
Messaging	15-19	<b>System Graphics</b> .....	14-3	Data Broadcast (Japanese)	6-6
Network	15-22	<b>System Sounds</b> .....	14-6	Help	6-12
SI Applications	15-20			Program Info	6-7
Yahoo! Keitai & PC Site Browser	15-19			TV Listing (Japanese)	6-7
<b>Speed Dial/Mail</b> .....	3-7, 4-20			Using wireless Headphones	6-13
<b>Standby</b> .....	1-6			<b>TV Player</b> .....	6-9
<b>Standby Shortcuts</b> .....	1-20			<b>TV programs (recording/playing)</b> .....	6-8, 6-9
<b>Status Icon List</b> .....	1-7			Copy to Card	6-16
<b>Status Light</b> .....	14-5			Details	6-16
<b>Status Templates</b> .....	12-2			Marker List	6-17
<b>Still images (capturing)</b> .....	7-3			Markers	6-17
Add Frame	7-14			Memory Remaining	6-16
Camera Effects	7-14			Move to Card	6-16
Checking image details before saving	7-23			Playback Pattern	6-16
Continuous Shoot	7-13			Playing split files	6-16
Correlate to Face	7-24				

## T

<b>Table of Contents</b> .....	iii
<b>Tasks</b> .....	9-5
Deleting Tasks	9-6
Editing tasks	9-40
Opening Tasks	9-6
<b>Text (editing)</b> .....	2-11
<b>Text Entry</b> .....	2-6
Emoticons	2-9
Hiragana	2-8
Hiragana to Katakana/Alphanumeric Conversion	2-10



Recorded programs (deleting).....	6-16
Recorded programs (renaming) .....	6-16
Split File.....	6-16
TV Reserve Prior .....	6-17
<b>TV Timers (watching/recording) .....</b>	<b>6-10</b>
Setting Timer via Program Info .....	6-7
Timer entries (editing/deleting) .....	6-17
Timer log records (opening/deleting).....	6-17
TV Alarm .....	6-17
Wakeup TV .....	9-9

## U

<b>USB Charge .....</b>	<b>1-5, 1-33</b>
<b>User Dictionary .....</b>	<b>2-12</b>
Deleting entries .....	2-21
<b>USIM Card .....</b>	<b>15-2</b>
<b>USIM PIN (→ PIN).....</b>	<b>15-2</b>
<b>Utility Software .....</b>	<b>13-11</b>

## V

<b>VeilView .....</b>	<b>1-29</b>
<b>Vibration .....</b>	<b>2-5</b>
<b>Video (deleting) .....</b>	<b>8-10</b>
<b>Video (downloading).....</b>	<b>8-3</b>
<b>Video (playing) .....</b>	<b>8-5, 8-8</b>
<b>Video (recording) .....</b>	<b>7-9</b>
Display Size .....	7-24
Microphone.....	7-24
Record Time/Size .....	7-24
Shake Reducing .....	7-24
<b>Video (recording &amp; sending).....</b>	<b>7-2</b>
<b>Video Calling .....</b>	<b>3-5</b>
Remote Monitor .....	3-14
<b>Video Calls (answering).....</b>	<b>3-5</b>
<b>Video Calls (placing).....</b>	<b>3-5</b>
<b>Viewer Position .....</b>	<b>1-2, 1-34</b>
<b>Voice Calling.....</b>	<b>3-3</b>
<b>Voice Calls (answering) .....</b>	<b>3-3</b>
<b>Voice Calls (placing) .....</b>	<b>3-3</b>
<b>Voice Calls (placing while abroad) .....</b>	<b>3-4</b>

<b>Voice Recorder .....</b>	<b>9-32</b>
Record Time.....	9-46
Save and Send .....	9-46
Save Recording to .....	9-46
<b>Voicemail.....</b>	<b>3-12, 3-13</b>
<b>Volume (ringtones).....</b>	<b>14-5</b>

## W

<b>Wakeup TV .....</b>	<b>9-9</b>
<b>Wallpaper .....</b>	<b>2-3</b>
Slide W paper .....	2-3
<b>Warranty.....</b>	<b>15-41</b>
<b>Weather Indicator .....</b>	<b>10-6</b>
Icon Update .....	10-20
Manual Update .....	10-6
Weather .....	10-20
<b>Weather Indicator List.....</b>	<b>15-17</b>
<b>Widgets .....</b>	<b>10-2, 10-16</b>
<b>World Clock .....</b>	<b>9-21</b>

## Y

<b>Yahoo! Keitai.....</b>	<b>5-3</b>
---------------------------	------------

## Objectives

<b>Accessing Secret Files/Entries</b>	
Data Folder .....	12-4
Messaging folders .....	4-13
Phone Book .....	2-18
Schedules/tasks .....	9-4
<b>Accessing the Internet</b>	
From message text .....	4-24
From scan results .....	9-47, 9-50
Media Player.....	8-3
PC Site Browser .....	5-4
RSS Feeds .....	5-9
Yahoo! Keitai .....	5-3
<b>Browsing/Viewing</b>	
Document Viewer .....	9-29
e-Books .....	10-7
PC Site Browser .....	5-4

S! Information Channel.....	10-6
S! Quick News .....	10-5
Yahoo! Keitai.....	5-3

## Calculating

Calculator .....	9-12
Expenses Memo.....	9-13

## Canceled

Alarm .....	9-8
Answer Phone .....	3-4
Call Forwarding.....	3-13
Customized Screen .....	2-20
Download Dictionary.....	2-12
Function Lock .....	11-2
Hour Minder.....	9-22
IC Card Lock.....	9-15
Keypad Lock .....	1-24
Large Font Menu .....	2-2
Manner mode .....	1-27
Offline Mode .....	1-27
S! Information Channel.....	10-6
Secret folders.....	4-27, 12-4
Simple Menu.....	1-22
Speed Dial entries .....	3-7
Voicemail .....	3-13

## Changing

Font Size.....	2-2
Font Weight .....	2-2
Handset Code.....	1-28
Handset mail address.....	4-3
Network Password.....	3-20
PIN.....	11-7

## Changing Ringtones

Phone Book .....	2-18
Ringtone/videos .....	2-5
Via Data Folder.....	12-7

## Composing/Sending Messages

Feeling Mail .....	4-5
From Call Log records .....	3-18
From Internet pages .....	5-11
From message text .....	4-24



- From Phone Book .....2-24
- From received messages.....4-10
- From scan results..... 9-47, 9-50
- From Scratch Pad .....2-16
- From sent messages.....4-29
- Graphic Mail ..... 4-6, 4-22
- Inserting ASCII Art .....9-31
- PC Mail .....4-19
- S! Mail .....4-4
- SMS .....4-7
- Copying**
- Calculation results.....9-42
- Data Folder files .....12-4
- From text entry window .....2-11
- Scan results ..... 9-48, 9-50
- Text (e-Books) .....10-20
- Text (Internet pages) .....5-11
- Text (Messaging) .....4-25
- Text (S! Information Channel pages).....10-19
- Downloading**
- Customized Screen.....2-4
- e-Books.....10-7
- Music.....8-3
- S! Applications .....8-11
- Video.....8-3
- Widgets .....10-2
- Exchanging Files**
- Bluetooth® .....13-7
- IC Transmission.....13-5
- Infrared.....13-2
- IrSS Transfer .....13-2
- Mass Storage .....13-11
- MTP Mode .....8-3
- Recorder Link.....13-11
- Hiding Files/Entries**
- Data Folder .....12-4
- Messaging folders .....4-13
- Phone Book .....2-18
- Schedules/tasks ..... 9-38, 9-40
- Inserting/Removing**
- Battery.....15-4
- Memory Card .....12-5
- USIM Card .....15-3
- Locking/Restricting**
- Application Lock .....11-3
- Call Log .....11-3
- Function Lock.....11-2
- Incoming/outgoing calls..... 3-20, 3-21
- Keypad Lock.....1-24
- Mail records.....11-3
- Osaifu-Keitai® .....9-15
- PIN Entry .....11-2
- Managing Schedules**
- Calendar.....9-2
- Tasks .....9-5
- Measuring Time**
- Countdown Timer.....9-20
- Stopwatch .....9-19
- Notifying Phone Number**
- Opening My Details.....1-29
- Via Bluetooth® .....13-18
- Via IC Transmission .....13-17
- Via Infrared.....13-17
- Placing Calls**
- By entering phone numbers .....3-3
- From Call Log records.....3-18
- From Internet pages.....5-11
- From message text.....4-24
- From Phone Book .....2-19
- From scan results..... 9-47, 9-50
- International calls .....3-3
- Speed Dial.....3-7
- Video Calls .....3-5
- While abroad .....3-4
- Playing**
- Answer Phone messages/Caller Voice .....3-4
- Files (Scan Barcode).....9-48
- Music .....8-4
- Recorded TV programs .....6-9
- Recorded TV programs from Timer log ...6-17
- Split files (TV)..... 6-16
- Streams..... 5-13
- Video .....8-5
- Video (transferred from Blu-ray Disc recorders)..... 8-5
- Voice files .....9-32
- Voicemail messages.....3-13
- Rejecting**
- Calls from public phones .....3-11
- Calls from specified numbers .....3-11
- Calls from unsaved numbers.....3-11
- Near Chat requests .....10-13
- Undisplayable Caller ID .....3-11
- Withheld Caller ID .....3-11
- Resetting/Formatting**
- All settings.....14-8
- Handset .....14-8
- Memory Card .....12-6
- Saving**
- Backup .....13-13
- Captured still images..... 7-3, 7-13, 7-15
- Draft messages .....4-21
- Edited still images .....7-16
- Files (Internet) .....5-11
- Files (S! Information Channel pages)... 10-19
- Graphic Mail templates .....4-6
- Mail attachments .....4-24
- Notepad entries .....9-30
- Phone Book entries .....2-17
- Recorded video .....7-9
- Scan results ..... 9-47, 9-49
- TV channels .....6-12
- Saving Phone Book Entries**
- Add New Entry .....2-17
- Data Folder files .....12-8
- During a call .....3-16
- From Call Log records.....3-18
- From message text.....4-24
- From received messages .....4-24
- From scan results..... 9-47, 9-49



**Scanning**

Business cards .....	9-35
Kanji .....	9-37
QR Codes.....	9-33
Text .....	9-36

**Searching**

Messages .....	2-15, 4-13
Music to download.....	8-3
Music to play.....	8-4
Notepad entries .....	9-46
Phone Book.....	2-19
Text (Internet pages).....	5-11
TV program information.....	6-12
Video to play.....	8-5
Web Search.....	2-15

**Sending via Mail**

Data Folder files .....	4-5, 12-3
Notepad entries .....	9-46
QR Codes.....	9-34
Scan results.....	9-48, 9-50
Still images .....	7-6, 7-12
URLs .....	5-11, 5-13
Video .....	7-10
Voice files .....	9-46

**Setting Wallpaper**

From attached files .....	4-24
From Phone menu.....	2-3
From scan results.....	9-48
Via Data Folder.....	12-7

**Showing in Standby**

Clock/Calendar .....	14-4
SI Applications.....	8-11
Wallpaper .....	2-3
World Clock .....	9-21

**Using as Alarm Clock**

Alarm .....	9-7
Hour Minder.....	9-22
Wakeup TV.....	9-9

**Using Away from Home**

Alarm .....	9-7
-------------	-----

Camera.....	7-2
Compass .....	9-25
Digital TV .....	6-2
Hour Minder.....	9-22
OsaiFu-Keitai® .....	9-14
Pedometer .....	9-23
Pen Light.....	1-29
SI GPS Navi .....	9-26
Scratch Pad .....	2-16
Search .....	2-15
Voice Recorder.....	9-32



## Warranty & Service

### ■ Warranty

Warranty is provided when you purchase handset.

- Check the name of distributor and date of purchase.
- Read contents and keep in a safe place.
- The warranty term is described in the warranty.

### ■ After-Sales Services

See **P.15-6** "Troubleshooting" before contacting SoftBank for service or repairs.

If you cannot find solutions or solve problems, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, Customer Assistance (**P.15-42**) in your subscription area and provide a detailed description of the problem.

- Repairs within warranty are performed under terms and conditions described.
- Out of warranty, possible repairs are performed upon request at subscriber expense.

For other services, contact the distributor, the nearest SoftBank Shop or SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (**P.15-42**).

Replacement parts are available for 6 years after termination of production.

- SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from use of this product.
- SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of handset data. Keep a copy of Phone Book entries, etc. in a separate place.
- Disassembling or modifying handset may violate the Radio Law. Modified handset will not be repaired.



## Customer Service

For SoftBank handset or service information, call General Information. For repairs, call Customer Assistance.

### SoftBank Mobile Customer Center

From a SoftBank handset, dial toll free at **157**  
for General Information or **113** for Customer Assistance

### SoftBank Mobile Global Call Center

From outside Japan, dial **+81-3-5351-3491**  
(International charges apply.)

Call these numbers toll free from landlines.

Subscription Area	Service Center	Phone Number
Hokkaido, Aomori, Akita, Iwate, Yamagata, Miyagi, Fukushima, Niigata, Tokyo, Kanagawa, Chiba, Saitama, Ibaraki, Tochigi, Gunma, Yamanashi, Nagano, Toyama, Ishikawa, Fukui	General Information	☎0088-240-157
	Customer Assistance	☎0088-240-113
Aichi, Gifu, Mie, Shizuoka	General Information	☎0088-241-157
	Customer Assistance	☎0088-241-113
Osaka, Hyogo, Kyoto, Nara, Shiga, Wakayama	General Information	☎0088-242-157
	Customer Assistance	☎0088-242-113
Hiroshima, Okayama, Yamaguchi, Tottori, Shimane, Tokushima, Kagawa, Ehime, Kochi, Fukuoka, Saga, Nagasaki, Oita, Kumamoto, Miyazaki, Kagoshima, Okinawa	General Information	☎0088-250-157
	Customer Assistance	☎0088-250-113



# SoftBank 933SH User Guide

July 2009, First Edition

**SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.**

For additional information, please visit a SoftBank Shop.

**Model: SoftBank 933SH**

**Manufacturer: SHARP CORPORATION**



モバイル・リサイクル・ネットワーク  
携帯電話・PHSのリサイクルに協力も。

**Please help the mobile industry maintain high environmental standards. Recycle your old handsets, batteries and charger units (all manufacturers and brands). Before you recycle, please remember these important points:**

- Handsets, batteries and chargers submitted for recycling cannot be returned.
- Always erase all data recorded on old handsets (Phone Book entries, call records, mail, etc.) before recycling.



Mind your mobile manners when carrying a handset.